

# A Primer of Botanical Latin with Vocabulary

Latin is one of two acceptable languages for describing new plants, and taxonomists must be able to translate earlier texts in Latin. Providing a simple explanation of Latin grammar along with an in-depth vocabulary, this is an indispensable guide for systematic botanists worldwide.

All relevant parts of speech are discussed, with accompanying examples, as well as worked exercises for translating diagnoses and descriptions to and from Latin. Guidelines for forming specific epithets are also included. The authors cross-reference their grammar to Stearn's *Botanical Latin* and to articles in the *International Code of Nomenclature for Algae, Fungi and Plants*. The comprehensive vocabulary is enhanced with terms from recent glossaries for non-flowering plants – lichens, mosses, algae, fungi and ferns – making this an ideal resource for anyone looking to hone their understanding of Latin grammar and to translate botanical texts from the past 300 years.

**Emma Short** worked for 5 years at the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, UK, on the *Index Kewensis* database, before co-editing the *Authors of Plant Names* database with R. K. Brummitt. She has regularly checked Latin for *Australian Systematic Botany*, and has recently taught courses in Botanical Latin.

**Alex George** is an Adjunct Associate Professor at the School of Biological Sciences and Biotechnology, Murdoch University, Perth. He was a botanist with the Western Australian Herbarium for 21 years, then Editor of the *Flora of Australia* for 12 years. He studied Latin to Tertiary level and has used it in describing some 400 new taxa, translating for others and editing.



# A Primer of Botanical Latin with Vocabulary

Emma Short

*Darwin, Northern Territory, Australia*

Alex George (AM)

*Murdoch University, Perth, Western Australia*



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town,  
Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

Published in the United States of America by  
Cambridge University Press, New York

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/9781107693753](http://www.cambridge.org/9781107693753)

© Cambridge University Press 2013

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without  
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2013

Printed and bound in the United Kingdom by the MPG Books Group

*A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library*

*Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication data*

ISBN 978-1-107-69375-3 Paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or  
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to  
in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such  
websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate.

To my parents Tudor and Enid Powell, who encouraged the Latin, and Edward Mason who taught the botany: *multae gratiae*. (ES)

To 'Foureyes', my Latin teacher at school (also known as Edward J. Price): *gratias reddo; semper meminero*. May the Roman gods be smiling upon you. (AG)



# Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>page</i> ix
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	x
<i>Introduction</i>	xi
<b>Part I Grammar</b>	
1 The noun	3
2 The adjective and the participle	21
3 The adverb	34
4 The preposition	36
5 The conjunction	38
6 The pronoun	40
7 The verb	47
8 Numerals, measurements	50
9 Prefixes and suffixes	57
10 Miscellany	59
<b>Part II Exercises in translation</b>	
11 Exercises	67
12 Answers to the exercises	78
<b>Part III Translating</b>	
13 Translating into Latin	91
14 Translating from Latin into English	103
<b>Part IV Vocabulary</b>	
<i>References and further reading</i>	335
<i>Index</i>	338





## Preface

This primer is based on short courses in botanical Latin run in Australia at the Northern Territory Herbarium, Darwin, and the Western Australian Herbarium, Perth. We presented these independently and, on discovering that we had similar approaches, decided to combine them as a book.

Between 1 January 1935 and 31 December 2011 it was mandatory that new plant names be accompanied by a diagnosis or description in Latin. For non-fossil algae the period was 1 January 1958 to 31 December 2011, while for fossil plants published on or after 1 January 1996 either Latin or English could be used. From 1 January 2012, descriptions of all of these will be permissible in either Latin or English. Besides this, there will always remain a need for translating from Latin in order to understand the many botanical texts in this language.

William Stearn's wonderful *Botanical Latin* appeared in 1966 and has gone through many new impressions and editions, as well as a Chinese translation. It provides almost all one could require for translating to and from Latin, but a primer (in the sense of works such as Kennedy's *Shorter Latin Primer*, providing the basic needs) may be useful for those who need to translate the more straightforward diagnoses and short descriptions now widely used when describing new taxa. Besides its concise approach, our work also differs from Stearn's in including many more terms (especially from cryptogamic groups) in the vocabulary, while excluding many terms not used in descriptions.

## Acknowledgements

Our gratitude goes to those who read and commented upon our manuscript, especially to Vivienne Kent, who worked her way through the book and taught herself botanical Latin in the process, to Katherine Challis, who checked for inconsistencies, Matthew Barrett who suggested some fruitful glossaries of fungi, and William Powell, who gave advice. A number of colleagues assisted with advice on terms to be included.

To those who attended our courses, which provided the inspiration for Alex George's course notes, and Emma Short's *Aide-mémoire*, and who attended our classes faithfully in spite of the seemingly indigestible nature of Latin grammar, many thanks.

We are grateful to the Northern Territory Herbarium for providing desk space for our working bees (*Apis mellifera*).

# Introduction

Classical Latin – that used by the Romans – is fairly different in many respects from modern Latin, and from scientific Latin, in particular. In scientific Latin the basic grammar and syntax remain but much of the vocabulary is different – understandably, as many terms were unknown to the Romans. In particular, in botanical Latin we tend to omit most verbs, making a kind of telegraphic style, so avoiding one of the more difficult parts of the language.

This primer aims to teach you the very basics of botanical Latin, so that when the time comes for you to compose your own first description or diagnosis, starting off will not be the drama you feared, as at least you will understand the basic workings of the language and the methods used in translation. Likewise, with this primer as a guide, you should be able to translate most botanical texts written in Latin. Bear in mind that early botanical Latin – say, until 1850 or later – is more akin to classical Latin, and so texts from that time will require wider knowledge of grammar, or assistance from a Latin scholar.

In many examples in this book, we give the literal translation into English as well as the colloquial so that the differences between the two languages can be demonstrated. This means that the English may sometimes appear slightly unusual or stilted, as the word order will be a bit eccentric.

Whereas classical Latin is a dead language, botanical Latin is very much alive and kicking and has evolved to include a goodly smattering of Greek words – which are then ‘forced’ into behaving as Latin words instead of being declined in a Greek way, which can cause wincing, groans and horror in the Classical establishment. The classical Latin alphabet comprised 23 letters, that is, the modern Latin alphabet minus ‘j’, ‘u’ and ‘w’. The letter ‘k’ was rarely used and ‘y’ appeared in few words, mainly of Greek origin. The letter ‘u’, which was pronounced as a vowel, was represented by ‘v’ and came into use when lower-case letters were developed much later. (Did you know that lower case letters didn’t exist when letters were first invented?) In botanical Latin we use the whole English alphabet. The letter ‘j’ represents the consonantal or classical ‘i’ and is pronounced like the ‘y’ in ‘yes’.

Latin is a highly inflected language which means that not only do words change according to whether they are singular or plural, e.g. ‘flower’ and

‘flowers’ in English, but also the relationship of the word to the rest of the sentence, whether it is the subject or object, whether it is governed by a preposition, and so on, can be deduced from the ending of the word. In other words, the subject and object of a verb are not denoted by their positions relative to the verb within the sentence (in English, sentence construction is based upon subject, verb and object in that order), but the sense is incorporated into the nouns themselves, e.g.

The boy picked the fruit

*Puer fructum carpit or fructum carpit puer or fructum puer carpit*

In each of the three Latin examples above, exactly the same words with therefore exactly the same meanings are used, although they are written in three different orders. Grammatically, the sentences are still the same, although the emphasis has been changed. If this is tried in English, however, the sentence is rapidly reduced to nonsense (unless the author is writing Romantic poetry: Alexander Pope ‘Pleasures the sex, as children birds, pursue, Still out of reach, yet never out of view ...’) (Epistle II. To a Lady. Of the Characters of Women 1743).

A few curiosities about Latin:

- there is no article (the, a, an), and
- there are no words for ‘yes’ and ‘no’ – instead you make a statement in the positive or negative.

## Why do botanists need Latin?

A good explanation was given by Lack (2011), although it was published just before the XVI International Botanical Congress in Melbourne and thus with the future of botanical Latin uncertain. We set out the main reasons thus:

1. It is one of two languages allowed for describing new taxa under the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants* (Melbourne Code, in preparation). See below for requirements from 1935 to 2011.
2. We need it in order to understand the many texts written in Latin, especially those without a translation into any other language.
3. Latin can help us to know plants if an epithet is descriptive and hence to apply that name; e.g. if our plant has white flowers then we can be reasonably sure that it is not a species with the epithet *coccineus* (scarlet).
4. It’s a great language and can help in understanding both English grammar and the origin of many words, not only English but also of other Romance languages.

5. It now belongs to no country, so is impartial, and it enables a reader anywhere to understand a description or diagnosis, even if the accompanying text is in a language that they cannot read.

Although it is no longer mandatory to provide a Latin description or diagnosis, it is important to understand the requirements that were in force previously. The *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* (Vienna Code, McNeill *et al.*, 2006) refers to Latin in four Articles – 23, 32, 36 and 60. Of these the most important is Article 36.

*Article 36.1* On or after 1 January 1935 a name of a new taxon (algal and all fossil taxa excepted) must, in order to be validly published, be accompanied by a Latin description or diagnosis or by a reference to a previously and effectively published Latin description or diagnosis.

*Article 36.2* In order to be validly published, a name of a new taxon of non-fossil algae published on or after 1 January 1958 must be accompanied by a Latin description or diagnosis or by a reference to a previously and effectively published Latin description or diagnosis.

*Article 36.3* In order to be validly published, a name of a new taxon of fossil plants published on or after 1 January 1996 must be accompanied by a Latin or English description or diagnosis or by a reference to a previously and effectively published Latin or English description or diagnosis.

*Recommendation 36A.1* Authors publishing names of new taxa of non-fossil plants should give or cite a full description in Latin in addition to the diagnosis.

These rules ceased to be effective on 1 January 2012 but still apply to names published between the dates cited and 31 December 2011. At the Nomenclature Sessions of the XVIII International Botanical Congress held in Melbourne, Australia, in July 2011 a decision was taken to allow new taxa to be accompanied by a description in *either* Latin *or* English from 1 January 2012. The relevant Articles in the Melbourne Code will be 39, 43 and 44.

Note that nowhere does the *Code* stipulate that a description or diagnosis must be *correct* Latin. Examples abound of errors, some so serious that the diagnosis or description is nonsensical.

Article 23 of the *Code* explains how the names of species should be formed. Article 60 explains the orthography and gender of names. They can be formed using only letters of the modern Latin alphabet (which is the same as the English alphabet).

It is worth reading the introductory parts of William Stearn's *Botanical Latin*. You will find his text both instructive and entertaining. It's even better, of course, to read the whole book, though it is not the kind of work that you read from cover to cover – rather, you refer to it for advice or information.

In this Primer, references to Stearn's *Botanical Latin* are to the 4th edition (1992 and later reprintings).

Incidentally, the names of languages are usually written with an initial capital, hence it should always be Latin.

A word of advice right now. If in doubt, **look it up. *don't guess!***

## Consulting a Latin dictionary or vocabulary

When searching for a word in a Latin dictionary, remember that you have to look under the nominative singular for a noun, the masculine nominative singular for an adjective (and often for the comparative forms), and the first person indicative active of a verb. You will also see horizontal lines over many vowels; these are macrons and are placed there by modern editors to indicate pronunciation, an integral part of classical Latin. Botanists, however, leave them out, and a good diagnosis doesn't depend upon rhythm and scansion!

## Overview

We start with the *parts of speech*. Those that we normally require for botanical Latin are:

- noun
- adjective
- adverb
- pronoun
- preposition
- conjunction
- verb.

We have to know about *declensions*, i.e. declining nouns, adjectives and pronouns. There are five declensions.

We have to know about *comparison*, i.e. comparing adjectives and adverbs. There are three degrees though, in practice, we think only of two – comparative and superlative.

We have to know about *gender*, i.e. whether nouns are masculine, feminine or neuter.

We have to know about *number*, i.e. singular and plural.

We have to know about *conjugating* verbs, i.e. distinguishing person, number, tense and voice. There are four conjugations.

Like most languages, Latin has some irregularities with words that are treated differently from the rest.

These topics are expanded in the following pages.

Bear in mind that you do not have to learn everything by rote (as we were expected to do at school). The part of speech is always indicated in the dictionary or vocabulary, likewise the declension or conjugation, gender, etc. And books such as Stearn's explain fully declensions, comparison of adjectives and conjugations. But clearly, the more you learn the better, as it will speed up your work.





## Part I

---

## Grammar



## The noun (Stearn pp. 57–88)

A noun is the name of a thing, person, place or quality, e.g. plant, Bentham, Australia, air, knowledge, beauty. A generic name is also a noun. A Latin noun has *number* (singular or plural) and *gender* (masculine, feminine or neuter). It is *declined* by changing the ending of the word in order to give different meanings and to show its relationship to other words in a sentence. These endings are called *cases*. There are five groups, or declensions, of nouns, called simply the First, Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth Declensions. Nouns of each declension form their word endings (cases) in the same way when they are declined. The various endings are attached to the *stem* of the word, which is the ‘core’ or basic part of a word that remains the same when letters are added to give different cases. The stem of a noun is derived differently according to its declension. To decline a noun fully is to list its forms in all the cases, both singular and plural.

Within a declension there are, for practical purposes, six cases, but for botanical Latin you need to know just five. Then, there are two numbers – singular when there is just one, and plural when there are two or more. The case endings are changed to indicate the plural form. Unfortunately, some case endings are used more than once with different meanings.

The cases are (Stearn pp. 62–66)

**Nominative** – used when the noun is the subject of a sentence (We use ‘sentence’ in the sense of a group of words terminated with a full stop; normally it includes a verb but botanical Latin commonly omits the verb in its telegraphic style.)

**Accusative** – used when the noun is the object, either of a sentence or after a noun within a compound sentence. It is commonly used with a preposition.

**Genitive** – indicates possession, the ‘of’ case, e.g. the surface *of a leaf*, also given in English as the *leaf’s* surface (the possessive ‘s’, not to be confused with s showing one or more missing letters, as in ‘she’s right’).

**Dative** – indicates ‘to’ or ‘for’ something, e.g. ‘A’ is related to [or similar to] ‘B’ (but not when some motion or action is involved, e.g. ‘joined to the stem’, when you use the accusative). It also indicates possession, e.g. *mihi* (literally ‘to me’, i.e. ‘mine’) and *nobis* (‘to us’, i.e. ‘ours’).

**Ablative** – indicates ‘by’, ‘with’, ‘from’ or ‘in’ something, e.g. anther *with apiculum*, fruit *with horns*, written *by Linnaeus*.

We now come to the declensions themselves. Where possible we use botanical terms as the examples and, for many of them, since you may have access to Stearn, different examples from his. The genders are denoted by m. (masculine), n. (neuter) and f. (feminine).

### First declension (Stearn pp. 66–68)

When you look up the Latin for a noun, **always** check not only the declension *number*, but also the *gender*, especially if you are going to add further description of the noun, e.g. white petals. Usually the gender is indicated by the ending of the nominative case of a noun, but there are exceptions. Thus, nouns of the First Declension are usually feminine, but we also give the masculine *agricola* below.

**Example:** *macula* (f.) a spot

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>macula</i>	the/a spot (subject)	<i>maculae</i>	the spots (subject)
Accusative	<i>maculam</i>	the/a spot (object)	<i>maculas</i>	the spots (object)
Genitive	<i>maculae</i>	of a spot	<i>macularum</i>	of the spots
Dative	<i>maculae</i>	to/for a spot	<i>maculis</i>	to/for the spots
Ablative	<i>macula</i>	by/with/from a spot	<i>maculis</i>	by/with/from the spots

**Example:** *agricola* (m.) field-dweller

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>agricola</i>	the/a field-dweller (subject)	<i>agricolae</i>	the field-dwellers (subject)
Accusative	<i>agricolam</i>	the/a field-dweller (object)	<i>agricolas</i>	the field-dwellers (object)
Genitive	<i>agricolae</i>	of a field-dweller	<i>agricolarum</i>	of the field-dwellers
Dative	<i>agricolae</i>	to/for a field-dweller	<i>agricolis</i>	to/for the field-dwellers
Ablative	<i>agricola</i>	by/with/from a field-dweller	<i>agricolis</i>	by/with/from the field-dwellers

Note that the main part of the noun – in these examples ‘*macul-*’ and ‘*agricol-*’ – remains the same: this is called the *stem* (not to be confused with the stem of a plant, although it *is* the part of a noun to which other parts are attached). In nouns of the First Declension, the stem is usually the nominative of the noun less its final letter. Note also that some endings are the same for different cases. This is less of a problem when translating *into* Latin, since you determine the appropriate ending and use it. When translating *from* Latin, you can usually determine the case from the position of the word in the sentence and any associated words.

Many names of genera ending in *-a* are declined like *macula*. You rarely need to decline them unless comparing one genus with another, e.g. *Grevillea* with *Hakea*, but you can avoid this by abbreviating them (*G.*, *H.*), provided that your meaning is unambiguous.

Likewise, many geographical names end in *-a* (e.g. *Australia*) and are also declined this way, though, again, you rarely need to do so, and almost never in the plural form.

Feminine personal names such as *Helena* and *Julia* are declined in the First Declension.

Words ending in *-cola* (which means inhabitant) are often used as specific epithets. Examples include *saxicola* (inhabitant of rocks), *nivicola* (inhabitant of snow), *planticola* (inhabitant of plants, for an epiphyte). When used as epithets, they are used as nouns in apposition and are of common gender, i.e. masculine, feminine or neuter, and so, regardless of the gender of a generic name, they are declined like *agricola*, above.

Some nouns of Greek origin, ending in *-e*, are First Declension and have some different case endings. They are generally used only in the singular. Examples are *pseudoraphe* and generic names such as *Aloe*, *Anemone*, *Michrochaete*.

**Example:** *micropyle* (f.) micropyle

Case		Singular
Nominative	<i>micropyle</i>	micropyle (subject)
Accusative	<i>micropylen</i>	micropyle (object)
Genitive	<i>micropyles</i>	of a micropyle
Dative	<i>micropylae</i>	to/for a micropyle
Ablative	<i>micropyle</i>	by/with/from a micropyle

**Second declension** (Stearn pp. 68–71)

To the Second Declension belong most nouns ending in *-us*, and also *-um* and *-er*. In those ending in *-er* the stem is also slightly modified once you leave the nominative singular. Nouns of this declension ending in *-us* are almost all masculine, exceptions being *virus* which is neuter, and the names of trees, which are commonly feminine; those ending in *-um* are neuter; and those ending in *-er* are either masculine or, occasionally, feminine.

Thus, we need several examples to illustrate this declension. First, words ending in *-us*.

**Example:** *ramus* (m.) a branch

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>ramus</i>	the/a branch (subject)	<i>rami</i>	the branches (subject)
Accusative	<i>ramum</i>	the/a branch (object)	<i>ramos</i>	the branches (object)
Genitive	<i>rami</i>	of a branch	<i>ramorum</i>	of the branches
Dative	<i>ramo</i>	to/for a branch	<i>ramis</i>	to/for the branches
Ablative	<i>ramo</i>	by/with/from a branch	<i>ramis</i>	by/with/from the branches

Here the stem is *ram-*, i.e. you drop the last two letters, *us*. Most generic names ending in *-us* (e.g. *Eriochilus*, *Sonchus*) are declined this way, and most are masculine except those containing all or mostly trees, such as *Eucalyptus*, which are feminine (the Romans believed that every tree was the home of a female nymph or dryad). Most Latinised masculine personal names are also declined like *ramus*, e.g. Linnaeus. The Greek *-anthos* is declined in the same way as its more common Latin ending *-anthus*, i.e. apart from the nominative singular it's like *ramus*.

Next, words ending in *-um*.

**Example:** *rostrum* (n.) a beak

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>rostrum</i>	the/a beak (subject)	<i>rostra</i>	the beaks (subject)
Accusative	<i>rostrum</i>	the/a beak (object)	<i>rostra</i>	the beaks (object)
Genitive	<i>rostri</i>	of a beak	<i>rostrorum</i>	of the beaks
Dative	<i>rostro</i>	to/for a beak	<i>rostris</i>	to/for the beaks
Ablative	<i>rostro</i>	by/with/from a beak	<i>rostris</i>	by/with/from the beaks

Like the last, the stem is formed by dropping the last two letters, thus *rostr-*. Here you have to remember that *rostrum* is neuter, hence the plural *-a* ending differs in meaning from the singular *-a* ending of nouns of the First Declension.

Generic names ending in *-um* are all neuter and are declined this way, e.g. *Crinum*. So, also, are nouns and generic names taken from Greek and ending in *-on* (e.g. *Abutilon*), treating the *-on* ending as if it were *-um*.

Then, words ending in *-er*. Here there is a complication because the stem is modified, but in botanical Latin you have to deal with very few, most *-er* nouns being in the Third Declension. Our example is *liber* (a book, inner bark), an important word to know in order to avoid confusion with the adjective *liber* (free), which we will meet later. To form the stem, the *-er* ending is changed to *-r*, giving *libr-*. Here sit a few generic names such as *Cotoneaster* and personal names such as Solander.

**Example:** *liber* (m.) a book

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>liber</i>	the/a book (subject)	<i>libri</i>	the books (subject)
Accusative	<i>librum</i>	the/a book (object)	<i>libros</i>	the books (object)
Genitive	<i>libri</i>	of a book	<i>librorum</i>	of the books
Dative	<i>libro</i>	to/for a book	<i>libris</i>	to/for the books
Ablative	<i>libro</i>	by/with/from a book	<i>libris</i>	by/with/from the books

**Third declension** (Stearn pp. 72–87)

In the Third Declension we deal with nouns of all genders, with the nominative case ending in *-al*, *-ar*, *-as*, *-ax*, *-e*, *-en*, *-er*, *-es*, *-ex*, *-i*, *-in*, *-is*, *-ix*, *-ma*, *-nx*, *-o*, *-on*, *-or*, *-os*, *-s* (after a consonant), *-us*, *-ut*, *-ux*, *-ys* and *-yx*. You rarely have to deal with some of these, so we will not go further here with those ending in *-i*, *-in* and *-ys*.

Here we have cases typically ending in *-em* (accusative singular), *-is* (genitive singular), *-i* (dative singular), *-e* or *-i* (ablative singular), *-es* or *-a* (nominative and accusative plural), *-um* (genitive plural), and *-ibus* (dative and ablative plural).

Note that in some, the nominative and accusative singular have the same ending, but in others these cases differ. In all nouns of the Third Declension, the nominative and accusative plural are the same.

At this point, we have to confess a slight complication. Comparing the endings of the Third Declension above carefully with the tables of nouns over the next few pages, you will notice that some form the ablative singular with *-i*, and the nominative, accusative and genitive plural also with an extra *-i*. These are called *i*-stem nouns. They retain an *-i* at the end of their stem and are divided into two groups: neuter nouns that end in *-al*, *-ar* and *-re*, and masculine or feminine nouns, which are almost all monosyllabic, ending in *-s* or *-x* while having two consonants at the end of the genitive stem (e.g. *dens*, *dentis*, masculine, tooth, and *nox*, *noctis*, feminine, night). The extra *-i* tends to feature in masculine and feminine *i*- stems in the genitive plural only, whereas in neuter nouns the *i* appears in the ablative singular, nominative, accusative and genitive plurals.

**Nouns ending in -al**

Botanical Latin words with this ending are few, but we include an example in case you have to use one. They are neuter.

**Example:** *animal* (n.) an animal

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>animal</i>	the/an animal (subject)	<i>animalia</i>	the animals (subject)
Accusative	<i>animal</i>	the/an animal (object)	<i>animalia</i>	the animals (object)
Genitive	<i>animalis</i>	of a animals animal	<i>animalium</i>	of the animals
Dative	<i>animali</i>	to/for an animals	<i>animalibus</i>	to/for the animals
Ablative	<i>animali</i>	by/with/from an animals	<i>animalibus</i>	by/with/from the animals

**Nouns ending in -ar**

**Example:** *par* (n.) a pair

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>par</i>	the/a pair (subject)	<i>paria</i>	the pairs (subject)
Accusative	<i>par</i>	the/a pair (object)	<i>paria</i>	the pairs (object)
Genitive	<i>paris</i>	of a pair	<i>parium</i>	of the pairs
Dative	<i>pari</i>	to/for a pair	<i>paribus</i>	to/for the pairs
Ablative	<i>pari</i>	by/with/from a pair	<i>paribus</i>	by/with/from the pairs

Further examples are *calcar* (a spur), *nectar* (nectar [not nectary, which is *nectarium*]). These are neuter.



**Nouns ending in -as**

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>varietas</i>	the/a variety (subject)	<i>varietates</i>	the varieties (subject)
Accusative	<i>varietatem</i>	the/a variety (object)	<i>varietates</i>	the varieties (object)
Genitive	<i>varietatis</i>	of a variety	<i>varietatum</i>	of the varieties
Dative	<i>varietati</i>	to/for a variety	<i>varietatibus</i>	to/for the varieties
Ablative	<i>varietate</i>	by/with/from a variety	<i>varietatibus</i>	by/with/from the varieties

Sometimes a 't' is inserted before the case endings, as in the example below, and at other times a 'd', so generic names such as *Cycas* form the genitive singular *Cycadis*.

**Example:** *varietas* (f.) a variety

**Nouns ending in -ax**

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<b>Smilax</b>	the/a <i>Smilax</i> (subject)	<i>Smilaces</i>	the <i>Smilaxes</i> (subject)
Accusative	<i>Smilacem</i>	the/a <i>Smilax</i> (object)	<i>Smilaces</i>	the <i>Smilaxes</i> (object)
Genitive	<i>Smilacis</i>	of a <i>Smilax</i>	<i>Smilacum</i>	of the <i>Smilaxes</i>
Dative	<i>Smilaci</i>	to/for a <i>Smilax</i>	<i>Smilacibus</i>	to/for the <i>Smilaxes</i>
Ablative	<i>Smilace</i>	by/with/from a <i>Smilax</i>	<i>Smilacibus</i>	by/with/from the <i>Smilaxes</i>

Botanical Latin words with this ending seem to be all genera, but we include an example in case you have to use one. Some are masculine, some feminine.

**Nouns ending in -e**

The stem is formed by removing the final 'e'. These nouns are neuter.

**Example:** *vegetabile* (n.) a plant

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>vegetabile</i>	the/a plant (subject)	<i>vegetabilia</i>	the plants (subject)
Accusative	<i>vegetabile</i>	the/a plant (object)	<i>vegetabilia</i>	the plants (object)
Genitive	<i>vegetabilis</i>	of a plant	<i>vegetabilium</i>	of the plants
Dative	<i>vegetabili</i>	to/for a plant	<i>vegetabilibus</i>	to/for the plants
Ablative	<i>vegetabili</i>	by/with/from a plant	<i>vegetabilibus</i>	by/with/from the plants

Like *vegetabile* is *mare* (the sea).

### Nouns ending in -en

The stem is the nominative form modified to *legumin-*. These nouns are all neuter.

**Example:** *legumen* (n.) a pod

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>legumen</i>	the/a pod (subject)	<i>legumina</i>	the pods (subject)
Accusative	<i>legumen</i>	the/a pod (object)	<i>legumina</i>	the pods (object)
Genitive	<i>leguminis</i>	of a pod	<i>leguminum</i>	of the pods
Dative	<i>legumini</i>	to/for a pod	<i>leguminibus</i>	to/for the pods
Ablative	<i>legumine</i>	by/with/from a pod	<i>leguminibus</i>	by/with/from the pods

Another example is *cacumen* (a peak, summit).

### Nouns ending in -er

The stem is the nominative form. These are all neuter.

**Example:** *Papaver* (n.) a genus of Papaveraceae

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>Papaver</i>	the/a poppy (subject)	<i>Papavera</i>	the poppies (subject)
Accusative	<i>Papaver</i>	the/a poppy (object)	<i>Papavera</i>	the poppies (object)
Genitive	<i>Papaveris</i>	of a poppy	<i>Papaverum</i>	of the poppies
Dative	<i>Papaveri</i>	to/for a poppy	<i>Papaveribus</i>	to/for the poppies
Ablative	<i>Papavere</i>	by/with/from a poppy	<i>Papaveribus</i>	by/with/from the poppies

### Nouns ending in -es

The stem is formed by dropping the *-es* and adding *-it-*. These are either masculine or feminine.

**Example:** *caespes* (m.) a tuft

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>caespes</i>	the/a tuft (subject)	<i>caespites</i>	the tufts (subject)
Accusative	<i>caespitem</i>	the/a tuft (object)	<i>caespites</i>	the tufts (object)
Genitive	<i>caespitis</i>	of a tuft	<i>caespitum</i>	of the tufts
Dative	<i>caespiti</i>	to/for a tuft	<i>caespitibus</i>	to/for the tufts
Ablative	<i>caespite</i>	by/with/from a tuft	<i>caespitibus</i>	by/with/from the tufts

So also *stipes* (a stipe). Note variation for *paries* (a wall) in retaining the ‘e’ for the stem, e.g. *parietis*.

### Nouns ending in -ex

The stem is formed by dropping the -ex and adding -ic-. These are either masculine or feminine.

**Example:** *frutex* (m.) a shrub

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>frutex</i>	the/a shrub (subject)	<i>frutices</i>	the shrubs (subject)
Accusative	<i>fruticem</i>	the/a shrub (object)	<i>frutices</i>	the shrubs (object)
Genitive	<i>fruticis</i>	of a shrub	<i>fruticum</i>	of the shrubs
Dative	<i>frutici</i>	to/for a shrub	<i>fruticibus</i>	to/for the shrubs
Ablative	<i>frutice</i>	by/with/from a shrub	<i>fruticibus</i>	by/with/from the shrubs

Be careful not confuse *frutex* with the genitive, dative and ablative plural of *fructus*, a fruit, Fourth Declension). So also *cortex*. Generic names declined thus include *Atriplex*, *Carex* and *Vitex*.

### Nouns ending in -is

This is the standard declension for a noun ending in -is, i.e. the stem drops the ‘is’ from the nominative. These nouns are masculine or feminine.

**Example:** *axis* (m.) an axis

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>axis</i>	the/an axis (subject)	<i>axes</i>	the axes (subject)
Accusative	<i>axem</i>	the/an axis (object)	<i>axes</i>	the axes (object)
Genitive	<i>axis</i>	of an axis	<i>axium</i>	of the axes
Dative	<i>axi</i>	to/for an axis	<i>axibus</i>	to/for the axes
Ablative	<i>axe</i>	by/with an axis	<i>axibus</i>	by/with the axes

Some -is nouns have a different stem, inserting ‘d’ after the ‘i’, as in the following example, *epidermis*. The stem replaces the final ‘s’ of the nominative form with ‘d’. Another example is *rhachis*, although this can also be declined

like *axis*. Of similar formation but with ‘n’ or ‘t’ instead of ‘d’ are some genera, e.g. *Stenactis* (Genitive *Stenactinis*), *Eleocharis* (Genitive *Eleocharitis*).

**Example:** *epidermis* (f.) epidermis

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>epidermis</i>	the/an epidermis (subject)	<i>epidermides</i>	the epidermises (subject)
Accusative	<i>epidermidem</i>	the/an epidermis (object)	<i>epidermides</i>	the epidermises (object)
Genitive	<i>epidermidis</i>	of an epidermis	<i>epidermidum</i>	of the epidermises
Dative	<i>epidermidi</i>	to/for an epidermis	<i>epidermidibus</i>	to/for the epidermises
Ablative	<i>epidermide</i>	by/with/from an epidermis	<i>epidermidibus</i>	by/with/from the epidermises

A commonly used word derived from Greek is *basis* (base), which we decline in all its anomalous glory below.

*basis* (f.) base

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>basis</i>	the/a/ base (subject)	<i>bases</i>	the bases (subject)
Accusative	<i>basim/basin/basem</i>	the/a base (object)	<i>bases</i>	the bases (object)
Genitive	<i>basis/baseos</i>	of the base	<i>basium</i>	of the bases
Dative	<i>base</i>	to/for the base	<i>basibus</i>	to/for the bases
Ablative	<i>basi/base</i>	by/with/from the base	<i>basibus</i>	by/with/from the bases

Similarly declined is *anthesis*.

### Nouns ending in -ix

The stem is formed by replacing the ‘x’ with ‘c’. Other examples are *cicatrix* (a scar), *filix* (a fern) and *radix* (a root). These nouns are all feminine.

**Example:** *spadix* (f.) a spadix

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>spadix</i>	the/a spadix (subject)	<i>spadices</i>	the spadices (subject)
Accusative	<i>spadicem</i>	the/a spadix (object)	<i>spadices</i>	the spadices (object)
Genitive	<i>spadicis</i>	of a spadix	<i>spadicum</i>	of the spadices
Dative	<i>spadici</i>	to/for a spadix	<i>spadicibus</i>	to/for the spadices
Ablative	<i>spadice</i>	by/with/from a spadix	<i>spadicibus</i>	by/with/from the spadices

Another example is *nix* (f.) snow, the stem of which is formed slightly differently, the ‘x’ being replaced by ‘v’.

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>nix</i>	the snow (subject)	<i>nives</i>	the snow (subject)
Accusative	<i>nivem</i>	the snow (object)	<i>nives</i>	the snow (object)
Genitive	<i>nivis</i>	of the snow	<i>nivum</i>	of the snow
Dative	<i>nivi</i>	to/for the snow	<i>nivibus</i>	to/for the snow
Ablative	<i>nive</i>	by/with/from the snow	<i>nivibus</i>	by/with/from the snow

### ***Nouns ending in -ma***

The stem is formed by adding ‘t’ to the nominative case. Other examples are *stigma* (a stigma) and *rhizoma* (a rhizome). They are derived from Greek and all are neuter.

**Example:** *trichoma* (n.) a trichome, hair

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>trichoma</i>	the/a hair (subject)	<i>trichomata</i>	the hairs (subject)
Accusative	<i>trichoma</i>	the/a hair (object)	<i>trichomata</i>	the hairs (object)
Genitive	<i>trichomatis</i>	of a hair	<i>trichomatium</i>	of the hairs
Dative	<i>trichomati</i>	to/for a hair	<i>trichomatibus</i>	to/for the hairs
Ablative	<i>trichomate</i>	by/with a hair	<i>trichomatibus</i>	by/with the hairs

### ***Noun ending in -nx***

There’s only one, *phalanx* (f.) a bundle, with the stem formed by removing ‘x’ from the nominative case and adding ‘g’.

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>phalanx</i>	the/a bundle (subject)	<i>phalanges</i>	the bundles (subject)
Accusative	<i>phalangem</i>	the/a bundle (object)	<i>phalanges</i>	the bundles (object)
Genitive	<i>phalangis</i>	of a bundle	<i>phalangium</i>	of the bundles
Dative	<i>phalangi</i>	to/for a bundle	<i>phalangibus</i>	to/for the bundles
Ablative	<i>phalange</i>	by/with a bundle	<i>phalangibus</i>	by/with the bundles

**Nouns ending in -o**

In most, the stem is formed by adding ‘n’ to the nominative form, but in some the ‘o’ is dropped first. In *caro* (flesh), the stem is just *car-*, hence the genitive is *carnis*, ablative *carne* etc. Some have the genitive singular form *-inis* (e.g. *margo*), others *-onis* (e.g. *mucro*). Most of these nouns are feminine, but some are masculine.

**Example:** *stolo* (m.) a stolon

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>stolo</i>	the/a stolon (subject)	<i>stolones</i>	the stolons (subject)
Accusative	<i>stolonem</i>	the/a stolon (object)	<i>stolones</i>	the stolons (object)
Genitive	<i>stolonis</i>	of a stolon	<i>stolonum</i>	of the stolons
Dative	<i>stoloni</i>	to/for a stolon	<i>stolonibus</i>	to/for the stolons
Ablative	<i>stolone</i>	by/with a stolon	<i>stolonibus</i>	by/with the stolons

**Example:** *margo* (m. or f.) a margin

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>margo</i>	the/a margin (subject)	<i>marginēs</i>	the margins (subject)
Accusative	<i>marginem</i>	the/a margin (object)	<i>marginēs</i>	the margins (object)
Genitive	<i>marginis</i>	of a margin	<i>marginum</i>	of the margins
Dative	<i>margini</i>	to/for a margin	<i>marginibus</i>	to/for the margins
Ablative	<i>marginē</i>	by/with a margin	<i>marginibus</i>	by/with the margins

**Nouns ending in -on**

There are two forms. In some the stem is the same as the nominative singular. These are either masculine or feminine. In others (generic names) the stem is formed by adding ‘t’ to the nominative singular. Some genera ending in *-on* are masculine (e.g. *Leontopodon*), some are feminine (e.g. *Cotyledon*) and others neuter (e.g. *Lycopersicon*). If you are unsure, then you should probably refer to the *International Plant Names Index*, and see what other botanists have done.

**Example:** *cotyledon* (f.) a cotyledon

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>cotyledon</i>	the/a cotyledon (subject)	<i>cotyledones</i>	the cotyledons (subject)
Accusative	<i>cotyledonem</i>	the/a cotyledon (object)	<i>cotyledones</i>	the cotyledons (object)
Genitive	<i>cotyledonis</i>	of a cotyledon	<i>cotyledonum</i>	of the cotyledons
Dative	<i>cotyledoni</i>	to/for a cotyledon	<i>cotyledonibus</i>	to/for the cotyledons
Ablative	<i>cotyledone</i>	by/with a cotyledon	<i>cotyledonibus</i>	by/with the cotyledons

**Example:** *Erigeron* (m.) a genus of Asteraceae

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>Erigeron</i>	the/an <i>Erigeron</i> (subject)	<i>Erigerontes</i>	the <i>Erigerons</i> (subject)
Accusative	<i>Erigerontem</i>	the/an <i>Erigeron</i> (object)	<i>Erigerontes</i>	the <i>Erigerons</i> (object)
Genitive	<i>Erigerontis</i>	of an <i>Erigeron</i>	<i>Erigerontum</i>	of the <i>Erigerons</i>
Dative	<i>Erigeronti</i>	to/for an <i>Erigeron</i>	<i>Erigerontibus</i>	to/for the <i>Erigerons</i>
Ablative	<i>Erigeronte</i>	by/with an <i>Erigeron</i>	<i>Erigerontibus</i>	by/with the <i>Erigerons</i>

### ***Nouns ending in -or***

The stem is the same as the nominative form. Some are masculine, some feminine. Similarly declined are *color* (a colour), *auctor* (an author) and the genus *Mucor*.

**Example:** *odor* (m.) a scent

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>odor</i>	the/a scent (subject)	<i>odores</i>	the scents (subject)
Accusative	<i>odorem</i>	the/a scent (object)	<i>odores</i>	the scents (object)
Genitive	<i>odoris</i>	of a scent	<i>odorum</i>	of the scents
Dative	<i>odori</i>	to/for a scent	<i>odoribus</i>	to/for the scents
Ablative	<i>odore</i>	by/with a scent	<i>odoribus</i>	by/with the scents

**Nouns ending in -os**

To form the stem, the ‘s’ of the nominative is replaced by ‘r’. These are masculine.

**Example:** *flos* (m.) a flower

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>flos</i>	the/a flower (subject)	<i>flores</i>	the flowers (subject)
Accusative	<i>florem</i>	the/a flower (object)	<i>flores</i>	the flowers (object)
Genitive	<i>floris</i>	of a flower	<i>florum</i>	of the flowers
Dative	<i>flori</i>	to/for a flower	<i>floribus</i>	to/for the flowers
Ablative	<i>flore</i>	by/with/from a flower	<i>floribus</i>	by/with/from the flowers

**Nouns ending in -s after a consonant (usually ‘b’, ‘m’, ‘n’, ‘p’ or ‘r’)**

The stem is formed by replacing the ‘s’ of the nominative singular with ‘t’ or ‘d’. Note that, in this group, the genitive plural has an ‘i’. Other examples are *frons*, Genitive *frondis* (a frond) [but note also *frons*, Genitive *frontis* (the front, forehead)], *glans*, Genitive *glandis* (a gland). Some are masculine, some feminine.

**Example:** *dens* (m.) a tooth

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>dens</i>	the/a tooth (subject)	<i>dentes</i>	the teeth (subject)
Accusative	<i>dentem</i>	the/a tooth (object)	<i>dentes</i>	the teeth (object)
Genitive	<i>dentis</i>	of a tooth	<i>dentium</i>	of the teeth
Dative	<i>denti</i>	to/for a tooth	<i>dentibus</i>	to/for the teeth
Ablative	<i>dente</i>	by/with/from a tooth	<i>dentibus</i>	by/with/from the teeth

**Nouns ending in -us**

Yes, just to confuse you (and us!) there are nouns in the Third Declension ending in *-us*, the common ending in the Second and Fourth Declensions. Those in the Third Declension are neuter. Generally they are declined like nouns ending in *-er*. Like *genus* (given below) are *latus* (a side), *litus* (*littus*), Genitive *litoris* (a shore, bank). Note that the generic name *Pinus* may be either Second or Fourth Declension.



**Example:** *genus* (n.) a genus

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>genus</i>	the/a genus (subject)	<i>genera</i>	the genera (subject)
Accusative	<i>genus</i>	the/a genus (object)	<i>genera</i>	the genera (object)
Genitive	<i>generis</i>	of a genus	<i>generum</i>	of the genera
Dative	<i>generi</i>	to/for a genus	<i>generibus</i>	to/for the genera
Ablative	<i>genere</i>	by/with/from a genus	<i>generibus</i>	by/with/from the genera

### ***Nouns ending in -ut***

There are very few of these, but if you are describing a plant with heads then you may use *caput* (rather than *capitulum* which is really a diminutive form and Second Declension). The accusative singular repeats the nominative and then the stem replaces *-ut* with *-it*. Nominative and accusative plural end in ‘a’. These are neuter.

**Example:** *caput* (n.) head

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>caput</i>	the/a head (subject)	<i>capita</i>	the heads (subject)
Accusative	<i>caput</i>	the/a head (object)	<i>capita</i>	the heads (object)
Genitive	<i>capitis</i>	of a head	<i>capitum</i>	of the heads
Dative	<i>capiti</i>	to/for a head	<i>capitibus</i>	to/for the heads
Ablative	<i>capite</i>	by/with/from a head	<i>capitibus</i>	by/with/from the heads

### ***Nouns ending in -ux***

For the stem, the ‘x’ is replaced with ‘c’.

**Example:** *nux* (f.) a nut

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>nux</i>	the/a nut (subject)	<i>nuces</i>	the nuts (subject)
Accusative	<i>nucem</i>	the/a nut (object)	<i>nuces</i>	the nuts (object)
Genitive	<i>nucis</i>	of a nut	<i>nucum</i>	of the nuts
Dative	<i>nuci</i>	to/for a nut	<i>nucibus</i>	to/for the nuts
Ablative	<i>nuce</i>	by/with/from a nut	<i>nucibus</i>	by/with/from the nuts

**Nouns ending in -ys**

These are Greek words, in botany found only in compound generic names. Our example is *botrys* for which we adopt *botryd-* as the stem. Some names such as *Hypopitys* simply drop the ‘s’ to form the stem, to which the standard Third Declension endings are added.

**Example:** *botrys* (m.) a cluster of grapes

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>botrys</i>	the/a cluster of grapes (subject)	<i>botrydes</i>	the clusters of grapes (subject)
Accusative	<i>botrydem</i>	the/a cluster of grapes (object)	<i>botrydes</i>	the clusters of grapes (object)
Genitive	<i>botrydis</i>	of a cluster of grapes	<i>botrydum</i>	of the clusters of grapes
Dative	<i>botrydi</i>	to/for a cluster of grapes	<i>botrydibus</i>	to/for the clusters of grapes
Ablative	<i>botryde</i>	by/with/from a cluster of grapes	<i>botrydibus</i>	by/with/from the clusters of grapes

**Nouns ending in -yx**

Again, there are few of these, but they include *calyx*. For the stem the ‘x’ is replaced with ‘c’.

**Example:** *calyx* (m.) a calyx

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>calyx</i>	the/a calyx (subject)	<i>calyces</i>	the calyces (subject)
Accusative	<i>calycem</i>	the/a calyx (object)	<i>calyces</i>	the calyces (object)
Genitive	<i>calycis</i>	of a calyx	<i>calyculum</i>	of the calyces
Dative	<i>calyci</i>	to/for a calyx	<i>calycibus</i>	to/for the calyces
Ablative	<i>calyce</i>	by/with/from a calyx	<i>calycibus</i>	by/with/from the calyces

**Fourth declension** (Stearn pp. 87–88)

In this declension the nouns have a stem ending in ‘u’. The nominative singular ends in either ‘us’ (masculine or feminine) or just ‘u’ (all neuter).

## Nouns ending in -us

The stem drops the 'us'. *Fructus* (a fruit) is a noun that we warned about earlier – do not confuse some cases (especially dative and ablative plural) with *fruticibus* (from *frutex*, a shrub). Note, too, that the nominative and genitive singular and the nominative and accusative plural all end in 'us'. Like *fructus* are *habitus* (habit) and *lacus* (a lake).

**Example:** *fructus* (m.) a fruit

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>fructus</i>	the/a fruit (subject)	<i>fructus</i>	the fruits (subject)
Accusative	<i>fructum</i>	the/a fruit (object)	<i>fructus</i>	the fruits (object)
Genitive	<i>fructus</i>	of a fruit	<i>fructuum</i>	of the fruits
Dative	<i>fructui</i>	to/for a fruit	<i>fructibus</i>	to/for the fruits
Ablative	<i>fructu</i>	by/with/from a fruit	<i>fructibus</i>	by/with/from the fruits

## Nouns ending in -u

**Example:** *cornu* (n.) a horn The stem is the same as the nominative singular.

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>cornu</i>	the/a horn (subject)	<i>cornua</i>	the horns (subject)
Accusative	<i>cornu</i>	the/a horn (object)	<i>cornua</i>	the horns (object)
Genitive	<i>cornus</i>	of a horn	<i>cornuum</i>	of the horns
Dative	<i>cornui</i>	to/for a horn	<i>cornuibus</i>	to/for the horns
Ablative	<i>cornu</i>	by/with/from a horn	<i>cornuibus</i>	by/with/from the horns

## Fifth declension (Stearn p. 88)

Few nouns of this declension are used in botanical Latin, though two are taxonomic ranks – *species* and *series* (and variants thereof such as *subspecies*). All end in -es and drop the 's' to form the stem. Like *species* is *superficies* (a surface).

**Example:** *species* (f.) a species

Case		Singular		Plural
Nominative	<i>species</i>	the/a species (subject)	<i>species</i>	the species (subject)
Accusative	<i>speciem</i>	the/a species (object)	<i>species</i>	the species (object)
Genitive	<i>speciei</i>	of a species	<i>specierum</i>	of the species
Dative	<i>speciei</i>	to/for a species	<i>speciebus</i>	to/for the species
Ablative	<i>specie</i>	by/with/from a species	<i>speciebus</i>	by/with/from the species

## The adjective and the participle (Stearn pp. 89–102)

An adjective qualifies or adds meaning to a noun or pronoun by expressing a quality, e.g. a red flower, a prostrate shrub, a sweet scent, small spores, larger fronds. A Latin adjective must be declined so that its case, gender and number agree with those of the noun being qualified.

A participle is a part of a verb that can have the same function as an adjective, e.g. a climbing plant. It may be either a *present* participle (indicating something current) or a *past* participle (indicating something that has happened). In English the present participle is usually indicated by the ending ‘-ing’ (e.g. climbing, narrowing), and the past participle by the ending ‘-ed’ (e.g. rolled, folded). Past participles may have other endings, e.g. torn, seen.

Most descriptive specific epithets are either adjectives or adjectival in form, that is they describe an attribute of the plant. Sometimes we use a noun as an epithet and it is said to be *in apposition* since it is not necessarily explaining or qualifying the generic name and does not have to agree with it in number or gender. Unless it is indeclinable, however, its case does agree. This is important when it comes to writing diagnoses and both generic name and epithet may have to be in the dative or genitive, e.g. *Nymphaea lotus* (dative *Nymphaeae loto*), *Asclepias fruticosa* (genitive *Asclepiadis fruticosae*).

An example of an indeclinable epithet is *Ipomoea nil*; in other words, this is the only form of the word that exists; likewise *Eucalyptus wandoo* (an indigenous word). Thus, whenever the generic name is changed, as may occur in a diagnosis, the epithets *nil* and *wandoo* remain the same.

Epithets commemorating people are either singular or plural nouns in the genitive form (*clementii*, *wittwerorum*) or adjectival (*hookerianum*). These do not change when the generic name is declined.

Adjectives and participles must both be declined so that the case, gender and number agree with those of the noun being qualified. The cases are the same as for nouns, and most are placed in just two main groups for declension. These are called simply Group A and Group B. There is a third, small Group, C, for adjectives derived from Greek words.

In Groups B and C, some words are declined in the same way in the masculine and feminine and so are combined in some examples below – see *bicolor*, *elegans* and *schoenoides*. As with nouns, there is a stem, which is the

‘core’ or basic part of an adjective that remains unaltered even as the endings change for the different cases.

In botanical Latin, an adjective is always placed *after* the noun that it qualifies, except occasionally for emphasis.

In the tables below the abbreviations Masculine, Feminine and Neuter indicate masculine, feminine and neuter.

In **Group A** (Stearn pp. 90–92) are those adjectives and participles with the nominative singular ending in *-us* (masculine), *-a* (feminine) or *-um* (neuter), or in *-er* (masculine), *-ra* (feminine) or *-rum* (neuter).

**Example:** *hirsutus* (hirsute). The stem is formed by dropping *-us* from the nominative singular.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>hirsutus</i>	<i>hirsuta</i>	<i>hirsutum</i>	<i>hirsuti</i>	<i>hirsutae</i>	<i>hirsuta</i>
Accusative	<i>hirsutum</i>	<i>hirsutam</i>	<i>hirsutum</i>	<i>hirsutos</i>	<i>hirsutas</i>	<i>hirsuta</i>
Genitive	<i>hirsuti</i>	<i>hirsutae</i>	<i>hirsuti</i>	<i>hirsutorum</i>	<i>hirsutarum</i>	<i>hirsutorum</i>
Dative	<i>hirsuto</i>	<i>hirsutae</i>	<i>hirsuto</i>	<i>hirsutis</i>	<i>hirsutis</i>	<i>hirsutis</i>
Ablative	<i>hirsuto</i>	<i>hirsute</i>	<i>hirsuto</i>	<i>hirsutis</i>	<i>hirsutis</i>	<i>hirsutis</i>

**Example:** *liber* (free) [not to be confused with the noun *liber*, book, inner bark of a tree]. The stem is the same as the nominative masculine singular.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberi</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
Accusative	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberos</i>	<i>liberas</i>	<i>libera</i>
Genitive	<i>liberi</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberi</i>	<i>liberorum</i>	<i>liberarum</i>	<i>liberorum</i>
Dative	<i>libero</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libero</i>	<i>liberis</i>	<i>liberis</i>	<i>liberis</i>
Ablative	<i>libero</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>libero</i>	<i>liberis</i>	<i>liberis</i>	<i>liberis</i>

But some adjectives in *-er* are declined differently, the stem being formed by dropping the *-er*.

**Example:** *integer* (entire).

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>integer</i>	<i>integra</i>	<i>integrum</i>	<i>integri</i>	<i>integrae</i>	<i>integra</i>
Accusative	<i>integrum</i>	<i>integram</i>	<i>integrum</i>	<i>integros</i>	<i>integras</i>	<i>integra</i>
Genitive	<i>integri</i>	<i>integrae</i>	<i>integri</i>	<i>integrorum</i>	<i>integrarum</i>	<i>integrorum</i>
Dative	<i>integrō</i>	<i>integrae</i>	<i>integrō</i>	<i>integrīs</i>	<i>integrīs</i>	<i>integrīs</i>
Ablative	<i>integrō</i>	<i>integra</i>	<i>integrō</i>	<i>integrīs</i>	<i>integrīs</i>	<i>integrīs</i>

In **Group B** (Stearn pp. 92–95) are adjectives and participles with the nominative singular ending in *-is* (masculine and feminine), *-e* (neuter), *-er* (masculine), *-ris* (feminine) and *-re* (neuter), and those ending in *-or*, *-x*, *-ens* and *-ans* in which the nominative singular is the same for all three genders. Note also that the ablative singular *-i* and genitive plural *-ium* are back; in other words, Group B adjectives are declined in the same way as *i*-stem nouns.

**Example:** *laevis* (smooth). Note that the masculine and feminine are the same.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>laevis</i>	<i>laeve</i>	<i>laeves</i>	<i>laevia</i>
Accusative	<i>laevem</i>	<i>laeve</i>	<i>laeves</i>	<i>laevia</i>
Genitive	<i>laevis</i>	<i>laevis</i>	<i>laevium</i>	<i>laevium</i>
Dative	<i>laevi</i>	<i>laevi</i>	<i>laevibus</i>	<i>laevibus</i>
Ablative	<i>laevi</i>	<i>laevi</i>	<i>laevibus</i>	<i>laevibus</i>

**Example:** *acer* (sharp, pungent).

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>acer</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acre</i>	<i>acres</i>	<i>acres</i>	<i>acria</i>
Accusative	<i>acrem</i>	<i>acrem</i>	<i>acre</i>	<i>acres (acris)</i>	<i>acres (acris)</i>	<i>acria</i>
Genitive	<i>acris</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acrium</i>	<i>acrium</i>	<i>acrium</i>
Dative	<i>acri</i>	<i>acri</i>	<i>acri</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>
Ablative	<i>acri</i>	<i>acri</i>	<i>acri</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>

**Example:** *simplex* (simple). Similar is *tenax* (tough) but with ‘a’ instead of ‘i’ in the stem. Note that the masculine and feminine are the same.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>simplex</i>	<i>simplex</i>	<i>simplices</i>	<i>simplicia</i>
Accusative	<i>simplicem</i>	<i>simplex</i>	<i>simplices</i>	<i>simplicia</i>
Genitive	<i>simplicis</i>	<i>simplicis</i>	<i>simplicium</i>	<i>simplicium</i>
Dative	<i>simplici</i>	<i>simplici</i>	<i>simplicibus</i>	<i>simplicibus</i>
Ablative	<i>simplici</i>	<i>simplici</i>	<i>simplicibus</i>	<i>simplicibus</i>

**Example:** *bicolor* (two-coloured), for which the whole nominative acts as the stem. Note that masculine and feminine are the same. Like *bicolor* is *dispar* (unlike, unequal).

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>bicolor</i>	<i>bicolor</i>	<i>bicolores</i>	<i>bicoloria</i>
Accusative	<i>bicolorem</i>	<i>bicolor</i>	<i>bicolores</i>	<i>bicoloria</i>
Genitive	<i>bicoloris</i>	<i>bicoloris</i>	<i>bicolorium</i>	<i>bicolorium</i>
Dative	<i>bicolori</i>	<i>bicolori</i>	<i>bicoloribus</i>	<i>bicoloribus</i>
Ablative	<i>bicolori</i>	<i>bicolori</i>	<i>bicoloribus</i>	<i>bicoloribus</i>

**Example:** *elegans* (elegant), with the ‘s’ replaced by ‘t’ to form the stem. Note that the ablative singular usually ends in ‘i’ but may end in ‘e’ (and that masculine and feminine are the same).

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>elegans</i>	<i>elegans</i>	<i>elegantes</i>	<i>elegantia</i>
Accusative	<i>elegantem</i>	<i>elegans</i>	<i>elegantes</i>	<i>elegantia</i>
Genitive	<i>elegantis</i>	<i>elegantis</i>	<i>elegantium</i>	<i>elegantium</i>
Dative	<i>eleganti</i>	<i>eleganti</i>	<i>elegantibus</i>	<i>elegantibus</i>
Ablative	<i>eleganti (-e)</i>	<i>eleganti (-e)</i>	<i>elegantibus</i>	<i>elegantibus</i>



**Example:** *teres* (terete), also with the ‘s’ replaced by ‘t’ to form the stem. Similar to *teres* is *iners*, *inertem*. Note that masculine and feminine are the same.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>teres</i>	<i>teres</i>	<i>teretes</i>	<i>teretia</i>
Accusative	<i>teretem</i>	<i>teres</i>	<i>teretes</i>	<i>teretia</i>
Genitive	<i>teretis</i>	<i>teretis</i>	<i>teretium</i>	<i>teretium</i>
Dative	<i>tereti</i>	<i>tereti</i>	<i>teretibus</i>	<i>teretibus</i>
Ablative	<i>tereti</i>	<i>tereti</i>	<i>teretibus</i>	<i>teretibus</i>

**Group C adjectives are all derived from the Greek (Stearn pp. 95–96).** Those ending in *-us* are declined as Group A adjectives. Those ending in *-oides* and *-odes* are similar to Group B adjectives. As with some Group B adjectives, in these the masculine and feminine are always the same (in both singular and plural), hence are combined in the second example.

**Example** (like Group A): *arachnoideus* (spidery).

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>arachnoideus</i>	<i>arachnoidea</i>	<i>arachnoideum</i>	<i>arachnoidei</i>	<i>arachnoideae</i>	<i>arachnoidea</i>
Accusative	<i>arachnoideum</i>	<i>arachnoideam</i>	<i>arachnoideum</i>	<i>arachnoideos</i>	<i>arachnoideas</i>	<i>arachnoidea</i>
Genitive	<i>arachnoidei</i>	<i>arachnoideae</i>	<i>arachnoidei</i>	<i>arachnoideorum</i>	<i>arachnoidearum</i>	<i>arachnoideorum</i>
Dative	<i>arachnoideo</i>	<i>arachnoideae</i>	<i>arachnoideo</i>	<i>arachnoideis</i>	<i>arachnoideis</i>	<i>arachnoideis</i>
Ablative	<i>arachnoideo</i>	<i>arachnoidea</i>	<i>arachnoideo</i>	<i>arachnoideis</i>	<i>arachnoideis</i>	<i>arachnoideis</i>

**Example** (like Group B): *schoenoides* (like *Schoenus*). Like *schoenoides* are adjectives ending in *-odes* (e.g. *euodes*, *physodes*). Note that the ablative singular always ends in ‘e’, and there is no ‘i’ in the genitive plural or in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. Note that masculine and feminine are the same.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>schoenoides</i>	<i>schoenoides</i>	<i>schoenoides</i>	<i>schoenoida</i>
Accusative	<i>schoenoidem</i>	<i>schoenoides</i>	<i>schoenoides</i>	<i>schoenoida</i>
Genitive	<i>schoenoidis</i>	<i>schoenoidis</i>	<i>schoenoidum</i>	<i>schoenoidum</i>
Dative	<i>schoenoidi</i>	<i>schoenoidi</i>	<i>schoenoidibus</i>	<i>schoenoidibus</i>
Ablative	<i>schoenoidē</i>	<i>schoenoidē</i>	<i>schoenoidibus</i>	<i>schoenoidibus</i>

## Compound adjectives

You may want to use one adjective to qualify another, e.g. ‘stellate-pubescent’, ‘greenish-white’. When using this form in Latin, the ending of the first adjective is modified to end in ‘o’ if it is group A, in ‘i’ if it is group B or C. They are sometimes joined by a hyphen. The first adjective of the pair is not declined, only the second.

Do not use this form to show a range from one to another – for this use the word ‘to’ (‘oblong to elliptic’) or an en rule (‘oblong–elliptic’), but the latter could be mis-interpreted by the reader as a hyphen. If it is either one state or another (i.e. no gradation), then use ‘or’, e.g. ‘pubescent or glabrous’.

In some instances it is better to use an adverb, e.g. ‘narrowly oblong’ rather than ‘narrow-oblong’, ‘prominently ridged’.

If you use a string of adjectives, they should be separated by commas except after the last before the noun they qualify, e.g. ‘short, sparse, stellate hairs’.

### Examples

Greyish brown: using the Group A adjective *griseus*, -a, -um, removing the ending and replacing it with a linking ‘o’, and then adding the relevant part of *brunneus*, -a, -um (another Group A adjective) gives *griseobrunneus*, -a, -um.

Dark purple, *atropurpureus*, -a, -um, is formed from *ater*, *atra*, *atrum* meaning dull black and *purpureus*, -a, -um meaning purple.

Yellowish-green, *flavovirens*, -entis, is formed from *flavus*, -a, -um, and *virens* (part. B, meaning ‘being green’).

## Complex adjectives (termed compounds by Stearn pp. 94, 95, 96–97)

These consist of two words joined together, commonly the second a noun but the whole functioning as an adjective. The first part remains unchanged when the word is declined, and the second part is declined more or less as though it

were a noun. There are two forms, some being declined like adjectives of Group B with different endings for masculine/feminine and neuter, the others having just a single declension regardless of gender. Examples of the former are *brevipes* (having a short foot) and *longicuspis* (having a long cusp).

Also given below is an example of a compound adjective derived from a noun (genitive singular) and the rather useful suffix *-fer* (derived from the verb *fero*, I bear), the whole then being declined like a Group A adjective. Other adjectives like this are *nucifer* (bearing nuts), *aculeifer* (bearing needles or points) and *florifer* (bearing flowers).

**Example:** *brevipes* (short-footed)

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>brevipes</i>	<i>brevipes</i>	<i>brevipedes</i>	<i>brevipedia</i>
Accusative	<i>brevipedem</i>	<i>brevipes</i>	<i>brevipedes</i>	<i>brevipedia</i>
Genitive	<i>brevipedis</i>	<i>brevipedis</i>	<i>brevipedum</i>	<i>brevipedum</i>
Dative	<i>brevipedi</i>	<i>brevipedi</i>	<i>brevipedibus</i>	<i>brevipedibus</i>
Ablative	<i>brevipedi</i>	<i>brevipedi</i>	<i>brevipedibus</i>	<i>brevipedibus</i>

In other compound adjectives, the noun shows no difference between the genders and, again, the whole functions as an adjective. Thus, there is just a single declension, i.e. no sex change but still with singular and plural. Examples are *inops* (without support, i.e. weak) and *brachystachys* (having a short spike). Virtually all are formed from nouns of the Third Declension and so are declined in the same way.

**Example:** *inops* (weak)

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>inops</i>	<i>inopes</i>
Accusative	<i>inopem</i>	<i>inopes</i>
Genitive	<i>inopis</i>	<i>inopum</i>
Dative	<i>inopi</i>	<i>inopibus</i>
Ablative	<i>inope</i>	<i>inopibus</i>

**Example:** *brachystylis* (with a short style)

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>brachystylis</i>	<i>brachystylides</i>
Accusative	<i>brachystylidem</i>	<i>brachystylides</i>
Genitive	<i>brachystylidis</i>	<i>brachystylidum</i>
Dative	<i>brachystylidi</i>	<i>brachystylidibus</i>
Ablative	<i>brachystylide</i>	<i>brachystylidibus</i>

**Example:** *gemmifer* (bearing buds)

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>gemmifer</i>	<i>gemmifera</i>	<i>gemmiferum</i>	<i>gemmiferi</i>	<i>gemmiferae</i>	<i>gemmifera</i>
Accusative	<i>gemmiferum</i>	<i>gemmiferam</i>	<i>gemmiferum</i>	<i>gemmiferos</i>	<i>gemmiferas</i>	<i>gemmifera</i>
Genitive	<i>gemmiferi</i>	<i>gemmiferae</i>	<i>gemmiferi</i>	<i>gemmiferorum</i>	<i>gemmiferarum</i>	<i>gemmiferorum</i>
Dative	<i>gemmifero</i>	<i>gemmiferae</i>	<i>gemmifero</i>	<i>gemmiferis</i>	<i>gemmiferis</i>	<i>gemmiferis</i>
Ablative	<i>gemmifero</i>	<i>gemmifera</i>	<i>gemmifero</i>	<i>gemmiferis</i>	<i>gemmiferis</i>	<i>gemmiferis</i>

**Comparison of adjectives** (Stearn pp. 97–99)

An adjective may be modified in its form to indicate a stronger intensity of the quality concerned. This is called the comparison of adjectives. There are three states of adjectives – positive (or normal), comparative (a first degree of increase in intensity) and superlative (the most or greatest increase). Examples in English include hard, harder, hardest; good, better, best; long, longer, longest. With some English words, the comparative is expressed by placing ‘more’ before the adjective, e.g. ‘more useful’. The superlative may also be expressed in English by ‘very’ or ‘most’, thus hairy, hairier, hairiest or very/most hairy. Latin adjectives may be modified in exactly the same way, usually by adding different endings to the stem of the positive form. Typically, the comparative adds *-ior* (masculine, feminine) and *-ius* (neuter) to the stem of the adjective, and the superlative adds *-issimus* (masculine), *-issima* (feminine) or *-issimum* (neuter); thus *hirsutus* -a -um, *hirsutior* or *hirsutius*, *hirsutissimus* -a -um.

**Formation of comparatives**

To form a comparative, take the stem of the main state of the adjective (the positive) and add *-ior* for the masculine or feminine and *-ius* for the neuter.

Taking the Group A adjective *crassus* (thick): the stem is *crass-*. Now add *-ior* to the stem to form the masculine or feminine (*crassior*), or add *-ius* to form the neuter (*crassius*). Now decline these like standard Group B adjectives, but note that the dative and ablative singular end in *-i* and *-e* respectively, and in the nominative and accusative plural the *-i* is omitted, as follows:

Adjectives ending in *-eus*, *-ius*, *-uus* form comparatives using the comparative (*magis*) and superlative (*maxime*), parts of the irregular adverb *magnopere* (see p. 00), as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>crassior</i>	<i>crassius</i>	<i>crassiores</i>	<i>crassiora</i>
Accusative	<i>crassiore</i>	<i>crassius</i>	<i>crassiores</i>	<i>crassiora</i>
Genitive	<i>crassioris</i>	<i>crassioris</i>	<i>crassiorum</i>	<i>crassiorum</i>
Dative	<i>crassiori</i>	<i>crassiori</i>	<i>crassioribus</i>	<i>crassioribus</i>
Ablative	<i>crassiore</i>	<i>crassiore</i>	<i>crassioribus</i>	<i>crassioribus</i>

*roseus*, red; *magis roseus*, redder, more red; *maxime roseus*, reddest, very red.

Formation of superlatives

This form of the adjective is used to express longest, shortest, narrowest, very hairy, very thin, very shiny, etc. Again, the stem of the positive is taken and to it, if the complete word ends in *us* or *is*, you add *-issimus*, *-issima* or *-issimum*; hence *brevis*, short, *brevissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, very short or shortest. If, however, the full word ends in *-er*, then *-errimus*, *-errima* or *-errimum* is added to the stem; hence *pulcher* beautiful, *pulcherrimus*, *-a*, *-um*, very beautiful or most beautiful.

Example of a superlative: *tenuissimus* (very slender) from *tenuis*.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>tenuissimus</i>	<i>tenuissima</i>	<i>tenuissimum</i>	<i>tenuissimi</i>	<i>tenuissimae</i>	<i>tenuissima</i>
Accusative	<i>tenuissimum</i>	<i>tenuissimam</i>	<i>tenuissimum</i>	<i>tenuissimos</i>	<i>tenuissimas</i>	<i>tenuissima</i>
Genitive	<i>tenuissimi</i>	<i>tenuissimae</i>	<i>tenuissimi</i>	<i>tenuissimorum</i>	<i>tenuissimarum</i>	<i>tenuissimorum</i>
Dative	<i>tenuissimo</i>	<i>tenuissimae</i>	<i>tenuissimo</i>	<i>tenuissimis</i>	<i>tenuissimis</i>	<i>tenuissimis</i>
Ablative	<i>tenuissimo</i>	<i>tenuissima</i>	<i>tenuissimo</i>	<i>tenuissimis</i>	<i>tenuissimis</i>	<i>tenuissimis</i>

**Example:** *similis* (like). Like *similis* are *dissimilis* (dissimilar), *facilis* (easy), *difficilis* (difficult), *gracilis* (slender), *humilis* (low). Note that *similis* and *dissimilis* require the noun that they refer to to be in either the genitive or dative.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>simillimus</i>	<i>simillima</i>	<i>simillimum</i>	<i>simillimi</i>	<i>simillimae</i>	<i>simillima</i>
Accusative	<i>simillimum</i>	<i>simillimam</i>	<i>simillimum</i>	<i>simillimos</i>	<i>simillimas</i>	<i>simillima</i>
Genitive	<i>simillimi</i>	<i>simillimae</i>	<i>simillimi</i>	<i>simillimorum</i>	<i>simillimarum</i>	<i>simillimorum</i>
Dative	<i>simillimo</i>	<i>simillimae</i>	<i>simillimo</i>	<i>simillimis</i>	<i>simillimis</i>	<i>simillimis</i>
Ablative	<i>simillimo</i>	<i>simillima</i>	<i>simillimo</i>	<i>simillimis</i>	<i>simillimis</i>	<i>simillimis</i>

**Example:** *pulcherrimus* formed from *pulcher* (pretty). Other adjectives forming their superlatives in the same way are: *acer* (sharp, bitter) and *celer* (swift).

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>pulcherrimus</i>	<i>pulcherrima</i>	<i>pulcherrimum</i>	<i>pulcherrimi</i>	<i>pulcherrimae</i>	<i>pulcherrima</i>
Accusative	<i>pulcherrimum</i>	<i>pulcherrimam</i>	<i>pulcherrimum</i>	<i>pulcherrimos</i>	<i>pulcherrimas</i>	<i>pulcherrima</i>
Genitive	<i>pulcherrimi</i>	<i>pulcherrimae</i>	<i>pulcherrimi</i>	<i>pulcherrimorum</i>	<i>pulcherrimarum</i>	<i>pulcherrimorum</i>
Dative	<i>pulcherrimo</i>	<i>pulcherrimae</i>	<i>pulcherrimo</i>	<i>pulcherrimis</i>	<i>pulcherrimis</i>	<i>pulcherrimis</i>
Ablative	<i>pulcherrimo</i>	<i>pulcherrima</i>	<i>pulcherrimo</i>	<i>pulcherrimis</i>	<i>pulcherrimis</i>	<i>pulcherrimis</i>

***Irregular forms***

A number of adjectives have irregular forms in the comparative and superlative. Two that are widely misused are *parvior* (and *parvissimus*) for the comparative and superlative of *parvus* (small). There are no such words in Latin, the correct forms being *minor* (smaller) and *minimus* (smallest or very small). Others that you are likely to use are:

*externus* (outside), *exterior* (m., f.), *exterius* (n.) (both outer), *extremus* (outermost)

*inferus* (below, lower), *inferior* (m., f.), *inferius* (n.) (both lower), *infimus* (lowest)

*magnus* (great), *major* (m., f.), *majus* (n.) (greater), *maximus* (greatest)  
*multus* (much, great), *multi* (many, m.) *multae* (f.), *multa* (n.); *plus* (in sing. only, more), *plures* (m., f.), *plura* (n.) (pl., more numerous);  
*plurimi* (m.), *plurimae* (f.), *plurima* (n.) (pl., most)

Comparative forms are declined like the Second Declension if they end in *-us*, *-a*, or *-um*; and like the Third Declension if they end in *-or* or *-ius*.

Note that there is no comparative of some adjectives that already denote an absolute state, e.g. sessile, evergreen.

### Quam

Finally, to complete this section on adjectives, we must look at the adverb *quam* (than), as it is frequently used with comparative adjectives. Nouns being compared take the same case before and after *quam*, for example:

tuba corollae longior **quam** calyx the tube of the corolla longer **than** the calyx

margines foliorum magis rosei **quam** laminae margins of the leaves redder **than** the blades

In these examples the nouns being compared (underlined) are in the same case (nominative). Sometimes the nouns are in the ablative:

vexillo maculosiore **quam** ala with the standard with more spots **than** the wing

When a comparison involves two adjectives, both are given as comparatives and both are in the same case, for example:

folia longiora **quam** latiora leaves longer **than** wide

### The participle (Stearn pp. 89–90)

Participles are formed from verbs but function as adjectives and are declined like adjectives. There are two kinds – the present and the past participle.

As the adjective implies, the *present* participle is used when describing a trait that is present or is happening now (even if it means on a herbarium

specimen), e.g. *tegens* (covering), *decrescens* (growing smaller). They all end in *-ans* or *-ens* and are declined like adjectives of the same ending in Group B. They are formed by taking the stem of a verb and adding *-ans* to verbs of the First Conjugation (thus *habitans* from *habitare*, to inhabit) and *-ens* to the stem of the other declensions (thus *rumpens* from *rumpere*, to burst).

**Example:** *repens* (creeping). Note that masculine and feminine are the same.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter	Masculine, Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>repens</i>	<i>repens</i>	<i>repentes</i>	<i>repentia</i>
Accusative	<i>repentem</i>	<i>repens</i>	<i>repentes</i>	<i>repentia</i>
Genitive	<i>repentis</i>	<i>repentis</i>	<i>repentium</i>	<i>repentium</i>
Dative	<i>repenti</i>	<i>repenti</i>	<i>repentibus</i>	<i>repentibus</i>
Ablative	<i>repenti (-e)</i>	<i>repenti (-e)</i>	<i>repentibus</i>	<i>repentibus</i>

Note that the ablative singular may end in ‘*i*’ or ‘*e*’.

A *past* participle describes something that has already happened, e.g. *insertus* (inserted), *angustatus* (narrowed). They all end in *-us* and are declined like adjectives of Group A. Their formation is more complex than that of a present participle and we will not discuss it here.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>angustatus</i>	<i>angustata</i>	<i>angustatum</i>	<i>angustati</i>	<i>angustatae</i>	<i>angustata</i>
Accusative	<i>angustatum</i>	<i>angustatam</i>	<i>angustatum</i>	<i>angustatos</i>	<i>angustatas</i>	<i>angustata</i>
Genitive	<i>angustati</i>	<i>angustatae</i>	<i>angustati</i>	<i>angustatorum</i>	<i>angustatarum</i>	<i>angustatorum</i>
Dative	<i>angustato</i>	<i>angustatae</i>	<i>angustato</i>	<i>angustatis</i>	<i>angustatis</i>	<i>angustatis</i>
Ablative	<i>angustato</i>	<i>angustata</i>	<i>angustato</i>	<i>angustatis</i>	<i>angustatis</i>	<i>angustatis</i>

Examples

*folia pilis glandulosis dispersis* leaves with hairs glandular **scattered**, or leaves with **scattered** glandular hairs  
*frutex ramis patentibus* shrub with **spreading** branches  
*herba odorata caulibus repentibus* perfumed herb with **creeping** stems  
*calyx corollam longitudine aequans* the calyx **equalling** the corolla in length



## Notes

When a single adjective is used to qualify two nouns of different gender, it is given the gender of the noun that is closer to it in the sentence.

When a single adjective is used to qualify two nouns of different number (i.e. singular or plural), it is given the number of the noun that is closer to it in the sentence.

Although participles are treated like adjectives, they are in fact verbs, so it is better for them to be placed at the end of the sentence or clause, which is where verbs appear in classical Latin.

The adjectival form *-cola* (inhabiting) is a noun in apposition and, regardless of the gender of the generic name, is declined like *agricola* (p. 00). The endings *-fer* and *-ger* (carrying, bearing) are already masculine singular so should not be given the ending *-us*, but they take *-a* and *-um* for the feminine and neuter singular. Examples are *Gyrostemon racemiger* (a *Gyrostemon* bearing racemes); *Brassica oleracea* var. *gemmifera* ('a cabbage bearing buds' or Brussels' sprout).

## The adverb (Stearn pp. 103–106)

An adverb qualifies a verb, adjective, participle, or sometimes another adverb, e.g. narrowly, never, transversely. It can give a more accurate or refined meaning to such a word when placed next to it, e.g. ‘grows commonly’, ‘narrowed abruptly’, ‘slightly scabrid’, ‘pungent, sometimes prominently’, ‘rarely minutely mucronate’. Many are formed from adjectives. In English, an adverb formed from an adjective is typically indicated by the ‘-ly’ ending. In Latin it is formed in several ways.

With adjectives of Group A you add *-e* to the stem, e.g. *dense* from *densus* to form ‘densely’, and with those of Group B you add *-ter* or *-iter*, e.g. *prominenter* from *prominens* to form ‘prominently’, *irregulariter* from *irregularis*, ‘irregularly’. Adverbs are not declined, nor do they change with gender or number.

### Examples

*minute* *hirsutus*   *minutely* *hairly*

*foliis minute* *hirsutis* with leaves *minutely* *hairly*

*fructus lateraliter* *complanatus* fruit *laterally* flattened

Many words are adverbs in their own right. Some examples are *saepe* (often), *mox* (soon), *saltem* (at least), *iterum* (again, a second time), *deinde* (thereafter). Stearn has a list of Latin adverbs on pp 104–106.

Be mindful of several adverbs that differ in just the final letter and have different meanings:

*certe* (at least), *certo* (certainly)

*rare* (thinly), *raro* (seldom)

*crebre* (closely, compactly), *crebro* (repeatedly)

As with adjectives there is comparison of adverbs. The comparative is formed by adding ‘-ius’ (accusative singular neuter) to the stem, e.g. *densius* (more densely). The superlative is formed by changing the ending of the nominative singular superlative adjective from ‘-us’ to ‘-e’, e.g. *angustissime* (very narrowly). The good news is that, like ordinary adverbs, the comparative and superlative forms are not declined.

**Examples***Species A foliis **minute** hirsutis*Species A with **minutely** hairy leaves*Species B foliis **minutius** hirsutis*Species B with **more minutely** hairy leaves*Species C foliis **minutissime** hirsutis*Species C with **very minutely** hairy leaves

Some adverbs have irregular comparison:

*bene* well*melius* better*optime* best*magnopere* much*magis* more*maxime* greatest, most*male* badly*peius* worse*pessime* worst*multum* much*plus* more*plurimum* most*paulum* a little*minus* less*minime* least*prope* near*propius* nearer*proxime* nearestNote that *magis* means more in degree and *plus* more in quantity.

## The preposition (Stearn pp. 125–127)

A preposition is a part of speech that expresses a relation between a noun or pronoun (as the object in a sentence or phrase) and another word. Examples in English are ‘in’, ‘into’, ‘to’, ‘before’, ‘from’, ‘near’, ‘within’, ‘above’. There are quite a few, and a number of English prepositions are translated into Latin using the same word, e.g. *inter* can mean ‘amid’, ‘among’ or ‘between’.

There are also compound prepositions consisting of two or three words in English that are represented by one or two words in Latin. Examples are ‘except for’ (*praeter*), ‘next to’ (*juxta*), ‘out of’ (*a*, *ab*, *ex*) and ‘up to’ (*usque ad*)

In Latin, a preposition governs the case of the noun or pronoun that follows it. Some take the accusative, others the ablative (see below). In the Vocabulary we indicate the case taken by each.

A few take either, depending on the meaning. Those used in botanical Latin in this context are *in*, *subter* and *super*. A general rule is that when some motion *into* or *towards* is meant they take the accusative, but when the motion is *from* or *out of* they take the ablative. It is usually the ablative when a fixed state is meant:

*stamina in disco inserta* stamens inserted **on** a disc

*in margine folii* **on** the margin of the leaf

*in epidermum radices hospitis penetrans* penetrating [**into**] the epidermis of the root of the host

A very few prepositions take the genitive. One that seems rare in botanical Latin but which would be useful is *tenus* (up to, down to, as far as), that may take the genitive or ablative and is always placed *after* the noun or pronoun that it governs:

*arbor cortice rugoso rami primi tenus* tree with rough bark **up to** the first branch

In general, a preposition is placed *before* the noun that it governs, but *versus* (towards) goes afterwards:

*herba praeter folia glabra* herb glabrous **except leaves**

*stylo apicem versus glanduloso* with the style glandular **towards the apex**

It is usually unnecessary to include the words ‘by’, ‘from’ or ‘with’ in Latin, since they are already indicated by the ablative case, e.g. *foliis* (with leaves), but sometimes it is needed or required for clarity, e.g. *folliculi ab latere visi applanati* (follicles seen from the side flattened, better in English as ‘follicles flattened in side view’).

## Prepositions with accusative

<i>ad</i> to, at, towards	<i>ob</i> because of
<i>ante</i> before	<i>post</i> after
<i>circum</i> around	<i>subter</i> below, beneath
<i>extra</i> outside	<i>trans</i> across
<i>inter</i> between,	among <i>versus</i> towards.

### Examples:

*infra corollam* **below** the corolla

*inter nodos* **between** the nodes

*folia praeter margines viridia* leaves bright green **except** for the margins

*petala nectariis prope bases* petals with nectaries **close to** their bases.

## Prepositions with ablative

<i>a, ab</i> from,	by <i>pro</i> for, on behalf of
<i>cum</i> with	<i>sine</i> without
<i>de</i> concerning	<i>subter</i> beneath, below
<i>e, ex</i> from, out of	<i>super</i> upon

### Examples:

*in marginibus foliorum* **on the margins** of the leaves

*subter silva fagarum habitat* it lives **beneath** beech wood (literally ‘a wood of beech’)

*planta sine chlorophyllo* plant **without** chlorophyll

... *sed ab eo differt* but it differs **from** it

*a Ranunculo acris differt* it differs **from** *Ranunculus acris*

*A* and *ab* both mean ‘from’ or ‘by’, but *a* is used before a consonant and *ab* before a vowel.

## The conjunction (Stearn pp. 128–129)

A conjunction is a word used to connect words, phrases, clauses and sentences. Those most commonly used are ‘and’ (*et, atque*), ‘or’ (*ant, vel*) and ‘but’ (*sed*). Some may be used in pairs, but in Latin the same word is repeated; these we have ‘both ... and’ (*et ... et*), ‘either ... or’ (*vel ... vel*), ‘neither ... nor’ (*nec ... nec*). Several may consist of two or three words in English, e.g. ‘and also’ (*atque, ac*), ‘or if’, ‘or else’ (*seu, sive*), ‘so that’ (*ut*).

In general, where two nouns are joined by a conjunction, the second takes the same number and case as the first. Unlike prepositions, conjunctions have no control over the grammar.

The conjunction ‘and’ may also be shown by adding *-que* to the end of the last word of a phrase or clause:

*folia et flores* or *folia floresque* leaves **and** flowers  
and in place of *vel*, *-ve* may be added;  
*folia vel flores* or *folia floresve* leaves **or** flowers

The conjunctions *et, nec* and *vel* may be used in pairs to give emphasis (in English ‘both ... and’, ‘neither ... nor’, ‘either ... or’);

*et sepala et petala flava* **both** sepals **and** petals yellow  
*nec flores nec fructus visi* **neither** flowers **nor** fruit seen  
*folia pilis vel simplicibus vel glandulosis* leaves with **either** simple **or** glandular hairs

With *ut* (‘so that’, ‘in order that’), a complication arises since it is followed by a verb in the subjunctive, a difficult area of Latin grammar that is best avoided in botany. It is simpler to write the description in such a way that you don’t have to use it.

### Further examples

*folia vel glabra vel minute hirsuta* leaves **either** glabrous **or** minutely hirsute

*folia marginibus albis et undulatis* leaves with margins white **and** undulating

*pileus cremeus in juventute sed in maturitate brunneus* cap cream when young [literally: in youth], **but** in maturity brown

*folium pagina adaxiali glabra licet abaxiali cum indumento* leaf with upper surface glabrous **although** the lower with an indumentum.

## The pronoun (Stearn pp. 118–124)

A pronoun indicates a person, thing, place, or quality without specifically naming it, e.g. I, you, they, it, the same, that, another. It is also used to replace a noun and so avoid the need to repeat it. In botanical Latin, you will almost never use the personal pronouns I, you, he, she, we and they, but you will probably want to use others. Commonly used are the personal pronoun *is* (it); the demonstrative ones *hic* (this, these) and *ille* (that, those); the possessive one *suus* (its, their); the relative one *quod* (which); and the definitive one *idem* (the same).

Two pronoun-like words (called pronoun-adjectives or determiners) are *alius* and *alter*. The first means ‘another’ or ‘other’ and is used when more than two items are being discussed. It is also used when contrasting items: ‘one ..., the other ...’, plural ‘some ..., others ...’.

*aliae plantae prostratae, aliae erectae* some plants prostrate, others erect

The second is used when just two items are under discussion:

*stamina 2, inaequalia, alterum 5 mm longum, alterum 10 mm longum*  
stamens 2, unequal, one 5 mm long, the other 10 mm long

A pronoun takes the same number and gender of the noun that it is replacing or referring to, but its case comes from the context in which it is used. Pronouns must be declined like nouns and the important ones are set out below.

Incidentally, if you are trying to learn declensions such as pronouns and adjectives, the usual way is to recite each case across the genders, first in the singular, then in the plural, e.g. *is, ea, id; eum, eam, id; eius, eius, eius ... ei, eae, ea; ...*

### Personal pronouns

Case			Singular	
Nominative	<i>ego</i>	I	<i>tu</i>	you (subject)
Accusative	<i>me</i>	me	<i>te</i>	you (object)
Genitive	<i>mei</i>	mine	<i>tui</i>	yours
Dative	<i>mihi</i>	to/for me	<i>tibi</i>	to/for you
Ablative	<i>me</i>	by/with/from me	<i>te</i>	by/with/from you



Case	Plural			
Nominative	<i>nos</i>	we	<i>vos</i>	you (subject)
Accusative	<i>nos</i>	us	<i>vos</i>	you (object)
Genitive	<i>nostrum</i>	ours	<i>vestrum</i>	yours
Dative	<i>nobis</i>	to/for us	<i>vobis</i>	to/for you
Ablative	<i>nobis</i>	by/with/from us	<i>vobis</i>	by/with/from you

## Possessive pronouns

These are treated like adjectives, and behave like them. The pronoun agrees with the item that is 'possessed' in number, gender and case.

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>meus</i>	<i>mea</i>	<i>meum</i>	<i>mei</i>	<i>meae</i>	<i>mea</i>
Accusative	<i>meum</i>	<i>meam</i>	<i>meum</i>	<i>meos</i>	<i>meas</i>	<i>mea</i>
Genitive	<i>mei</i>	<i>meae</i>	<i>mei</i>	<i>meorum</i>	<i>mearum</i>	<i>meorum</i>
Dative	<i>meo</i>	<i>meae</i>	<i>meo</i>	<i>meis</i>	<i>meis</i>	<i>meis</i>
Ablative	<i>meo</i>	<i>mea</i>	<i>meo</i>	<i>meis</i>	<i>meis</i>	<i>meis</i>

## The determinative pronoun

*is* (he), *ea* (she), *id* (it)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
Accusative	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>eas</i>	<i>ea</i>
Genitive	<i>ejus (eius)</i>	<i>ejus (eius)</i>	<i>ejus (eius)</i>	<i>eorum</i>	<i>earum</i>	<i>eorum</i>
Dative	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>
Ablative	<i>eo</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>eo</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>

*sed* **ab eis** *haec* *Pinus distincta* but **from them** this *Pinus* [is] distinct  
*boletus nemoralis*, **is** *in silvis fagorum habitat* a woodland mushroom, **it**  
lives in beech woods [literally, in woods of beeches]

The demonstrative pronoun (also used as pronoun adjectives)

*hic* (this)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
Accusative	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hos</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>haec</i>
Genitive	<i>hujus (huius)</i>	<i>huius (huius)</i>	<i>huius (huius)</i>	<i>horum</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>horum</i>
Dative	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
Ablative	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hac</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

*hae* *species septem simillimae* **these** seven species [are] very similar  
*sed ab his* **hoc** *Fucus distinctus* but **this** *Fucus* [is] distinct from these  
*ille* (that)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
Accusative	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illos</i>	<i>illas</i>	<i>illa</i>
Genitive	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illorum</i>	<i>illarum</i>	<i>illorum</i>
Dative	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
Ablative	<i>illo</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illo</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

*corolla* **ab illa** *speciei alius differt* the corolla differs **from that** of the  
other species [singular].

The words ‘former’ and ‘latter’ are translated by *ille* and *hic* respectively. Think of *ille* (that) as referring to the one that is farther away in the sentence and *hic* the closer:

*stamina et staminodia alternantia, illa 10 mm longa, haec 5 mm longa*  
 stamens and staminodes alternating, **the former** 10 mm long, **the latter** 5 mm long

## The intensive pronoun

*ipse* (himself), *ipsa* (herself), (*ipsum*) itself

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Accusative	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsos</i>	<i>ipsas</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Genitive	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>	<i>ipsarum</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>
Dative	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
Ablative	<i>ipso</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipso</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

*characteres a me ipso haud observati* characters by me **myself** not  
 observed [Stearn p. 122]

## The relative pronoun

*qui* (who, which)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
Accusative	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
Genitive	<i>cuius (cujus)</i>	<i>cuius (cujus)</i>	<i>cuius (cujus)</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
Dative	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Ablative	<i>quo</i>	<i>qua</i>	<i>quo</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

*specierum alterarum similis a quibus in calyce hirsutissimo differt* similar  
 to the other species [plural] **from which** it differs in the very hairy  
 calyx.

The definitive pronoun

*idem* (the same); formed from *is* with *-dem* as a kind of suffix, so you decline the ‘i’ like *is* (with a few modifications) while *dem* remains unchanged.

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
Accusative	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eosdem</i>	<i>easdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
Genitive	<i>eiusdem</i> ( <i>eiusdem</i> )	<i>eiusdem</i> ( <i>eiusdem</i> )	<i>eiusdem</i> ( <i>eiusdem</i> )	<i>eorundem</i>	<i>earundem</i>	<i>eorundem</i>
Dative	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>isdem</i>	<i>isdem</i>	<i>isdem</i>
Ablative	<i>eodem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eodem</i>	<i>isdem</i>	<i>isdem</i>	<i>isdem</i>

*in eadem specie color floris variat* in **the same** species the colour of the flower varies  
*flores masculi et feminei in planta eadem occurrunt* male and female flowers occur on **the same** plant

Indefinite pronouns

*aliquis* (someone, something)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>aliquis</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>aliqui</i>	<i>aliquae</i>	<i>aliquae</i>
Accusative	<i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>aliquos</i>	<i>aliquas</i>	<i>aliquae</i>
Genitive	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>aliquorum</i>	<i>aliquarum</i>	<i>aliquorum</i>
Dative	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
Ablative	<i>aliquo</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquo</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

*quidam* (a certain, some)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quoddam</i>	<i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
Accusative	<i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quoddam</i>	<i>quosdam</i>	<i>quasdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
Genitive	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>quorundam</i>	<i>quarundam</i>	<i>quorundam</i>
Dative	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
Ablative	<i>quodam</i>	<i>quadam</i>	<i>quodam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

*quisque* (each, everyone)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>quisque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quidque</i> or <i>quodque</i>	<i>quique</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>
Accusative	<i>quemque</i>	<i>quamque</i>	<i>quidque</i>	<i>quosque</i>	<i>quasque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>
Genitive	<i>cuiusque</i>	<i>cuiusque</i>	<i>cuiusque</i>	<i>quorumque</i>	<i>quarumque</i>	<i>quorumque</i>
Dative	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>
Ablative	<i>quoque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quoque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>

Pronoun-adjectives

*alius* (other, another)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
Accusative	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alios</i>	<i>alias</i>	<i>alia</i>
Genitive	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>aliorum</i>	<i>aliarum</i>	<i>aliorum</i>
Dative	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>
Ablative	<i>alio</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>alio</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>

*alter* (the other, one of two, the second)

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteri</i>	<i>alterae</i>	<i>altera</i>
Accusative	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteros</i>	<i>alteras</i>	<i>altera</i>
Genitive	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterorum</i>	<i>alterarum</i>	<i>alterorum</i>
Dative	<i>alteri</i>	<i>alteri</i>	<i>alteri</i>	<i>alteris</i>	<i>alteris</i>	<i>alteris</i>
Ablative	<i>altero</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>altero</i>	<i>alteris</i>	<i>alteris</i>	<i>alteris</i>

## The verb (Stearn pp. 130–139)

‘Botanists manage verbs best by avoiding them altogether’

(Stearn p. 130)

A verb is a doing word, i.e. it denotes an action. The most important aspects of verbs are person (I, you, he, she, it, we, they), number (singular, plural), voice (active, passive), tense (present, past, future, etc.), and mood (indicative, subjunctive, imperative). In Latin, each of these attributes is indicated by a single form of the verb, e.g. *lego* (I collect), *legunt* (they collect), *legitur* (it is collected), *legistis* (you have collected), *lege!* (collect!), *lexerim* (I might have collected). The basic part of a verb is called the stem, and the letters after it tell you the rest.

If you *must* know, the verb finite (i.e. limited by person and number) has three persons, two numbers, six tenses and three moods, while the verb infinite (not so limited) has infinitives, three participles, the gerund and gerundive and two supines. And there are two voices. And, on top of that, there are conjugations, four of them, plus – you guessed it – irregular, defective and what are called impersonal verbs. Fortunately, there is no need to learn these in detail, since those verbs used nowadays are mostly third person singular, as set out below.

Botanical diagnoses and descriptions can be written without verbs since, in our telegraphic style, we commonly use participles that are declined as adjectives, e.g. instead of ‘It grows in swamps’ we say ‘growing in swamps’. It was a different matter in the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries when Latin was spoken as an international language and botanical texts were sometimes written wholly in the language. You need knowledge of verbs in order to understand these (or find a friendly Latin scholar to translate for you – but remember that such a person, while erudite, may have no understanding of botany and hence may struggle with the terminology). So it is useful to have at least a little knowledge of this complex area of grammar and syntax. For modern work you can manage with just a few verbs such as the commonly used *differt* (it differs) and *distinguitur* (it is distinguished).

In classical Latin the verb is always placed at the end of a sentence or clause. This rule is best also followed in botanical Latin, but need not be adhered to strictly.

To elaborate just briefly on the main features of a verb:

*Person* refers to the subject of the verb, i.e. first, second, third. Thus, for the first person there is 'I' (singular) and 'we' (plural), for second person 'you' (both singular and plural), and for third person 'he', 'she' or 'it' (all singular) and 'they' (plural). *Number* indicates whether one or more than one person forms the subject. *Tense* tells us about the timing of the action – the tenses most commonly used are present, past (or perfect) and future.

The *voice* of a verb may be active or passive. In the active voice it tells us what the subject is doing (e.g. I saw it), while in the passive voice it indicates something being done to the subject (e.g. It was seen).

If the verb is followed by a preposition, remember to check if the following noun should be in the accusative or ablative.

The verbs most commonly used in Latin diagnoses and descriptions are all third person and usually singular, as follows:

*differt* it differs ... ['it' usually referring to a new taxon being described]; followed by a preposition: *from* in English, in Latin *a* or *ab*; also present participle *differens* (differing) followed by the same prepositions

*distinguitur* it is distinguished ...; followed by a preposition: *from* in English, in Latin *a* or *ab*

*accedit* it approaches [i.e. resembles] ... [then *a qua* followed by *differt* or *distinguitur*]; preposition none in English, in Latin *ad* or none  
*comparatur* it is compared ... followed by a preposition: *with* in English, in Latin use the ablative case

*caret, deest* it lacks ... followed by the characters or states that are lacking

Others sometimes used are:

*crescit* it grows ...; also the present participle *crescens* (growing)

*habitat* it grows or lives ...; also the present participle *habitans* (living)

*invenitur* it is found ...

*occurrit* it occurs ...; also the present participle *occurrans* (occurring)

These all take a preposition such as *in*, *on*, *around*, *near* etc. in English, in Latin *in*, *ad*, *circa*, *prope*. Remember that other expressions such as 'resembling ...', 'similar to ...' are translated with participles or adjectives.

Apart from the above, a verb that you may use is *sum* (I am) from *esse* (to be), or one of its compounds. Here is the first person present tense:



*sum* I am  
*es* you are (singular)  
*est* he, she or it is  
*sumus* we are  
*estis* you are (plural)  
*sunt* they are

And, of course, we all use '*determinavit*' slips, the verb meaning 'he or she (the person annotating the slip) determined' [the specimen]; likewise '*confirmavit*', 'he or she confirmed' [a determination already made].

These and other Latin verbs are commonly abbreviated:

'*conf.*' from *confirmavit* (he or she confirmed)  
 '*del.*' from *delineavit* (he or she drew) (used on plates)  
 '*det.*' from *determinavit* (he or she determined)  
 '*emend.*' from *emendavit* (he or she amended)  
 '*leg.*' from *legit* (he or she collected); also the past participle *lectum* (collected [by]), neuter singular, if it refers to a specimen (Latin *specimen*) or *lecta*, feminine singular, if it refers to a collection (Latin *collectio*)  
 '*pinx.*' from *pinxit* (he or she painted) (used on plates)  
 '*sculpt.*' from *sculpsit* (he or she engraved) (used on plates).

In early works the abbreviations '*v.v.*' and '*v.s.*' were often used. These are from '*vidi vivam*' (I saw [the plant] living) or *visa viva* (seen alive, nominative/ablative), and *vidi siccam* (I saw it dried) or *visa sicca* (seen dried, nominative/ablative).

A little-used part of a verb is the gerundive, which is an adjective derived from a passive verb and denotes something that must or should be done, e.g. *distinguendus* from *distinguere* (it must be distinguished), and *rejiciendus* from *rejicere* (it must be rejected). As the gerundive is an adjective, it agrees with its noun in number, gender and case.

There is also the gerund which is a neuter noun formed from a verb, but it is almost never used in botanical Latin.

Unlike those of other languages, Latin verbs are listed in a dictionary not by the infinitive (to live, to grow), but by the first person singular of the present indicative active (a real mouthful, but if you want to look up the correct part of the verb you want, you need to know this, as tables of Latin verbs can look quite daunting). In other words, you look up *sum* (I am), not *esse* (to be), or *cresco* (I grow), not *crescere* (to grow).

---

## Numerals, measurements

(Stearn pp. 107–117)

Like us, the Romans had both words and numerals for numbers, and had both cardinal numbers – answering the question ‘How many?’ (one, two...) – and ordinal numbers, answering the question ‘Which one in a series?’ (first, second...). A third set of numerals is the distributive adjectives answering the question ‘How many each?’ (one each, two each...). Roman numerals were in the form I, II, III, IV, V... X... C.... Hindu-Arabic numerals (1, 2, 3, 4, 5... 10... 100...) were developed in India in about the sixth century AD and arrived in Europe via the Arabs of North Africa during the Middle Ages.

In Latin, only the first three cardinal numerals – *unus* (1), *duo* (2), *tres* (3) – are declined (like adjectives). The others remain the same whatever the case and gender of the noun they are qualifying. In botanical descriptions it is easiest to avoid the words altogether by using numerals – and it saves space. This may be done regardless of the gender, number and case of the noun they are associated with.

### Cardinal numbers

1	<i>unus</i>	11	<i>undecim</i>
2	<i>duo</i>	12	<i>duodecim</i>
3	<i>tres</i>	13	<i>tredecim</i>
4	<i>quattuor, quatuor</i>	14	<i>quatuordecim</i>
5	<i>quinque</i>	15	<i>quindecim</i>
6	<i>sex</i>	16	<i>sedecim</i>
7	<i>septem</i>	17	<i>septemdecim</i>
8	<i>octo</i>	18	<i>duodeviginti</i>
9	<i>novem</i>	19	<i>undeviginti</i>
10	<i>decem</i>	20	<i>viginti</i>
30	<i>triginta</i>	100	<i>centum</i>
40	<i>quadraginta</i>	1000	<i>mille</i>
50	<i>quingenta</i>		

*unus* one, singular only

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>unus</i>	<i>una</i>	<i>unum</i>
Accusative	<i>unum</i>	<i>unam</i>	<i>unum</i>
Genitive	<i>unius</i>	<i>unius</i>	<i>unius</i>
Dative	<i>uni</i>	<i>uni</i>	<i>uni</i>
Ablative	<i>uno</i>	<i>una</i>	<i>uno</i>

*duo* two, plural only

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>duo</i>	<i>dua</i>	<i>duo</i>
Accusative	<i>duos</i>	<i>duas</i>	<i>duo</i>
Genitive	<i>duorum</i>	<i>duarum</i>	<i>duorum</i>
Dative	<i>duobus</i>	<i>duabus</i>	<i>duobus</i>
Ablative	<i>duobus</i>	<i>duabus</i>	<i>duobus</i>

*tres* three, plural only

Case	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>tres</i>	<i>tres</i>	<i>tria</i>
Accusative	<i>tres</i>	<i>tres</i>	<i>tria</i>
Genitive	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
Dative	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
Ablative	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

**Examples:**

*bractea* **una** (Nominative sing. feminine) **one** bract  
*bractae* **duae** (Nominative pl. feminine) **two** bracts  
*folia* **duo** (Nominative pl. neuter) **two** leaves

*folia tria* (Nominative pl. neuter) **three** leaves  
*fructu uno* (Ablative sing. masculine) **with one** fruit  
*ovulis tribus* (Ablative pl. neuter) **with three** ovules

You may want to use general terms such as few (*paucus*), many (*multus*), none (*nullus*), numerous (*numerosus*), solitary (*solitarius, unicus*). These are all treated and declined as adjectives of Group A to agree in gender, number and case with the noun they qualify, e.g. *sporocarpia pauca* (sporocarps few), *cocci multi* (cocci many), *flos unicus* (flower solitary).

Ordinal numbers

These are *primus* (first), *secundus* (second), *tertius* (third) and so on and they are all declined like *longus, -a, -um*. The Latin for 13th to 17th consists of two words (*tertius decimus* etc.), and both words must be declined.

1st	<i>primus</i>	11th	<i>undecimus</i>
2nd	<i>secundus</i>	12th	<i>duodecimus</i>
3rd	<i>tertius</i>	13th	<i>tertius decimus</i>
4th	<i>quartus</i>	14th	<i>quartus decimus</i>
5th	<i>quintus</i>	15th	<i>quintus decimus</i>
6th	<i>sextus</i>	16th	<i>sextus decimus</i>
7th	<i>septimus</i>	17th	<i>septimus decimus</i>
8th	<i>octavus</i>	18th	<i>duodevicensimus</i>
9th	<i>nonus</i>	19th	<i>undevicensimus</i>
10th	<i>decimus</i>	20th	<i>vicensimus</i>
30th	<i>tricensimus</i>	40th	<i>quadragensimus</i>
50th	<i>quingquagensimus</i>	100th	<i>centensimus, centesimus</i>
1000th	<i>millensimus</i>		

*primus* (first, singular only)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>primus</i>	<i>prima</i>	<i>primum</i>
Accusative	<i>primum</i>	<i>primam</i>	<i>primum</i>
Genitive	<i>primi</i>	<i>primae</i>	<i>primi</i>
Dative	<i>primo</i>	<i>primae</i>	<i>primo</i>
Ablative	<i>primo</i>	<i>prima</i>	<i>primo</i>

*septimus* (seventh)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>septimus</i>	<i>septima</i>	<i>septimum</i>
Accusative	<i>septimum</i>	<i>septimam</i>	<i>septimum</i>
Genitive	<i>septimi</i>	<i>septimae</i>	<i>septimi</i>
Dative	<i>septimo</i>	<i>septimae</i>	<i>septimo</i>
Ablative	<i>septimo</i>	<i>septima</i>	<i>septimo</i>

Examples

*capitulum **primum** flosculis femineis factum **first*** capitulum formed  
with female florets only  
*stratum **secundum** cellularum elongatum **second*** layer of cells elongate.

Distributive numerals

These tell us the number of parts present in each of a set of features, e.g. *folia verticillata, in quoque verticillo quaterna vel quina* (leaves whorled, in each whorl four or five). Those up to 12 are:

<i>singuli</i> one each	<i>septeni</i> seven each
<i>bini</i> two each	<i>octoni</i> eight each
<i>terni</i> three each	<i>noveni</i> nine each
<i>quaterni</i> four each	<i>deni</i> ten each
<i>quini</i> five each	<i>undeni</i> eleven each
<i>seni</i> six each	<i>duo deni</i> twelve each

They are declined like plural adjectives of Group A.

Example:

*octoni*

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>octoni</i>	<i>octonae</i>	<i>octona</i>
Accusative	<i>octonos</i>	<i>octonas</i>	<i>octona</i>
Genitive	<i>octonorum</i>	<i>octonarum</i>	<i>octonorum</i>
Dative	<i>octonis</i>	<i>octonis</i>	<i>octonis</i>
Ablative	<i>octonis</i>	<i>octonis</i>	<i>octonis</i>

*folia verticillata septeni vel octoni* leaves in whorls, **seven** or **eight in each**

*fructus fasciculati seni vel septeni* fruit [plural] in clusters, **six** or **seven in each**

### Numerical adverbs

There are also several numerical adverbs (ordinal) that indicate how many times something happens, e.g. leaves twice pinnate. Those most commonly required are:

*semel* once

*bis* twice

*ter* thrice

*quater* four times

*quinqüies, quinqüiens* five times

*sexies, sexiëns* six times

*septies, septiens* seven times

*octies, octiens* eight times

*nonies, noniens* nine times

*decies, deciens* ten times

### Examples

*non plus quam semel* not more than **once**

*plus quam quinqüies* more than **five times**

*folia longiora quam latiora quater* leaves **four times** longer than wide  
*species bis non semel per annum florens* species flowering **twice**, not **once**, per year

Although they are rarely used in modern Latin, it is useful to know the units (nouns) that were commonly used in early botanical descriptions:

*capillus* a hair's width (c. 0.18 mm)

*digitus* the length of the index finger (c. 5.3 cm) (but in classical usage was about 2.5 cm)

*linea* a line (c. 2.25 mm)

*orgya* (adj. *orgyalis*) the distance between the tips of the middle fingers when the arms are outstretched (c. 1.95 m)

*palmus* (adj. *palmaris*) the width of the four fingers closed together (c. 8 cm)

*pes* (adj. *pedalis*) a foot (c. 32.5 cm)

*pollex* (adj. *pollicaris*) the length of the upper joint of the thumb (c. 2.7 cm)

*unguis* (adj. *uncialis*) the length of a finger nail (c. 1.35 cm)

## On relative length (Stearn pp. 114–117)

You may want to express the size of an organ relative to another in the same taxon, or to the same organ in another taxon, or compare two aspects of the same organ. This is where the comparison of adjectives and adverbs often comes in. In such an expression the object is put into the accusative case or, when the comparative form is used, into the ablative.

Usually no numerals are involved, e.g.

*folia ad costam dimidia parte divisa* leaves divided half-way to midrib  
(literally ‘by a half part’)

Remember that ‘half’ may be either a noun (Latin *dimidium*) or an adjective (Latin *dimidius*).

*lobi calycis minus profunde divisi* lobes of the calyx less deeply divided

*petala sepala aequantia* petals equalling [as long as] sepals

*staminodia staminibus dimidio longiora* staminodes half as long as  
stamens (literally ‘longer by half’) or you can say *staminodia*  
*staminibus 2-plo breviora* (‘stamens shorter by half than the  
staminodes’)

*inflorescentia foliis duplo longiora* inflorescence twice as long as leaves  
*pistillum triente longitudinis exsertum* pistil exerted for one-third its  
length

*foliola duplo longiora quam latiora* leaflets twice as long as wide

*folliculi 4- vel 5-plo longiori quam latiori* follicles 4 or 5 times as long as  
wide

*folia ratione longitudinis:latitudinis 6–8*; or you could say

*foliorum ratio longitudinis:latitudinis 6–8* ratio of length:width of  
leaves 6–8

Fractions such as 3/4 are best left as numerals.

To express angles:

*sub angulo 35° oriens* (or *exoriens*) arising at an angle of 35°

*ad angulum 70° patens* spreading at an angle of 70°

Characters or states of the taxon being compared are usually included in parentheses:

*Ad speciem X affinis sed ..., seminibus minoribus, 2.5–3 mm longis*  
(*in specie X 4.5–6 mm*), ... *differt* Affinity to *species X* but differs  
in ..., seeds smaller, 2.5–3 mm long (in *species X* 4.5–6 mm)

Useful participles and adverbs are:

*aequans* equalling (= as long as)

*superans* exceeding

*haud* not at all

*fere* almost

*multo* much

*paulo* a little

*plus minusve* more or less (or use  $\pm$ )

*vix* scarcely

Finally, when describing relative lengths, the word '*quam*' can be used, and this is discussed on p. 00.



---

## Prefixes and suffixes

A prefix or suffix is a part of a word that often cannot stand on its own, but which alters the meaning of the noun or adjective to which it is added. A prefix is attached to the front of the stem, and the suffix to the end. An example in English is the suffix ‘-ly’ which, when added to the adjective ‘quick’, converts it into the adverb ‘quickly’; another suffix is ‘-ment’ which, when added to the verb ‘enjoy’, produces the noun ‘enjoyment’. ‘Dis-’ is an example of a prefix and alters nouns and verbs, sometimes dramatically, e.g. disfigure, disinterest, dislike; another is ‘un-’ giving us words such as unhappy, uncluttered and unclean.

Botanical Latin, similarly, uses prefixes and suffixes, of both Latin and Greek origin, although a Greek prefix or suffix should be added only to a Greek stem, and a Latin prefix or suffix only to a Latin stem. Some prefixes can exist on their own and can be used separately, such as the prepositions *circum*, around (*circumsessilis*), *super*, above (*superficies*), and *trans*, across (*transectio*), whereas others, such as *eu-* (*eucarpic*) and *re-* (*reflexus*), cannot.

Taking the word *punctum*, meaning ‘dot’, the stem is *punct-* to which can be added several suffixes to produce the different meanings:

*punctatus* dotted

*punctiformis* dot-like

*punctatio* dotting

*impunctatus* not dotted; in this case both a suffix and a prefix have been added.

Similarly, taking *albus* (white) we can form:

*albidus* whitish

*albens* whitened

*albescens* becoming white,

and we can add *re-* to form words such as:

*reflexus* bent **back** on itself

*reduncus* bent **backwards**

*refluxus* **back** flow, ebb

with, finally, a few Greek:

*endolithicus* growing **within** stone

*hypogaeus* **below** ground

*anemonoides* **similar** to an anemone

*hyalinus* **like** glass = transparent

*petraeus* **growing among, belonging to** rocks

For a further discussion, Stearn (pp. 293–302) goes into the matter thoroughly and gives Latin and Greek prefixes as well as substantival, adverbial and adjectival suffixes, again in both Latin and Greek.

We have included many prefixes and suffixes in the Vocabulary but generally have omitted adverbial suffixes since users will never (or rarely) need to use them, although many adverbs listed include such a suffix.

---

## Miscellany

### Time

You may wish to express time, e.g. the time when a flower opens or the fruit matures, or the season of flowering. To express a time *at which* something happens (date, time of day, season etc.), we use the ablative, e.g. *hieme* (in winter), *nocte* (at night). The time *within which* something happens is also shown by the ablative:

*semina mensibus duobus [2] maturescentia* seed ripening within 2 months

And the time *during which* something happens is shown by the accusative:

*planta annuos quinque [5] vivens* plant living for 5 years

Some useful expressions are:

*in alabastro* in bud

*in maturitate* at maturity

*in juventute* in youth, at a young state

*ad anthesin/anthesem* at flowering time

*post anthesin/anthesem* after the flower opens

### Habitat (Stearn pp. 197–200)

A plant's habitat is usually included in a Latin description only if it is significant in distinguishing the taxon from a closely related one, e.g. growing on dry hills in contrast to one that grows in swamps. The common relevant verbs are:

*habitat* it lives

*crescit* it grows

*occurrit* it occurs

*incolit* it inhabits

The ecological terms are usually to be found in a vocabulary. When translated they are preceded by a preposition, either *in* followed by the terms in the ablative, or *ad* followed by the accusative; thus:

*in glareosis* in gravelly places  
*ad basim montium* at or towards the base of hills

## Geography (Stearn pp. 201–228)

When constructing a diagnosis or description, you will rarely translate geographical terms – either general such as *river*, or proper such as *Australia* – but you may want to translate them from Latin in older works. If you do use them, however, you find the Latin word in the vocabulary and use the appropriate preposition such as:

*in flumine* by the river  
*in montibus* on mountains  
*in Australia* in Australia

Stearn has a list of the Latin equivalents of geographical proper names on pp. 210–227; see also Roman Life and Culture, pp. 11–19 in *Collins Latin Dictionary plus Grammar* (1997). For names not listed in these, there are numerous websites listing places (especially European ones) in their Latin form, and antique maps sometimes include Latin names.

New country names are best left in their original form and hence not declined, although a translation may be possible. We were asked to translate Lesser Sunda Islands, which was not listed in Latin in any paper or electronic resource, and settled on *Insulae Minores Sundae* (literally, Lesser Islands of Sunda) in the nominative which became *Insulis Minoribus Sundae* in the ablative, ‘*Sundae*’ remaining in the genitive.

## Colour

Although Stearn has a very useful (and entertaining) chapter on colour terms (pp. 229–251), they are not discussed here since, grammatically, they are adjectives and handled in the same way as described above. Note that it is usually unnecessary to include the word ‘colour’ since this is plain from the colour term itself (i.e. ‘petals white’ is sufficient, not ‘petals white in colour’). Many colour terms are given in the Vocabulary, mainly under the basic colours such as brown, green, red.

## Symbols and abbreviations

Symbols and abbreviations (Stearn pp. 350–358) are simply used as they are, in both English and Latin. Just bear in mind that, if an abbreviation is a verb (e.g. *hab.*, *habitat*) or preposition (e.g. *c.*, *circa*), an accompanying word (if necessary with a preposition) will have to be translated in the correct case, e.g. *hab. in glareosis* (it lives in gravelly soil).

## Punctuation (Stearn pp. 194–196)

The Romans used no punctuation as we know it today.

A *full stop* (also called a *period*) ends a sentence. It also ends an abbreviation, but not a contraction (which retains the first and last letters of the word, e.g. *dr* for doctor).

A *comma* is used between adjectives except the last before the noun. It also separates clauses or phrases (used in place of ‘and’, ‘or’, ‘but’). It may be needed for unambiguity, e.g. tea, bread and butter, and cake. It may be used in place of brackets (and make sure that the second one is included). It should *never* be used to separate sentences!!

A *semicolon* separates clauses of equal importance that could stand as separate sentences; it is useful for indicating separate items, especially if they themselves include commas.

A *colon* separates two clauses, the second of which expresses an effect or result of the first. It is also used to introduce examples. Never add a hyphen or dash after a colon.

An often mis-used punctuation mark is the *hyphen*. Correctly, it is used to break a word at the end of a line and between two words that, by common usage, are not fully joined but must be linked. It should not be used to indicate a range (a substitute for the word ‘to’), such as between figures, or between shapes that grade from one to another. In these places the correct mark is the longer *en rule* or *en dash*. Thus, write 5–10 mm, not 5-10 mm; oblong–elliptic (when the intended meaning is oblong to elliptic). But use ‘or’, not an en dash, between consecutive whole numbers when describing the number of parts, since you don’t have intermediate fractions. Thus, 3 or 4 petals, not 3–4 petals; but 3–5 petals is correct when there are 3, 4 or 5.

Longer again than the en dash is the *em rule* or *em dash*, which can be used – instead of the comma or parentheses – to mark off a phrase or clause within a sentence, or to set off a final explanatory statement. You will rarely, if ever, use an em rule in botanical Latin. Neither rule should have spaces between it and the adjacent words.

## Forming specific epithets

The process of forming specific epithets is governed by the rules laid out in the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* (soon to be *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants*), and we recommend that, before you embark on this process, you read Article 60 and all its recommendations (A–H). Stearn also discussed the subject in Chapter XX. It is a good idea to explain the etymology or derivation of your new name as suggested in Recommendation 60H of the *Code*. It can avoid confusion later on!

Suffice it to say, epithets can be formed from morphological characteristics, from place names and localities, in honour of people (dead or alive), from the names of other genera, even in an arbitrary way. They can be nouns in apposition, in which case they do not have to agree in gender with the generic name, or they can be adjectives that must agree.

The best way to determine the gender of a genus is to look at the names of other species in that genus and see what other botanists have done, but again we have to preach caution here as a noun in apposition might resemble a masculine adjective. A case that springs to mind is *Eucalyptus globulus* (which confused one of the authors, newly arrived in Australia), where *Eucalyptus* is feminine and *globulus* looks masculine, but is a noun meaning ‘little ball’. By referring to a list of species, you will see that, for example, *Eucalyptus miniata*, *E. caesia* and *E. marginata* are obviously feminine, so any epithet chosen by you will also have to be feminine.

Geographical epithets may be in the genitive and derived from a country or locality, such as *Crotalaria* (f.) *novae-hollandiae* [of New Holland = Australia], *Adenanthos cygnorum* [of the swans = Swan River, Australia]. Alternatively, they may be adjectival in form and end in *-ensis*, *-(i)anus*, *-inus* or *-icus* and agree in gender (given in parentheses in the following examples) with the generic name. Examples include: *Citrus* (m.) *sinensis*, *Gyrocarpus* (m.) *americanus*, *Laburnum* (n.) *alpinum*, *Lecanora* (f.) *queenslandica*, *Dillenia* (f.) *indica*.

Some epithets are, in fact, other generic names as is the case with the following: *Moraea sisyrinchium*, *Nymphaea lotus*, *Frangula rhamnus*. These are nouns in apposition so do not agree in number and gender, although their case (nominative) does.

Double-barrelled (compound) epithets are allowed, but care must be taken in use of the hyphen (see Article 60.9 of the *Code*). Examples are *Macrozamia pauli-guilielmi* (after Paul Wilhelm), *Scandix pecten-veneris* (Venus’s comb, already a genitive, so is not declined with the generic name), *Silene* (f.) *coeli-rosa* (literally, pink of the sky), *Neottia nidus-avis* (bird’s nest), *Melaleuca*

*dorrien-smithii* (after the Dorrien-Smith family), *Amyema cycnei-sinus* (Bay of Cygnet, i.e. Cygnet Bay; *sinus* is a noun in apposition), *Impatiens noli-tangere* (formed from two verbs meaning 'do not touch').

Morphological characteristics of the taxon are commonly used: *Ranunculus* (m.) *acris*, *Fucus* (m.) *saccharinus*, *Chondrus* (m.) *crispus*, *Amphinidium* (n.) *operculatum*, *Asplenium* (n.) *gracillimum*, *Trichoglossum* (n.) *hirsutum*, *Usnea* (f.) *scabrida*, *Coltricia* (f.) *cinnamomea* and *Mittenia* (f.) *plumula*.

To indicate that a feature is borne by the species, use an adjective ending in *-fer* or *-ger* (with Latin words) or *-phorus* (with Greek words): *Racopilum* (n.) *cuspidigerum* (bearing cusps), *Metopium* (n.) *toxiferum* (bearing poison), *Gyrostemon* (m.) *racemiger* (bearing racemes), *Marsilia* (f.) *costulifera* (bearing costules), *Caulerpa* (f.) *corynephora* (bearing clubs).

For a plant that resembles another or has a feature recalling an object, the suffix *-odes*, or *-oides* is commonly used: *Amanita phalloides* (resembling *Phallus*), *Tillandsia usneoides* (resembling *Usnea*), *Polypodium phymatodes* (resembling a tumour).

Epithets named after people are usually either genitive (singular or plural) or adjectival. Examples of genitives include *Cochlospermum* (n.) *fraseri* (literally *Cochlospermum* of [Charles] Fraser) and *Verticordia* (f.) *brownii* (*Verticordia* of [Robert] Brown). The plural is used if more than one person is commemorated, e.g. *Darwinia wittwerorum* (*Darwinia* of [Ernst and Magda] Wittwer). The use of *-i* or *-ii* at the end of the epithet depends on the previous letters: a stem ending in *-er* takes *-i*, but the others take *-ii* (all mentioned in the *Code*). These genitives are based on men's names, but if the person after whom the plant is named is a woman then the genitive has the feminine ending *-ae*, e.g. *Conospermum* (n.) *eatoniae* (named for Alice Eaton). There are variations on this depending on whether the plant was named after two men, two women or after a man and a woman, but again, we refer you to Article 60 of the *Code*. In a diagnosis where the generic name may have to be translated into the genitive or dative, an epithet in the genitive remains unchanged as it still means, for example, 'of Fraser'.

Examples of adjectival epithets formed from a person's name are *Banksia* (f.) *hookeriana* (literally meaning the Hookerian *Banksia*), *Convolvulus* (m.) *hookerianus* and *Asplenium* (n.) *hookerianum*. Note that the adjectival ending agrees in gender with the generic name.

When considering an epithet, bear in mind that our Vocabulary contains mainly terms used for describing plants. There are many other useful words. Particularly useful for providing an appropriate word is Brown (1956), who listed words for all scientific disciplines.





## Part II

---

### Exercises in translation



## Exercises

---

It's time to be brave and get to grips with translating. Below are exercises, with answers starting on p. 00. These are also useful if you are running a course in botanical Latin.

In exercises where several Latin words are available and correct, we give just one. The vital point is that the word you choose has the correct ending, in case, gender and number.

Where necessary, consult the Vocabulary for the declension and gender of a noun and for the group of an adjective. Don't guess. One example that comes to mind – and we have seen this several times – is the word *folia* (Second Declension Nominative, Accusative n. pl.), which looks like a First Declension Nominative f.sing. noun, and then errors such as *foliae*, and *folias* suddenly appear in the description!

A few compound adjectives are listed in the Vocabulary, but others you will have to construct.

You may find it useful to revise the relevant section in the grammar before doing these.

### 1. Declining

#### 1.1. Declining nouns and adjectives (answers on p. 00)

State the declension and gender of each of the following nouns and then decline in full – singular and plural:

*ampulla* (bladder), *sorus* (sorus), *velum* (veil), *Quercus* (oak), *superficies* (surface), *frons* (frond), *sipho* (tube), *lemma* (lemma).

Now translate and decline the following nouns with their adjectives in full (all cases, singular and plural):

yellow corolla(s) (use *luteus*, -a, -um)

yellow stamen(s)

yellow style(s)

stipe(s) slender, red (use *gracilis*, -e and *ruber*, -a, -um)

pileus (pilei) stinking (use *foetens*), gelatinous

rhizome(s) fibrous, creeping (use *repens*)  
 anther(s) versatile, brown (use *brunneus*, -a, -um)

## 1.2. Taxonomic ranks (answers on p. 00)

Translate in the nominative:

new species  
 new subspecies  
 new variety  
 new form  
 new genus  
 new subgenus  
 new section  
 new series  
 new name

## 1.3. Exercises in the nominative (answers on p. 00)

Give the number and gender of the following nouns in the nominative, then add the correct form of the given adjectives:

### herb

annual perennial slender robust creeping prostrate decumbent suckering  
 floating

### shrub

(use *frutex*) erect suckering robust much-branched

### tree

evergreen deciduous mature

### stem

terete angular glabrous red villous

**stems**

winged smooth hirsute flattened dark purple

**stipules**

minute setaceous triangular leaf-like membranous spinescent absent

**leaf**

sessile petiolate spreading (use *patens*) appressed decurved simple pinnate terete lanceolate orbicular fusiform flat channelled obtuse emarginate acute pungent entire serrate glabrous hirsute

**leaves**

alternate opposite whorled rosetted basal cauline imbricate

**inflorescence**

axillary globose racemose loose umbellate subtended

**inflorescences**

terminal cauliflorous spicate paniculate

**bract**

lanceolate persistent

**bracts**

caducous amplexicaul overlapping many

**flower**

very small fragrant pedicellate unisexual

**flowers**

axillary pedicellate nodding

**calyx**

five-lobed ribbed papery

**sepals**

imbricate enlarged succulent reflexed glandular

**corolla**

tubular bilabiate zygomorphic spurred glandular glabrous

**petals**

free unequal concave dentate shiny glabrous

**stamens**

incurved caducous united exerted numerous

**anthers**

versatile basifixed bilocular apiculate sessile

**filament**

terete flat bearded cream

**filaments**

smooth warty thread-like fleshy

**pistil**

simple elongated bifurcate geniculate

**gynoecium**

fleshy rudimentary

**style**

straight short filiform much-branched

**ovary**

inferior superior stipitate glabrous bilocular

**stigma**

capitate three-lobed feathery small decurrent orange  
stigmata clavate linear sticky dry

**fruit**

dehiscent drupaceous fusiform beaked

**seed**

globose flat angular winged arillate brown

**stipe**

purple swollen upright striate rough pitted obese club-shaped bulbous

**caps**

umbonate foetid liquefying domed gelatinous silky flexuous viscid excentric

**gills**

buff sinuate free decurrent crowded forked adnate

**thallus**

coiled constricted narrow strap-like thick mucilaginous monoecious/mono-  
icous leafy dark red

#### 1.4. Exercises in the accusative (answers on p. 00)

Translate, giving the declension, gender and number of the nouns underlined:

corolla pink tubular hairy bell-shaped  
petals reflexed red overlapping spreading  
thallus dry entire warty pitted furrowed curled rigid  
spores black powdery sticky similar reddening  
 before anthesis  
 towards the top  
 at the base  
 to the tip  
 stamens united in bundles  
 corolla equalling bracts

#### 1.5. Exercises in the genitive (answers on p. 00)

Translate:

margins of the leaves [leaf margins]  
 tube of corolla  
 upper surface of leaf  
 canal of alar cell  
 surface of the valves  
 mass of spores  
 grain of pollen  
 flesh of receptacles  
 base of stipe  
 [with] face of valve  
 similar [s. Neuter] to *Agaricus* [Masculine]  
 similar [s. Masculine] to *Delessaria sinuosa*  
 flesh of stipe drying

#### 1.6. Exercises in the dative (answers on p. 00)

Translate:

*Dryandra meganotia* is similar to *Dryandra armata*  
 This genus is similar to *Nitophyllum*  
 This genus is similar to *Cladonia*



## 1.7. Exercises in the ablative (answers on p. 00)

### Translate:

with petals equalling sepals in length  
 leaves glossy with papery margins  
 low shrub with spreading branches  
 erect herb with basal rosette  
 pileus red with remnants of volva visible  
 leaf variegated with three veins  
 flowers blue at maturity  
 frond crimson with calcareous white crust  
 cap with flexuose margins  
 surface with scattered, irregular pink spots  
 seed ridged, black, with terminal tuft of bristles  
 frond glossy, with naked sori  
 fruit circumscissile, with numerous ridges  
 margin undulating, with many sharp teeth

## 2. Adjectives

### 2.1. Positive (absolute) adjectives (answers on p. 00)

#### 2.1.1. State whether the following adjectives are Group A or Group B and then decline fully, i.e. masculine, feminine and neuter, singular and plural:

*roseus, rosea, roseum* (rosy pink)  
*incolor, incolor, incolore* (colourless)

#### 2.1.2. Give the:

singular neuter nominative of *foetidus* (smelly)  
 plural feminine accusative of *rostriformis* (beak-shaped)  
 singular masculine genitive of *affinis* (related)  
 singular masculine accusative of *plicatus* (folded)  
 plural neuter ablative of *planus* (flat)  
 plural masculine accusative of *acer* (bitter)  
 plural feminine nominative of *umbelliformis* (umbel-shaped)  
 singular masculine dative of *inermis* (unarmed: without prickles, spines  
 or thorns)  
 plural feminine genitive of *purpureus* (reddish purple)  
 singular feminine nominative of *niger* (black)

plural neuter dative of *tenax* (tough)  
 singular neuter genitive of *iners* (sluggish, stagnant)  
 plural neuter accusative of *gracilis* (slender)  
 singular neuter nominative of *simplex* (simple)

### 2.1.3. Translate:

ovate-lanceolate  
 greyish-white  
 thick-walled  
 depressed-ovoid  
 bearing glands (glandular)

## 2.2. Comparative adjectives (answers on p. 00)

### 2.2.1. Translate:

with wider leaves  
 longer, narrower petals  
 with more hirsute follicles  
 shorter staminodes  
 species with taller habit  
 with paler margins  
 with pinker petals  
 branches more slender

## 2.3 Superlative adjectives (answers on p. 00)

### 2.3.1. Translate:

very slender stems  
 the tallest variety  
 leaves with very dense indumentum  
 very long, narrow fruit  
 stalk upright, very swollen at base  
 frond very thick, strap-like

## 2.4. Comparisons (answers on p. 00)

### 2.4.1. Translate:

sepals longer than petals  
 with petals longer than sepals

with fruit (singular) wider than long  
 standard petal longer than wide  
 the corolla tube longer than the calyx  
 with the calyx shorter than the corolla tube  
 the keel equals the standard in length

### 3. Participles (answers on p. 00)

#### 3.1. Decline in full for the gender cited (all cases, singular and plural):

scattered: *dispersus* (feminine)  
 straggling: *effusus* (masculine)  
 spreading: *patens* (neuter)  
 reddening: *rufescens* (masculine)

#### 3.2. Translate the following:

linking spine  
 leaves narrowed  
 with creeping stems  
 hairs scattered sparsely  
 with cells arranged in palisade  
 lobes arising from base  
 sori developed in dense clusters  
 with spores laterally compressed

## 4. Adverbs

### 4.1 Positive (absolute) adverbs (answers on p. 00)

#### 4.1.1. Translate the following adjectives, state whether they are Group A or Group B, and then form their associated adverbs:

irregular  
 weak  
 acute  
 narrow  
 easy  
 thick  
 slender  
 strong

**4.1.2. Translate the following:**

leaves red, irregularly dentate, slightly papery  
 pileus with flesh easily bruised, foetid  
 with leaf margins slightly undulating  
 thallus densely branched

**4.2. Comparative and superlative adverbs (answers on p. 00)****4.2.1. Translate:**

with stems more densely hairy  
 tips of sepals tapering more narrowly  
 the species with most distinctly fleshy leaves  
 the tip of the frond very tightly rolled  
 with yellow, very strongly perfumed flowers  
 with the flesh of the pileus more easily bruised  
 thallus very deeply dissected, leathery  
 spores more prominently verrucose  
 species mostly riparian

**5. Conjunctions (answers on p. 00)****5.1. Translate:**

flowers nodding with the corolla either white or pink  
 upper surface of leaf smooth but lower hairy  
 both leaves and stems pale  
 glands more or less regularly scattered  
 neither frond nor stipe with a calcareous crust  
 both stipe and pileus fibrous

**6. Pronouns (answers on p. 00)****6.1. Translate:**

this species differs from the others  
 these varieties similar  
 the three upper petals longer than the others  
 two stamens long, the others are short  
 [it is] similar to this species but differing from it

sepals and petals 10–15 mm long, the former pale green, papery, the latter dark red, spotted

## **7. Verbs (answers on p. 00)**

### **7.1. Translate:**

this species grows on dry, rocky hillsides  
it lives on the banks of damp, shaded streams  
it occurs in cultivated fields  
these species differ from the others in this genus  
it is found on the edge of melting snow

---

## Answers to the Exercises

### 1. Declining

#### 1.1. Declining nouns and adjectives

*ampulla* First Declension feminine

---

Nominative	<i>ampulla</i>	<i>ampullae</i>
Accusative	<i>ampullam</i>	<i>ampullas</i>
Genitive	<i>ampullae</i>	<i>ampullarum</i>
Dative	<i>ampullae</i>	<i>ampullis</i>
Ablative	<i>ampulla</i>	<i>ampullis</i>

---

*sorus* Second Declension masculine

---

Nominative	<i>sorus</i>	<i>sori</i>
Accusative	<i>sorum</i>	<i>soros</i>
Genitive	<i>sori</i>	<i>sorum</i>
Dative	<i>soro</i>	<i>soris</i>
Ablative	<i>soro</i>	<i>soris</i>

---

*velum* Second Declension neuter

---

Nominative	<i>velum</i>	<i>vela</i>
Accusative	<i>velum</i>	<i>vela</i>
Genitive	<i>veli</i>	<i>velorum</i>
Dative	<i>velo</i>	<i>velis</i>
Ablative	<i>velo</i>	<i>velis</i>

---

*Quercus* Fourth Declension feminine

---

Nominative	<i>Quercus</i>	<i>Quercus</i>
Accusative	<i>Quercum</i>	<i>Quercus</i>
Genitive	<i>Quercus</i>	<i>Quercuum</i>
Dative	<i>Quercui</i>	<i>Quercibus</i>
Ablative	<i>Quercu</i>	<i>Quercibus</i>

---

*superficies* Fifth Declension feminine

Nominative	<i>superficies</i>	<i>superficies</i>
Accusative	<i>superficiem</i>	<i>superficies</i>
Genitive	<i>superficie</i>	<i>superficierum</i>
Dative	<i>superficie</i>	<i>superficiebus</i>
Ablative	<i>superficie</i>	<i>superficiebus</i>

*frons* Third Declension feminine

Nominative	<i>frons</i>	<i>frondes</i>
Accusative	<i>frondem</i>	<i>frondes</i>
Genitive	<i>frondis</i>	<i>frondium</i>
Dative	<i>frondi</i>	<i>frondibus</i>
Ablative	<i>fronde</i>	<i>frondibus</i>

*sipho* Third Declension masculine

Nominative	<i>sipho</i>	<i>siphones</i>
Accusative	<i>siphonem</i>	<i>siphones</i>
Genitive	<i>siphonis</i>	<i>siphonum</i>
Dative	<i>siphoni</i>	<i>siphonibus</i>
Ablative	<i>siphone</i>	<i>siphonibus</i>

*lemma* Third Declension neuter

Nominative	<i>lemma</i>	<i>lemmata</i>
Accusative	<i>lemma</i>	<i>lemmata</i>
Genitive	<i>lemmatis</i>	<i>lemmatum</i>
Dative	<i>lemmati</i>	<i>lemmatibus</i>
Ablative	<i>lemmate</i>	<i>lemmatibus</i>

Nominative	<i>corolla lutea</i>	<i>corollae luteae</i>
Accusative	<i>corollam luteam</i>	<i>corollas luteas</i>
Genitive	<i>corollae luteae</i>	<i>corollarum lutearum</i>
Dative	<i>corollae luteae</i>	<i>corollis luteis</i>
Ablative	<i>corolla lutea</i>	<i>corollis luteis</i>

Nominative	<i>stamen luteum</i>	<i>stamina lutea</i>
Accusative	<i>staminem luteum</i>	<i>stamina lutea</i>
Genitive	<i>staminis lutei</i>	<i>staminum luteorum</i>
Dative	<i>stamina luteo</i>	<i>staminibus luteis</i>
Ablative	<i>stamine luteo</i>	<i>staminibus luteis</i>

Nominative	<i>stylus luteus</i>	<i>styli lutei</i>
Accusative	<i>stylum luteum</i>	<i>stylos luteos</i>
Genitive	<i>styli lutei</i>	<i>stylorum luteorum</i>
Dative	<i>stylo luteo</i>	<i>stylis luteis</i>
Ablative	<i>stylo luteo</i>	<i>stylis luteis</i>

Nominative	<i>stipes gracilis, ruber</i>	<i>stipites graciles, rubri</i>
Accusative	<i>stipitem gracilem, rubrum</i>	<i>stipites graciles, rubros</i>
Genitive	<i>stipitis gracilis, rubri</i>	<i>stipitum gracilum, rubrorum</i>
Dative	<i>stipiti gracili, rubro</i>	<i>stipitibus gracilibus, rubris</i>
Ablative	<i>stipite gracili, rubro</i>	<i>stipitibus gracilibus, rubris</i>

Nominative	<i>pileus foetens, gelatinosus</i>	<i>pilei foetentes, gelatinosi</i>
Accusative	<i>pileum foentem, gelatinosum</i>	<i>pileos foetentes, gelatinosos</i>
Genitive	<i>pilei foetentis, gelatinosi</i>	<i>pileorum foetentium, gelatinosorum</i>
Dative	<i>pileo foetenti, gelatinoso</i>	<i>pileis foetentibus, gelatinosis</i>
Ablative	<i>pileo foetenti, gelatinoso</i>	<i>pileis foetentibus, gelatinosis</i>

Nominative	<i>rhizoma fibrosum, repens</i>	<i>rhizomata fibrosa, repentia</i>
Accusative	<i>rhizoma fibrosum, repens</i>	<i>rhizomata fibrosa, repentia</i>
Genitive	<i>rhizomatis fibrosi, repentis</i>	<i>rhizomatum fibrosorum, repentium</i>
Dative	<i>rhizomati fibroso, repenti</i>	<i>rhizomatibus fibrosis, repentibus</i>
Ablative	<i>rhizomate fibroso, repenti</i>	<i>rhizomatibus fibrosis, repentibus</i>

Nominative	<i>anthera versatilis, brunnea</i>	<i>antherae versatiles, brunneae</i>
Accusative	<i>antheram versatilem, brunneam</i>	<i>antheras versatiles, brunneas</i>
Genitive	<i>antherae versatilis, brunneis</i>	<i>antherarum versatilium, brunnearum</i>
Dative	<i>antherae versatili, brunneae</i>	<i>antheris versatilibus, brunneis</i>
Ablative	<i>anthera versatili, brunnea</i>	<i>antheris versatilibus, brunneis</i>



## 1.2. Taxonomic ranks

Species nova, subspecies nova, varietas nova, forma nova, genus novum, subgenus novum, sectio nova, series nova, nomen novum.

## 1.3. Exercises in the nominative

herba (Feminine sing.) annua perennis gracilis robusta repens prostrata  
decumbens surculescens natans  
frutex (Masculine sing.) erectus surculescens robustus ramosissimus  
arbor (Feminine sing.) sempervirens decidua matura (*or* adulta)  
caulis (Masculine sing.) teres angulatus glaber ruber villosus  
caules (Masculine pl.) alati laeves hirsuti complanati (*or* appplanati)  
atropurpurei  
stipulae (Feminine pl.) minutae setaceae triangulares foliaciae (*or* folii-  
formes) membranaceae spinescentes absentes  
folium (Neuter sing.) sessile petiolatum patens adpressum (*or*  
appressum) decurvatum (*or* decurvum) simplex pinnatum terete  
lanceolatum orbiculare fusiforme planatum canaliculatum obtusum  
emarginatum acutum pungens integrum serratum glabrum hirsutum  
folia (Neuter pl.) alterna opposita verticillata rosularia basalia caulina  
imbricata  
inflorescentia (Feminine sing.) axillaris globosa racemosa laxa umbellata  
subtenta  
inflorescentiae (Feminine pl.) terminales cauliflorae spicatae paniculatae  
bractea (Feminine sing.) lanceolata persistens (*or* perdurans)  
bracteae (Feminine pl.) caducae amplexicaules imbricatae multae  
flos (Masculine sing.) parvulus (*or* pusillus) fragrans pedicellatus  
unisexualis  
flores (Masculine pl.) axillares pedicellati nutantes  
calyx (Masculine sing.) 5-lobatus costatus papyraceus  
sepala (Neuter pl.) imbricata amplificata (*or* ampliata) succulenta (*or*  
carnosa) reflexa glandulosa  
corolla (Feminine sing.) tubularis bilabiata zygomorpha calcarata glan-  
dulosa glabra  
petala (Neuter pl.) libera inaequalia concava dentata nitentia glabra  
stamina (Neuter pl.) incurvata caduca unita exserta numerosa  
antherae (Feminine pl.) versatiles basifixae biloculares apiculatae sessiles  
filamentum (Neuter sing.) teres planum barbatum cremeum  
filamenta (Neuter pl.) laevia filiformia verrucosa carnosae

pistillum (Neuter sing.) simplex elongatum bifurcatum geniculatum  
 gynoeceum (Neuter sing.) carnosum rudimentale  
 stylus (Masculine sing.) rectus brevis filiformis ramosissimus  
 ovarium (Neuter sing.) inferius superius stipitatum glabrum biloculare  
 stigma (Neuter sing.) capitatum 3-lobatum plumosum parvum decur-  
 rens aurantiacum  
 stigmata (Neuter pl.) clavata linearia glutinosa sicca  
 fructus (Masculine sing.) dehiscent drupaceus fusiformis rostratus  
 semen (Neuter sing.) globosum planatum angulatum (*or* angulare)  
 alatum arillatum brunneum  
 stipes (Masculine sing.) purpureus tumidus erectus striatus rugosus  
 foveatus (*or* alveolatus) obesus claviformis (*or* clavatus) bulbosus  
 pilei (Masculine pl.) umbonati foetidi deliquescentes tholiformes gelati-  
 nosi sericei flexuosi viscosi excentrici  
 lamellae (Feminine pl.) bubalinae sinuatae liberae decurrentes aggrega-  
 tae (*or* confertae) furcatae adnatae  
 thallus (Masculine sing.) helicus constrictus angustus ligulatus crassus muc-  
 laginus monoecius (*or* monoicus) frondosus (*or* foliosus) atroruber

#### 1.4. Exercises in the accusative

corollam (First Declension Feminine sing.) roseam tubularem hirsutam  
 campanulatam  
petala (Second Declension Neuter pl.) reflexa rubra imbricata patentia  
thallum (Second Declension Masculine sing.) siccum integrum verruco-  
 sum foveatum sulcatum crispum rigentem  
sporas (First Declension Feminine pl.) nigras farinaceas (*or* pulveraceas)  
 viscidas similes erubescens  
 ante anthesin  
 ad basem  
 ad apicem  
 stamina in fasciculos conflata  
 corolla bracteis aequans

#### 1.5. Exercises in the genitive

margines foliorum  
 tuba corollae

pagina supera folii (*or* superficies folii)  
 canalis cellulae alaris  
 superficies valvarum  
 massa sporarum  
 granum pollinis  
 caro receptaculorum  
 basis stipitis  
 pagina valvae  
*Agarici* simile  
*Delessariae sinuosae* similis  
 caro stipitis arescens

## 1.6. Exercises in the dative

*Dryandra Meganotia Dryandrae armatae similis*

Hoc genus *Nitophyllo* simile  
 Hoc genus *Cladoniae* simile

## 1.7. Exercises in the ablative

petalis in longitudine sepala aequantibus  
 folia nitida (*or* polita) marginibus papyraceis (*or* chartaceis)  
 frutex humilis ramis patentibus (*or* expansis)  
 herba erecta rosula basali  
 pileus ruber vestigiis volvae visibilibus  
 folium variegatum nervis (*or* venis) tribus  
 flores in maturitate caerulei  
 frons coccinea crusta calcarea alba  
 pileus marginibus flexuosis  
 pagina maculis irregularibus roseis sparsis (*or* dispersis)  
 semen porcatum, nigrum, caespite setarum terminali  
 frons nitida, soris nudis  
 fructus circumscissilis, cristis (*or* porcis) numerosis  
 margo undulata (*or* undulatus) dentibus multis acutis [*margo* may be  
 feminine or masculine]

2. Adjectives

2.1. Positive (absolute) adjectives

2.1.1.

Group A

<i>roseus</i>	<i>rosea</i>	<i>roseum</i>
<i>roseum</i>	<i>roseam</i>	<i>roseum</i>
<i>rosei</i>	<i>roseae</i>	<i>rosei</i>
<i>roseo</i>	<i>roseae</i>	<i>roseo</i>
<i>roseo</i>	<i>rosea</i>	<i>roseo</i>
<i>rosei</i>	<i>roseae</i>	<i>rosea</i>
<i>roseos</i>	<i>roseas</i>	<i>rosea</i>
<i>roseorum</i>	<i>rosearum</i>	<i>roseorum</i>
<i>roseis</i>	<i>roseis</i>	<i>roseis</i>
<i>roseis</i>	<i>roseis</i>	<i>roseis</i>

Group B

<i>incolor</i>	<i>incolor</i>	<i>incolor</i>
<i>incolorem</i>	<i>incolorem</i>	<i>incolor</i>
<i>incoloris</i>	<i>incoloris</i>	<i>incoloris</i>
<i>incolori</i>	<i>incolori</i>	<i>incolori</i>
<i>incolori</i>	<i>incolori</i>	<i>incolori</i>
<i>incolores</i>	<i>incolores</i>	<i>incoloria</i>
<i>incolores</i>	<i>incolores</i>	<i>incoloria</i>
<i>incolorium</i>	<i>incolorium</i>	<i>incolorium</i>
<i>incoloribus</i>	<i>incoloribus</i>	<i>incoloribus</i>
<i>incoloribus</i>	<i>incoloribus</i>	<i>incoloribus</i>

2.1.2.

foetidum  
rostriformes  
affinis  
plicatum  
planis  
acres  
umbelliformes  
inermi  
purpurearum

nigra  
tenacibus  
inertis  
gracilia  
simplex

### 2.1.3.

ovato-lanceolatus, -a, -um  
griseoalbus, -a, -um  
crasso-parietalis, -is, -e  
depresso-ovoideus, -a, -um  
glandifer, glandifera, glandiferum, or glandulifer, -a, -um

## 2.2. Comparative adjectives

### 2.2.1.

foliis latioribus  
petala longiora, angustiora  
folliculi hirsutiores  
staminodia breviora  
species habitu altiore  
marginibus pallidioribus  
petalis magis roseis  
rami graciliores

## 2.3. Superlative adjectives

### 2.3.1.

caules gracillimi  
varietas altissima (*or* elatissima)  
folia indumento densissimo  
fructus longissimus, angustus  
stipes erectus, basi tumidissimus  
frons crassissima, ligulata

## 2.4. Comparisons

### 2.4.1.

sepala longiora quam petala  
petalis longioribus quam sepalis  
fructu longiore quam latiore

vexillum longius quam latius

tuba corollae longior quam calyx [*longior* agrees with *tuba*, not *corollae*]

calyce brevior quam tuba corollae [*tuba* looks the same in Nominative and Ablative]

carina in longitudine vexillum aequans

### 3. Participles

#### 3.1.

<i>dispersa</i>	<i>dispersae</i>
<i>dispersam</i>	<i>dispersas</i>
<i>dispersae</i>	<i>dispersarum</i>
<i>dispersae</i>	<i>dispersis</i>
<i>dispersa</i>	<i>dispersis</i>

<i>effusus</i>	<i>effusi</i>
<i>effusum</i>	<i>effusos</i>
<i>effusi</i>	<i>effusorum</i>
<i>effuso</i>	<i>effusis</i>
<i>effuso</i>	<i>effusis</i>

<i>patens</i>	<i>patentia</i>
<i>patens</i>	<i>patentia</i>
<i>patentis</i>	<i>patentium</i>
<i>patenti</i>	<i>patentibus</i>
<i>patenti</i>	<i>patentibus</i>

<i>rufescens</i>	<i>rufescentes</i>
<i>rufescentem</i>	<i>rufescentes</i>
<i>rufescentis</i>	<i>rufescentium</i>
<i>rufescenti</i>	<i>rufescentibus</i>
<i>rufescenti</i>	<i>rufescentibus</i>

### 3.2.

spina iungens  
 folia angustata  
 caulibus repentibus (*or* reptantibus)  
 pili sparsim dispersi (*or* adpersi)  
 cellulis in vallo dispositis  
 lobi e basi orientes (*or* exorientes)  
 sori in fasciculis densis evolutis  
 sporis lateraliter compressis

## 4. Adverbs

### 4.1. Positive (absolute) adverbs

#### 4.1.1.

irregularis (Group B): irregulariter  
 pallidus (Group A): pallide; *or* dilutus (Group A): dilute; *or* exiguus  
     (Group A): exigue  
 acutus (Group A): acute  
 angustus (Group A): anguste  
 facilis (Group B): facile  
 crassus (Group A): crasse  
 gracilis (Group B): graciliter  
 fortis (Group B): fortiter; *or* validus Group A: valide

#### 4.1.2.

folia rubra, irregulariter dentata, leniter (*or* parum) papyracea  
 pileus carne faciliter contusa, foetida [note that participle *contusa* agrees  
     with *carne*]  
 marginibus foliorum leviter undulatis  
 thallus dense ramosus

### 4.2. Comparative and superlative adverbs

#### 4.2.1.

caulibus densius hirsutis  
 apices sepalorum angustius contracti  
 species foliis distinctissime carnosus  
 apex frondis ar[c]tissime involutus

floribus flavis, fortissime fragrantibus  
 carne pilei facilius contusa  
 thallus profundissime dissectus coriaceus  
 sporae magis manifeste verrucosae [*prominens*, which seems the obvious  
 choice, is a participle and has no adverbial form]  
 species plerumque riparia

## 5. Conjunctions

### 5.1.

flores nutantes corolla vel alba vel rosea  
 pagina supera (*or* superna) folii laevis sed infera (*or* inferna) pilosa  
 et folia et caules pallidi  
 glandes plus minusve regulatim dispersae (*or* adpersae)  
 neque frons neque stipes crusta calcarea (*or* nec... nec...)  
 et stipes et pileus fibrosi

## 6. Pronouns

### 6.1.

haec species ab aliis differt  
 haec varietates similes  
 petala supera quam alia tria longiora  
 stamina duo longa, alia brevia  
 huius speciei similis sed ab ea differt (*or* huic) speciei similis sed ab ea  
 differt  
 sepala et petala 10–15 mm longa, illa pallido-viridia papyracea, haec  
 atrorubra, maculata (*or* punctata)

## 7. Verbs

### 7.1.

haec species in collibus aridis, petrosis crescit  
 in ripis humidis rivulorum umbrosorum habitat  
 in agris cultis occurrit  
 hae species ab aliis in hoc genere differunt  
 ad marginem nivis deliquescentis invenitur



## Part III

---

# Translating



---

## Translating into Latin

### Some tips

It's good practice to get into the way of a standard sequence for describing the organs. A sound one was developed by the Flora of Australia Editorial Committee and refined through the experience of preparing volumes of the *Flora of Australia* (*Flora of Australia Guide for Contributors*, ABRS, 3rd edn 1993, p. 8). The same format was adopted for the Species Plantarum Project (Orchard, 1999). Within organs, it is best to follow the sequence of attributes: position, number, overall shape, apex, base, length, breadth, indumentum, venation, texture. There may be no need to include all attributes, e.g. those common to all species of a genus, or not relevant to a particular organ. For leaves, the lamina is usually described before the petiole and stipules; for stamens, the filaments before the anthers; for the pistil, the ovary before the style and stigma.

Avoid unnecessary articles (the, a, an). Use a short or plain-English word rather than a long or technical one of the same meaning, e.g. warty (not verrucose), funnel-shaped (not infundibuliform), jointed (not articulate). You want the reader to understand what you are saying, not close the book. Likewise, use 'standard' botanical Latin rather than try to be erudite by using a classical word, e.g. *porca* (adj. *porcatus*) or *crista* (adj. *cristatus*) for ridge(d), not *columen* which, when declined, can look like a misspelling of column. Avoid unnecessary words, e.g. 'leaves lanceolate with entire margins' may be written as 'leaves lanceolate, entire'; 'altogether glabrous' is a tautology. Be aware of terms that have both a general and a particular meaning, e.g. pubescence (a useful general term for hair-covering is indumentum, or just say 'hairy').

Note that an author's name within a description or diagnosis is cited in the same way in both English and Latin, that is, it is not translated.

### Notes to help in translation

- (1) Keep it simple. Don't make the task harder than it already is. Several simple clauses or phrases are preferable to one convoluted one, and are

easier for you to deal with. Use numerals instead of words. If you have difficulty translating English into Latin, see if you can amend the English in order to make the translation simpler but without losing the meaning.

- (2) Write out the English well spaced and with lots of space between lines.
- (3) Write in all your workings immediately below the English, in pencil, as you will probably be correcting and re-correcting this stage.
- (4) When writing descriptions or diagnoses, keep a vocabulary for each. It saves repeated reference to the dictionary and you can add extra notes to this sheet too, so when you come to check it later, all the words you require are there in front of you, along with jottings regarding your choice of words, and so on.
- (5) Work out the cases: main characters in nominative, lesser characters (usually found on the main ones) in ablative. Underline the subordinate clauses.
- (6) Mark in possessives, e.g. **calyx** tube [literally: tube **of calyx**], to be put in genitive.
- (7) Highlight the prepositions.
- (8) Determine the case of a noun that goes with any preposition; write it in.
- (9) Determine which adjectives go with which noun. Be very exact at this stage, and label them if you wish. Write in the number, gender and case.
- (10) Write the nouns beneath the English in pencil; note their Declensions so that, when you refer back to your work later, you can pick it up where you left off.
- (11) Write in the stem of each adjective and what Group it is. Referring to its noun in number, gender and case, work out the ending, and put it in. By writing in the stems of the adjectives only (and not the masculine form as it is in the vocabulary or dictionary), you have to think about each and every word as you come to it. Many errors are made when brains become numb and the author forgets to change the adjectival ending from the nominative masculine singular to another part.
- (12) Do you need comparatives? superlatives? adverbs?, etc.
- (13) Work out the appropriate endings and insert them all in pencil, with the Latin words below the English. This will take some time and maybe several sessions if you feel that your brain is about to pop!
- (14) Keep checking 'number, gender, case' like a robot; this is where many errors occur.
- (15) When your Latin seems to be as perfect as you can make it, re-write it and sort out the word order as you do so. In general, adjectives come after their nouns, and verbs and participles come at the end of their

clauses or sentences. In classical Latin, the Romans tended to ‘paint pictures’ with their words. Aim for this.

- (16) At this point, leave the whole lot for a week or so, the longer the better. Then look at your neat version and try to translate it back into English (remember: number, gender, case!!) – and any errors should stand out. Sort out the errors by starting each word afresh, and then check your original version to see where you went wrong. You may want to skip this phase, but try not to. Tired translators make numerous mistakes, and leaving it for a week or so means that you approach it with a fresh mind.

## Parsing

To get into the swing of translating and to get into the practice of using the tables in this book, try a little parsing, that is, describing grammatically the parts of speech of words (e.g. noun) and groups of words (e.g. phrase). This used to be part of English lessons, but since teaching grammar is out of vogue it’s not often done. It can seem boring, but is a really good way of getting to grips with what you do or don’t know, and what you do or don’t understand. It is also a good way to revise Latin after a spell of not using it for a while. Take a few sentences in a description or a diagnosis, and, for each word, say what it is, e.g. *folia* (leaves) can be either nominative or accusative neuter plural Second Declension noun. *Haec* (this, these) can be nominative, singular, feminine, or nominative or accusative, plural, neuter pronoun. By the time you have done this for a description, you really begin to see how the language works.

## Abbreviations

Use of abbreviations avoids the need to decline and saves space. Besides numerals and units (mm, cm etc.), some that you may want to use are:

- c.* (*circa*) about
- diam. (*diametro*) in diameter
- excl. (*exclusus*) excluded
- incl. (*inclusus*) included

The symbols ♀ and ♂ may be used instead of the words for female (*femineus*) and male (*masculus*).

We now give an example of a description followed by two diagnoses.

## The description

### Translation of a description adapted from George Bentham's *Handbook of the British Flora*

#### Notes about the English

The main phrases of the description below are in bold; the secondary (subordinate) phrases are left in light type. A few words have been paraphrased and appear in square brackets in the relevant places. Do this when a simple phrase already exists, you can't find a word in the dictionary, or the English could be simplified. For example, in his Vocabulary Stearn doesn't give a word for 'notched' (but you could use 'emarginate'), although there is the noun *incisura*, hence there is some re-phrasing.

**Perennial or occasionally annual** [plant] with shortly creeping rootstock, and erect or ascending stems, either glabrous or slightly downy, **rarely more than 30 cm tall**. **Leaves opposite, ovate, coarsely toothed, glabrous**, with some reddening along the main vein. **Peduncles axillary, 5 cm long or more [at least 5 cm long]**, with a single, showy [prominent, large] yellow flower. **Calyx tubular** with 5 prominent angles and 5 short teeth. **Corolla with a broad tube, the inside of which is white** with a few dark purple spots, and with 5 flat lobes arranged in two lips; **the upper lip 2-lobed [and] sometimes erect, the lower one spreading and 3-lobed**, with the central lobe often notched [with notch]; **lobes bright yellow** with sometimes a large reddish-purple spot. **Stamens 4, equal to the corolla tube in length**. **Fruit a capsule** with 5 lobes, **densely packed** with seeds, **opening into 2 valves**. **Seeds very small**, with rough surface, **black**.

#### Found [lives] on the banks of streams and in moist, shady places

The following abbreviations are used: abl. ablative, acc. accusative, adj. adjective, adv. adverb, comp. comparative, conj. conjunction, decl. declension, f. feminine, gen. genitive, ind. indicative, m. masculine, n. neuter, nom. nominative, part. participle, pl. plural, prep. preposition, sing. singular, sub. subordinate

Notes about the Latin in order of appearance.

- (1) In the description above, the word 'with' indicates the start of a subordinate clause. It is not translated as such, but is part of the meaning of the ablative case.
- (2) One can become somewhat confused by the words tube, *tuba* and *tubus*. *Tuba* (Nominative sing.), *tubae* (Genitive sing.), f., trumpet, refers to the straight-sided Roman war-trumpet, and conical or trumpet-shaped floral parts! The masculine *tubus* (Nominative sing.), *tubi* (Genitive sing.), tube, refers to parallel-sided tubes or pipes.

<b>Plant</b>	<b>perennial</b>	<b>or</b>	<b>occasionally</b>	<b>annual</b>	<b>with (1)</b>	<b>shortly</b>	<b>creeping</b>
<i>Planta</i>	<i>perennis</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>interdum</i>	<i>amua</i>		<i>breviter</i>	<i>repente</i>
noun 1 s. f.	adj.B s. f.	conj.	adv.	adj.A s. f.	start sub.	adv.	part.B s. m.
Nominative	Nominative			Nominative	clause		Ablative
rootstock	and	erect	or	ascending	stems	either	glabrous
<i>caudice</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>erectis</i>	<i>aut</i>	<i>ascendentibus</i>	<i>caulibus</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>glabris</i>
noun 3 s.m.	conj.	adj.A pl. m.	conj.	adj.B pl. m.	noun 3 pl. m.	conj.	adj.A pl. m.
Ablative		Ablative		Ablative	Ablative		Ablative
or	slightly	downy	<b>rarely</b>	<b>more</b>	<b>than</b>	<b>30 cm</b>	<b>tall. [in height]</b>
<i>vel</i>	<i>leviter</i>	<i>pubescentibus</i>	<i>rare</i>	<i>plus</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>30 cm</i>	<i>in altitudine alta?</i>
conj.	adv.	adj.A pl. m.	adv.	comp. adv.	adv.		noun 3 s. f.
		Ablative					Ablative
<b>Leaves</b>	<b>opposite</b>	<b>ovate</b>	<b>coarsely</b>	<b>toothed</b>	<b>glabrous</b>	with	some
<i>Folia</i>	<i>opposita</i>	<i>ovata</i>	<i>grosse</i>	<i>dentata</i>	<i>glabra</i>		<i>nonnullus</i>
noun 2 pl. n.	adj.A pl. n.	adj.A pl. n.	adv.	adj.A pl. n.	adj.A pl. n.	Start sub.	adv.
Nominative	Nominative	Nominative		Nominative	Nominative	clause	
reddening	along	the	main vein.	<b>Axillary</b>	<b>peduncles</b>	<b>5cm</b>	<b>long</b>
<i>rufescente</i>	<i>secus</i>		<i>costam</i>	<i>Axillares</i>	<i>pedunculi</i>	<i>5 cm</i>	<i>longi</i>
part.B	prep.		noun 1 s. f.	adj.B pl. m.	noun 2 pl. m.		adj.A pl. m.
	(+Accusative)		Accusative	Nominative	Nominative		Nominative
<b>or more</b>	with	with	single	showy	yellow	flower.	<b>Calyx</b>
<i>plus minusve</i>			<i>unica</i>	<i>magnifica</i>	<i>canarina</i>	<i>flore</i>	<i>Calyx</i>
comp.adverbs		start sub.	adj.A s. m.	adj.A s. m.	adj.A s. m.	noun 3 s. m.	noun 3 s. m.
with -ve suffix =		clause	Ablative	Ablative	Ablative	Ablative	Nominative
‘or’							

<b>tubular</b>	with	5	prominent	angles	and	5	short
<i>tubularis</i>		5	<i>prominentibus</i>	<i>angulis</i>	<i>et</i>	5	<i>brevibus</i>
adj.B s. m.	start sub.	numeral	part.B pl. m.	noun 2 pl. m.	conj.	numeral	adj.B pl. m.
Nominative	clause		Ablative	Ablative			Ablative
teeth.	<b>Corolla</b>	<b>with</b>	<b>a broad</b>	<b>tube (2)</b>	<b>the inside</b>		<b>of which (4)</b>
<i>dentibus</i>	<i>Corolla</i>		<i>lata</i>	<i>tuba</i>	<i>interior (3)</i>	<i>pars</i>	<i>cujus</i>
noun 3 pl. m.	noun 1 s. f.		adj.A s. f.	noun 1 s. f.	adv.	noun 3 s. f.	pron. s. f. Genitive
Ablative	Nominative		Nominative	Nominative		Nominative	
<b>is white</b>	with	a few	dark purple	spots	and	5	flat
<i>alba</i>		<i>paucis</i>	<i>atropurpureis</i>	<i>maculis</i>	<i>et</i>	5	<i>planis</i>
adj.A s. f.	start sub.	adj.A pl. f.	adj.A pl. f.	noun 1 pl. f.	conj.	numeral	adj.A pl. m.
Nominative	clause	Ablative	Ablative	Ablative			Ablative
lobes	arranged	in (5)	two	lips	<b>the upper</b>	<b>lip</b>	<b>2-lobed</b>
<i>lobis</i>	<i>dispositis</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>duobus</i>	<i>labiis</i>	<i>superum</i>	<i>labium</i>	<i>bilobatum</i>
noun 2 pl. m.	part.A pl. m.	+Ablative	num. decl.	noun 2 pl. n.	adj.A s. n.	adj.A s. n.	adj.A s. n.
Ablative	Ablative			Ablative	Nominative	Nominative	Nominative
<b>and</b>	<b>sometimes</b>	<b>erect</b>	<b>the lower</b>	<b>one</b>	<b>spreading</b>	<b>and (6)</b>	<b>3-lobed</b>
	<i>interdum</i>	<i>erectum</i>	<i>inferum</i>		<i>patens</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>trilobatum</i>
	adv.	adj.A s. n.	adj.A s. n.	pron. s. n.	part.B s. n.	conj.	adj.A s. n.
		Nominative	Nominative	Nominative	Nominative		Nominative
with	the central	lobe	often	with notch;	<b>lobes</b>	<b>bright</b>	<b>yellow</b>
	<i>centrali</i>	<i>lobo</i>	<i>saepe</i>	<i>incisura</i>	<i>lobi</i>	<i>canarini</i>	
start sub. clause	adj.B s. m.	noun 2 s. m.	adv.	noun 1 s. f.	noun 2 pl. m.	adj.A pl. m.	
	Ablative	Ablative		Ablative	Nominative	Nominative	



with	sometimes	a large	reddish-purple	spot.	<b>Stamens</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>equal</b>
start sub. clause	<i>interdum</i> adv.	<i>magna</i> adj.A s. f. Ablative	<i>purpurea</i> adj.A s. f. Ablative	<i>macula</i> noun 1 s. f. Ablative	<i>Stamina</i> noun 3 pl. n. Nominative	<b>4</b>	<i>aequantia</i> part.B pl. n. Nominative + Accusative
<b>to the (7)</b>	<b>corolla</b> <i>corollae</i> noun 1 s. f. Genitive	<b>tube</b> <i>tubam</i> noun 1 s. f. Accusative	<b>in length</b> <i>in longitudine</i> noun 3 s. f.a bl.	<b>Fruit</b> <i>Fructus</i> noun 4 s. m. Nominative	<b>a capsule</b> <i>capsula</i> noun 1 s. f. Nominative	with	<b>5</b> <b>5</b> numeral
lobes, <i>lobis</i> noun 2 pl. m. Nominative	<b>densely</b> <i>dense</i> adv.	<b>packed</b> <i>impletus</i> part.A s. m. Nominative	with seeds <i>seminibus</i> noun 3 pl. n. Ablative	<b>opening</b> <i>aperiens</i> part.B s. m. Nominative	<b>into</b> <i>in</i> prep. + Accusative	<b>2</b> <i>duas</i> num. decl.	<b>valves.</b> <i>valvas</i> noun 1 pl. f. Accusative
<b>Seeds</b>	<b>very small diff</b> from descr?	<b>black.</b>	<b>with rough surface</b>	<b>Lives</b>	<b>on</b>	<b>the banks</b>	<b>of streams</b>
<i>semina</i> noun 3 pl. n. Nominative	<i>minutissima</i> sup. adj. pl. n. Nominative	<i>nigra</i> adj.A pl. n. Nominative	<i>rugosa</i> adj. A pl. n. Nominative	<i>habitat</i> 3 <sup>rd</sup> pers. pres. ind. act.	<i>in</i> prep. + Ablative	<i>ripis</i> noun 1 pl. f. Ablative	<i>rivulorum</i> noun 2 pl. f. Ablative
<b>and</b> <i>et</i> conj.	<b>moist</b> <i>humidis</i> adj.A pl. m. Ablative	<b>shady</b> <i>umbrosis</i> adj.A pl. m. Ablative	<b>places</b> <i>locis</i> noun 2 pl. m. Ablative				

- (3) 'Interior' is translated using the phrase 'interior part'.
- (4) 'of which': when selecting the correct pronoun, remember to choose the one with the correct meaning, in this case, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*. The word *tuba* is feminine so you need part of *quae*, it is singular, and it means 'of which' so you need the genitive. i.e. feminine, singular, genitive 'cujus'.
- (5) *in* with accusative implies motion towards or into something, whereas when used with the ablative motion is not involved.
- (6) *et* is used to join two items of equal 'weight'; in this case it connects two adjectives. As it is not necessary to the sentence, it is probably better to leave it out.
- (7) 'to the': this is indicated by the use of the accusative and so is not translated independently.

This may now be written in the correct Latin format, with the sentences and clauses numbered for ease of reference in the 'Notes' below:

- (1) *Planta perennis vel interdum annua*, (2) *caudice breviter repente et caulibus erectis aut ascendentibus, vel glabris vel leviter pubescentibus*, rare plus quam 30 cm alta. (3) *Folia opposita, ovata, grosse dentata, glabra secus costam nonnullus rufescente*. (4) *Pedunculi axillares, saltem 5 cm longi, flore unica magnifica canarina*. (5) *Calyx tubularis angulis 5 prominentibus et dentibus 5 brevibus*. (6) *Corollae tuba lata, cujus pars interior alba maculis paucis atropurpureis, et lobis planis 5 in labiis duobus dispositis; labium superum bilobatum interdum erectum, inferum trilobatum et patens lobo centrali saepe incisura*; (7) *lobi canarini, interdum macula magna purpurea*. (8) *Stamina 4, tubam corollae in longitudine aequantia*. (9) *Fructus capsula lobis 5, seminibus dense impletus, in duas valvas aperiens*. (10) *Semina minutissima, rugosa, nigra*. (11) *In ripis rivulorum et locis humidis umbrosis habitat*.

#### Notes:

In (2) use *aut* for the first 'or', otherwise *vel ... vel ... vel* will appear in the same sentence meaning 'either ... or ... or'.

In (6), as this sentence is about the corolla the word *corollae* comes first, even though it is in the genitive case and is translated together with *tuba* as 'the tube of the corolla'. Remember that it is *case* that confers meaning on a noun, not its position in the sentence.

In (8), *aequantia* is the participle of the verb and so requires an object in the accusative. The object in this case is *tubam*, while *corollae* remains in the genitive because its relationship with 'the tube' hasn't changed.

In (9) we have two nouns in apposition – *fructus* is masculine and *capsula* is feminine and, even though they are closely associated, no change in ending is made.

## The diagnosis

A diagnosis (Stearn p. 143) is a short account of the characters that distinguish an organism. It may be a statement, or a comparison with a presumed related organism (or organisms). All taxonomic ranks may be described this way, and the characters chosen should be appropriate for the rank. A character common to all taxa in a family or genus, for example, should not be included in a diagnosis for one in a lower rank.

## How to start a diagnosis

If possible, compare it to its closest relative:

Affinity/Related to [*taxon*] from which it differs by ... [*Taxon name in dative*] *affinis, a qua ... differt*. Note that the pronoun ‘which’ refers to the *rank* of the taxon cited (e.g. ‘from which *species*’); thus, if it is a rank below subgenus (section, species, subspecies etc.) it is feminine, *qua*; if the taxon is a genus or subgenus (neuter) then it is *quo* (see p. 00).

Affinity/Related to [*taxon*] but it differs by ... [*Taxon name in dative*] *affinis, sed ... differt*.

Affinity/Related to [*taxon*] from which it is distinguished by ... [*Taxon name in dative*] *affinis, a qua ... distinguitur*. As above, note that the pronoun ‘which’ refers to the *rank* of the taxon cited, thus if it is a rank below subgenus (section, species, subspecies etc.) it is feminine, *qua*; if the taxon is a genus or subgenus (neuter) then it is *quo*.

Affinity/Related to [*taxon*] but it is distinguished by ... [*Taxon name in dative*] *affinis, sed ... distinguitur*.

In this context always use ‘*affinis*’ in full, not the abbreviation ‘*aff.*’ commonly used in other text.

Similar to [*taxon*] but it differs by ... [*Taxon name in dative*] *similis, sed ... differt*.

From [*taxon*] it is distinguished by ... *Ab* [*taxon name in ablative*] ... *distinguitur*.

From all other species it differs ... *Ab speciebus aliis omnibus ... differt*.

From [*taxon*] it is distinguished by the following combination of characters: ... [may then continue in nominative] *Ab* [*taxon name in ablative*] *turma sequenti characterum distinguitur*: ...

If it appears to have no close relative, you may say:

A very distinctive species in its ... *Species bene distincta* [continue in ablative] .....

You may be comparing it with more than one taxon and then (in the Latin) must use the plural form of ‘which’.

Affinity to [*taxon*] and [*taxon*] from which it differs by ... [*Taxon name in dative*] *et* [*taxon name in dative*] *affinis, a quibus ... differt*.

In order to avoid possible confusion or ambiguity, it is good practice to give the name of the taxon being compared in full, with its author. With the forms ‘affinity/related to’ and ‘similar to’, the name of the taxon being compared goes into the genitive or dative case (both generic and specific names). When using ‘from ...’, the name goes into the ablative. In declining the names remember that the genus is a noun (with a gender) and the epithet usually an adjective (but some may be nouns in apposition).

Commemorative epithets such as *stuartii* and *wittwerorum* are nouns in the genitive and should be left in that case. Geographical epithets such as *leseurensis* and *hamersleyensis* are adjectival and should be declined.

If you don’t wish to (or can’t) relate the new taxon to another, you may have just a diagnosis with the main terms in the nominative.

You can have part of a diagnosis in the ablative and part in the nominative, e.g.

**Differs from other varieties** [*of taxon name*] in the more slender, decumbent stems and slightly smaller flowers. **Sepals 2–2.2 mm long. Lamina of petals 1.7–1.8 mm long, 1.6–1.9 mm wide.**

In the above English diagnosis, the parts to be translated into the nominative are in **bold**, those to be in the ablative have been left light, with the taxon name in the genitive. In the third sentence, ‘of petals’ will be in the genitive

Here are two worked diagnoses, i.e. set out as suggested above.

### *Calothamnus roseus*

Affinity to *Calothamnus rupestris* Schauers, from which it differs in the generally longer leaves (25–45 mm long), the hypanthium with reflexed indumentum, the staminal bundles pink, the shorter pistil (20–25 mm long), and the larger fruit (13–16 mm long).

*Note:* abbreviations used to explain the translation are the same as those used in translating the description on p. 00.

Affinity	to	<i>Calothamnus</i>	<i>rupestris</i>	Schauer	from
affinis	ad	<i>Calothamnium</i>	<i>rupestrem</i>	Schauer	a
adj. B s. m.	prep.	noun 2 s. m.	adj. B s. f.		prep.
Nominative	(+ Accusative)	Accusative	Accusative		(+ Ablative)
which	it	differs	in	the	generally
qua		differt			plerumque
pron. s. m.		verb, 3 <sup>rd</sup> pers.			adv.
Ablative		s. ind. act.			
longer	leaves	(25–45 mm	long),	the	hypanthium
longioribus	foliis	(25–45 mm	longis),		hypanthio
adj. B comp.	noun 2 pl. n.		adj. A pl.		noun 2 s. n.
pl. n. Ablative	Ablative		n. Ablative		Ablative
with	reflexed	indumentum,	the	staminal	bundles
	reflexo	indumento,		staminalibus	fasciculis
start of	adj. A s. n.	noun 2 s. n.		adj. B pl. m.	noun 2 pl.
Ablative	Ablative	Ablative		Ablative	m. abl
phrase					
pink,	the	shorter	pistil	(20–25 mm	long)
roseis,		breviore	pistillo	(20–25 mm	longo)
adj. A pl. m.		adj. B comp. s.	noun 2 s.		adj. A s. n.
Ablative		n. Ablative	n. Ablative		Ablative
and	the	larger	fruit	(13–16 mm	long).
et		maiore	fructu	(13–16 mm	longo).
conj.		adj. comp. s.	noun 4 s.		adj. A s. m.
		m. Ablative	m.		Ablative
			Ablative		

This is now written out correctly as follows, with the verb at the end:

Ad *Calothamnium rupestrem* Schauer affinis, a qua foliis plerumque longioribus (25–45 mm longis), hypanthio indumento reflexo, fasciculis staminalibus roseis, pistillo brevior (20–25 mm longo), et fructu maiore (13–16 mm longo), differt.

The following is an example in a different style, with the subordinate phrases in the nominative and ablative.

Differs	from	<i>Calothamnus</i>	<i>borealis</i>	Hawkeswood	subsp.
Differt	a	<i>Calothamno</i>	<i>boreali</i>	Hawkeswood	subsp.
verb	prep. (Ablative)	noun 2 s. m. Ablative	adj. B s. f. Ablative		
<i>borealis</i>	as	follows:	leaves	narrowly	linear
<i>boreali</i>	ut	sequente:	folia	anguste	linearia
adj.	adv.	part. s.	noun 2 pl. n.	adv.	adj. B pl. n.
B s. m.		Ablative	Nominative		Nominative
Ablative					
but	thick,	usually	1.5–2 mm	wide,	with
sed	crassa,	plerumque	1.5–2 mm	lata,	
conj.	adj. 2 pl. n. Nominative	adv.		adj. A pl. n. Nominative	start of Ablative phrase
persistent	indumentum;	fruit	8–10 mm	long,	with
persistente	indumento;	fructus	8–10 mm	longus,	
part. B s.	noun 2 s. n.	noun 2 s. n.		adj. A s. m.	start of
n.	Ablative	Nominative		Nominative	Ablative
Ablative					phrase
the	sepals	persistent	as	woody	lobes.
	sepalis	persistentibus	ut pote	lignosis	lobis.
	noun 2 n. pl.	part. B n. pl.	adv. phrase	adj. A pl. m.	noun A s.
	Ablative	Ablative		Ablative	m. Ablative
Differs	from	<i>Calothamnus</i>	<i>borealis</i>	Hawkeswood	subsp.
Differt	a	<i>Calothamno</i>	<i>boreali</i>	Hawkeswood	subsp.
verb	prep. (+ Ablative)	noun 2 s. m. Ablative	adj. B s. f. Ablative		

***Calothamnus borealis* subsp. *cinereus***

Differs from *Calothamnus borealis* Hawkeswood subsp. *borealis* as follows: *leaves* narrowly linear but thick, usually 1.5–2 mm wide, with persistent indumentum; *fruit* 8–10 mm long, with the sepals persistent as woody lobes.

This is now written out correctly as follows, with the verb at the end of the first clause:

Ab *Calothamno boreali* Hawkeswood subsp. *boreali* ut sequente differt: folia anguste linearia, crassa, plerumque 1.5–2 mm lata, indumento persistente; fructus 10 mm longus, sepalis persistentibus ut pote lobis lignosis.

## Translating from Latin into English

The key steps are:

- work out the part of speech of each word, i.e. is it a noun, adjective, adverb, pronoun, verb?
- for a noun, find its Declension, gender and case
- for an adjective, determine which noun it is associated with.

This process is called parsing, i.e. describing a word or series of words grammatically (see above, p. 00).

If you are unfamiliar with Latin, there is no alternative, to begin with, to looking up each word in the vocabulary. There is no problem with a noun or adjective in the nominative singular, since this is the case under which they are listed. If the word is in another case, you will usually find it by looking it up as it is spelt in the description, since the stem (even if you don't recognise it as such) will lead you to the correct word. In our Vocabulary we have tried to anticipate the difficulty of those words that change their form markedly when declined, and have listed the latter, with a cross-reference to the nominative singular entry.

Remember that, in Latin it is usual for adjectives to follow the noun they describe, and that a verb (even as a participle) goes at the end of its phrase, clause or sentence.

When determining which words are associated, look at the punctuation. Words without intervening punctuation such as a comma are usually closely associated. A comma indicates that the following word is associated with the immediately preceding noun. A semicolon indicates a break in the flow and is usually followed by a noun introducing the next character being described. And a full stop indicates the end of a sentence.

It may help to write down your translation in the same order as the text and then make it into more natural-sounding English.

A difficulty that cannot be resolved by any manual is an error in the Latin. It's a common problem and may involve a typographical error, wrong determination of the gender or case ending, or even the wrong word to start with. At worst (horror!), it may not even be a Latin word!

Finally, when you think you have completed it, read your translation and try to picture the plant. Does the description make sense?

Let's dissect the following example, breaking the text into individual words and looking them up in the vocabulary. For this exercise the punctuation associated with each word is included. At the end of each word, the cumulative meaning associated with the character being described is given.

**Melaleuca acerosa** Schauer foliis confertis, alternis, linearibus subteretibusve, brevipetiolatis, pungentibus, glabris, nitidis; capitulis paucifloris; hypanthio obconico, pubescente; calycis phyllis membranaceis, truncatis, ciliolatis, corolla quadruplo brevioribus; phalangibus oligandris, unguibus elongatis corolla triente longioribus.

Frutex 2–4-pedalis, erectus, inferne simplex, superne ramosus, ramis erectis, ramulis foliisque novellis pilosis. Folia crassiuscula, acerosa, subtus biseriatim punctata, subrecurva, 4–6 lin. longa, semilineam lata, laete viridia. Flores parvi, flavi. Fructus pisiformes, 3–6 coacervati, fusco-cinerei, laeves, hypanthio ad orificium subcontracto. (C.Lehmann (ed.), *Plantae Preissianae* 1: 137, 1844. Hambarg: Meissner.)

In the first paragraph the subject is the plant's name, and the subsequent text describes it in one long 'sentence'.

*foliis* the most similar word is *folium*, a neuter noun of the Second Declension; checking this declension we find that the *-is* ending is either dative or ablative plural, and since the dative is almost never used when describing the main characters we can assume that our word is ablative; meaning **'with leaves'**,

*confertis*, the only matching word is *confertus*, a participle of Group A; the *-is* ending is either dative or ablative plural for each gender, but the word is associated with *foliis* so it must be the latter; meaning 'crowded', i.e. **'with leaves crowded'**,

*alternis*, matching word *alternus*, an adjective of Group A, in either dative or ablative plural, preceded by a comma so it is associated with *foliis*; meaning 'alternate', i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate'**,

*linearibus* matching word *linearis*, an adjective of Group B; the *-ibus* ending is either dative or ablative plural of any gender; again, the preceding comma indicates association with *foliis*; meaning 'linear', i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate, linear'**; note that there is no comma after *linearibus*, indicating a link with the following word,

*subteretibusve*, there is no equivalent word in the vocabulary, but note that there is a prefix *sub-* meaning 'almost or somewhat'; then, looking up the next part of our word we find *teres*, an adjective of



Group B with the stem *tereti-* and the same ending as the preceding word; but the word ends in *-ve* which we find is a suffix meaning 'or'; hence the whole word means 'or subterete', i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate, linear or subterete,'**

*brevipetiolatis*, in the vocabulary we find not the whole word, but just *brevis* (adjective, Group B) meaning 'short'; this indicates that there are two adjectives linked, so we then find *petiolatus* (adjective, Group A with ablative plural ending) meaning 'petiolate' so we can deduce that the leaves are short- (or shortly) petiolate, i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate, linear or subterete, shortly petiolate,'**

*pungentibus*, the words of the diagnosis are still separated by commas indicating that they refer back to *foliis*; here the only possibility is *pungens*, an adjective of Group B, with ablative plural ending; meaning 'pungent', i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate, linear or subterete, shortly petiolate, pungent,'**

*glabris*, this is slightly tricky, since the only appropriate word in the vocabulary is *glaber*, an adjective of Group A, but in its stem the 'e' is dropped, hence *glabris* is ablative plural; meaning 'glabrous', i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate, linear or subterete, shortly petiolate, pungent, glabrous,'**

*nitidis*; note that this is the final word of the initial string since it is followed by a semicolon; the vocabulary leads us to *nitens* and *nitidus*, and we clearly have the second, an adjective of Group A, again ablative plural; meaning 'shining', i.e. **'with leaves crowded, alternate, linear or subterete, shortly petiolate, pungent, glabrous, shining,'**

*capitulis* following a semicolon, this is starting a new phrase; the most similar word is *capitulum*, a neuter noun of the Second Declension; the *-is* ending is either dative or ablative plural; we have decided (at *foliis*, above) that the main words (characters) in the description are in the ablative; meaning **'with heads',**

*paucifloris*; going to *paucus* we find that *pauci-* is the first part of a compound meaning 'few-', *-floris* is less easy since it could be derived from either *-florus* or *flos*, but a check of the declension of *flos* shows that it has no part with this case ending, hence this must be from *-florus*, an adjectival suffix of Group A, ablative plural; meaning 'flowered', i.e. **'with few-flowered heads,'**

*hypanthio* this is preceded by a semicolon so is the start of a new phrase, describing a new character; the word is clearly from *hypanthium*, a

neuter noun of the Second Declension, ablative singular; meaning **‘with hypanthium’**,

*obconico*, there is no equivalent word in the vocabulary, but note that there is a prefix *ob-* meaning ‘inversed, reversed’; then, looking up the next part of our word we find *conicus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative singular agreeing with *hypanthio*; meaning ‘inversed conical’ or obconical, i.e. **‘with hypanthium obconical,’**

*pubescente*; matching word *pubescens* (not *pubescentia* which has no case ending in *-e*), an adjective of Group B, ablative singular agreeing with *hypanthio*; meaning ‘pubescent’, i.e. **‘with hypanthium obconical, pubescent;’**; it’s followed by a semicolon marking the end of the attributes of the hypanthium

*calycis* the most similar word is *calyx* – the words starting with *calyc-* are too long; masculine noun of the Third Declension, genitive singular; meaning ‘of the calyx’ indicating that the following word(s) will describe some feature of it

*phyllis* matching word *phyllum*, neuter noun of the Second Declension, ablative plural (again, extrapolated from *foliis* at the start); meaning ‘with leaves’ or, as here, ‘a leaf-like part’ = ‘sepal’, i.e. **‘with sepals of calyx’**

*membranaceis*, matching word *membranaceus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural and hence associated with *‘phyllis’*; meaning ‘membranous’, i.e. **‘with sepals of calyx membranous,’**

*truncatis*, matching word *truncatus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural; meaning ‘truncate’, i.e. **‘with the sepals of the calyx membranous, truncate,’**

*ciliolatis*, matching word *ciliolatus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural; meaning ‘ciliate’, i.e. **‘with sepals of calyx membranous, truncate, ciliate,’**

*corolla* matching word *corolla*, feminine noun of the First Declension, here singular but what case? Not nominative since it is in the middle of the ‘sentence’, thus it must be ablative but ‘by’ or ‘with a corolla’ doesn’t make sense here – it’s necessary to look at the following word(s)

*quadruplo* matching word *quadruplo*, an adverb so it must be qualifying something; meaning ‘four-fold’ = four times, to be taken with the preceding and following words

*brevioribus*; the ‘*ior*’ in the word tells us that this is a comparative adjective, so its normal form is a shorter word: matching word

*brevis*, an adjective of Group B, ablative plural of the comparative; meaning 'with shorter'; so going back to the previous words we can see that it agrees in case and number with the noun '*phyllis*' (sepals) which, therefore, are being described as shorter than something; the only other noun within the phrase is '*corolla*', which thus must be in the ablative; ignoring the adjectives immediately after '*phyllis*' for the moment, we see that the sepals are being described as 'shorter than the corolla', and we can then see that they are shorter '*quadruplo*', by 'four-fold' or 'four times', which is best expressed in English as 'a quarter'; thus, the sepals are a quarter the length of the corolla, and the whole phrase is '**with sepals of calyx membranous, truncate, ciliolate, a quarter the length of the corolla;**'

*phalangibus* follows a semicolon so is starting a new phrase; the most similar word is *phalanx*, a feminine noun of the Third Declension, ablative plural; meaning '**with [staminal] bundles**'

*oligandris*, there is no matching word but there is a prefix *olig-* (meaning 'few'), so we look up '*andris*' and find the suffix *-andrus* (meaning 'male', here referring to the anthers), adjectival, Second Declension, ablative plural, i.e. '**with staminal bundles having few anthers,**'

*unguibus* the most similar word is *unguis*, masculine noun of the Third Declension, ablative plural; meaning 'with claws', i.e. '**with staminal bundles having few anthers, with claws**'

*elongatis* matching word *elongatus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural, meaning 'elongate' and linked to '*unguibus*' since there is no comma between, i.e. '**with staminal bundles having few anthers, with claws elongate**'

*corolla* with this and the two following words we have a situation similar to '*corolla ... brevioribus*' in the previous character, but with a noun instead of an adverb

*triente* the most similar word is *triens*, a masculine noun of the Third Declension, ablative singular, meaning 'by a third', to be taken with the preceding and following words

*longioribus*. the '*ior*' in the word tells us that this is a comparative adjective, so its normal form is shorter: matching word *longus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural of the comparative; we can see that it agrees in case and number with the noun '*phalangibus*' which, therefore, are being described as longer than something; the only other noun within the phrase is '*corolla*', which thus must be in the ablative; again, ignoring the adjectives immediately after

*'phalangibus'* for the moment, we see that the bundles are being described as 'longer than the corolla', and we can then see that they are longer *'triente'*, by a third; thus the final clause of the description is **'with staminal bundles having few anthers, with claws elongate, longer than the corolla by a third.'**

The second paragraph follows a different format, using shorter 'sentences'.

*Frutex* matching word *frutex*, a masculine noun of the Third Declension, nominative singular and the subject of the sentence; meaning **'A shrub'**

*2-4-pedalis*, two numerals joined by an en dash and linked by a hyphen to the word *pedalis*, an adjective of Group B in the nominative singular, meaning 'a foot long [or high]' and thus describing the plant; it is singular in Latin to agree with *Frutex* but becomes plural in English when the numerals are included; i.e. **'A shrub 2-4 feet high,'**

*erectus*, matching word *erectus*, an adjective of Group A, nominative singular and thus agreeing with *Frutex*, meaning 'erect'; i.e. **'A shrub 2-4 feet high, erect,'**

*inferne* the most similar word is *inferior* which leads to *inferne*, an adverb meaning 'below'; since there is no comma it is linked to the following word

*simplex*, matching word *simplex*, an adjective of Group B, nominative singular, meaning 'simple', agreeing with *Frutex*, linked with the previous word giving 'below simple', better as 'simple below'; i.e. **'A shrub 2-4 feet high, erect, simple below,'**

*superne* matching word *superne*, an adverb meaning 'upwards' and, with no comma, linked to the following word

*ramosus*, matching word *ramosus*, an adjective of Group A, nominative singular, meaning 'branched', agreeing with *Frutex*, linked with the previous word giving 'upwards branched' or 'branched upwards'; i.e. **'A shrub 2-4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards,'**

*ramis* matching word *ramus*, a masculine noun of the Second Declension, ablative plural meaning 'with branches'; since it is preceded by a comma it is linked to *Frutex* and continues its description; i.e. **'A shrub 2-4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards, with branches'**

*erectis*, matching word *erectus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural meaning 'erect' and with no intervening comma linked with the preceding word *ramis*; i.e. **'A shrub 2-4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards, with branches erect,'**

*ramulis* matching word *ramulus*, a masculine noun of the Second Declension, ablative plural meaning ‘with branchlets’ and starting a new phrase; i.e. **‘A shrub 2–4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards, with branches erect, with branchlets’**

*foliisque* firstly, the matching word is *folium*, a neuter noun of the Second Declension, ablative plural meaning ‘with leaves’ plus the conjunctival suffix *-que* meaning ‘and’, hence linking it with the preceding *ramulis*; i.e. **‘A shrub 2–4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards, with branches erect, with branchlets and leaves’**

*novellis* matching word *novellus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural, meaning ‘new’ and, with no intervening comma, describing the two preceding words; i.e. **‘A shrub 2–4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards, with branches erect, with new branchlets and leaves’**

*pilosis.* matching word *pilosus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative plural, meaning ‘pilose’ and also describing the branchlets and leaves; followed by a period this ends the first sentence; i.e. **‘A shrub 2–4 feet high, erect, simple below, branched upwards, with branches erect, with new branchlets and leaves pilose.’**

*Folia* following a period this starts a new sentence; matching word *folium*, a neuter noun of the Second Declension, nominative plural, meaning **‘Leaves’**

*crassiuscula*, matching word *crassiusculus*, an adjective of Group A, neuter plural agreeing with the subject *Folia*, meaning ‘moderately thick’; i.e. **‘Leaves moderately thick,’**

*acerosa*, matching word *acerosus*, an adjective of Group A, neuter nominative plural agreeing with the subject *Folia*, meaning ‘needle-shaped’; i.e. **‘Leaves moderately thick, needle-shaped,’**

*subtus* matching word *subtus*, an adverb meaning ‘below, beneath’; since there is no comma it is linked to the following words

*biseriatim* matching word *biseriate* giving *biseriatus*, the ending *-im* indicating the adverbial form, meaning ‘biseriately’; with no comma before or after it is linked with *subtus* and *punctata*

*punctata*, matching word *punctatus*, an adjective of Group A, neuter nominative plural agreeing with the subject *Folia*, meaning ‘dotted’ and qualified by the preceding two adverbs; i.e. **‘Leaves moderately thick, needle-shaped, dotted below biseriately,’**

*subrecurva*, *sub* is here a prefix meaning ‘somewhat’, qualifying the main matching word *recurvus*, an adjective of Group A, neuter

nominative plural agreeing with the subject *Folia*, meaning ‘somewhat recurved’; i.e. **‘Leaves moderately thick, needle-shaped, dotted below biserially, somewhat recurved,’**

4–6 *lin.* two numerals joined by an en dash and associated with an abbreviation of *linea*, a noun meaning ‘line’, an early measurement (here understood as plural because of the numerals); with no following comma it is linked to the next word

*longa*, matching word *longus*, an adjective of Group A, neuter nominative plural meaning ‘long’; i.e. **‘Leaves moderately thick, needle-shaped, dotted below biserially, somewhat recurved, 4–6 lines long,’**

*semilineam* here we find *semi-*, a prefix meaning ‘half’, joined with *lineam*, matching word *linea* (here in full), a feminine noun of the First Declension, accusative singular, together meaning ‘half a line’, and linked to the following word

*lata*, matching word *latus*, an adjective of Group A, neuter nominative plural meaning ‘wide’, i.e. ‘half a line wide’; altogether we have **‘Leaves moderately thick, needle-shaped, dotted below biserially, somewhat recurved, 4–6 lines long, half a line wide,’**

*laete* matching word *laete*, an adverb meaning ‘lightly’ or ‘brightly’, linked to the following word

*viridia.* matching word *viridis*, an adjective of Group B, neuter nominative plural, meaning ‘green’; followed by a period, this ends the sentence; **‘Leaves moderately thick, needle-shaped, dotted below biserially, somewhat recurved, 4–6 lines long, half a line wide, light[ly] green.’**

*Flores* following a period, this starts a new sentence; slightly tricky since there are other words starting with *flore-* but the appropriate word is *flos*, a masculine noun of the Third Declension, nominative (being the subject of the sentence) plural, meaning **‘Flowers’**

*parvi*, matching word *parvus*, an adjective of Group A, masculine nominative plural to agree with *Flores*, meaning ‘small’; i.e. **‘Flowers small,’**

*flavi.* matching word *flavus*, an adjective of Group A, masculine nominative plural, meaning ‘yellow’; followed by a period this ends the sentence; i.e. **‘Flowers small, yellow.’**

*Fructus* following a period this starts a new sentence; matching word *fructus*, a masculine noun of the Fourth Declension meaning ‘fruit’; the *-us* ending can be nominative or genitive singular, or

nominative or accusative plural, but since it starts the sentence is likely to be nominative; the following adjectives provide the answer (in English, too, 'fruit' may be singular or plural)

*pisiformes*, matching word *pisinus* leading us to *pisiformis*, an adjective of Group B, nominative or accusative plural, meaning 'pea-shaped'; i.e. **'Fruit pea-shaped,'**

3–6 *coacervati*, two numerals joined by an en dash and associated with the following word which has the prefix *co-* ('together with') and the matching word *acervatus*, an adjective of Group A meaning 'heaped' but here 'grouped', and here the case and number of the previous words is confirmed since this is nominative plural; i.e. **'Fruit pea-shaped, grouped 3–6 together,'**

*fusco-cinerei*, first we find the matching word *fuscus*, an adjective of Group A meaning 'dark', joined with (and qualifying) *cinereus*, another adjective of Group A meaning 'ash grey' to form a compound adjective, nominative plural (from the ending of *cinerei*), together meaning 'dark ash grey'; i.e. **'Fruit pea-shaped, grouped 3–6 together, dark ash grey,'**

*laeves*, matching word *laevis*, an adjective of Group B, nominative (as we now know) plural meaning 'smooth'; i.e. **'Fruit pea-shaped, grouped 3–6 together, dark ash grey, smooth,'**

*hypanthio* matching word *hypanthium*, neuter noun of the Second Declension, ablative singular, meaning 'with the hypanthium'; and with no following comma this is associated with the following words

*ad* matching word *ad*, a preposition taking the accusative case, meaning 'to' or 'at', referring on to the following word

*orificium* matching word *orificium*, a neuter noun of the Second Declension, here singular and accusative since it follows the preposition *ad*, meaning 'orifice'; with no comma it is associated with the following word

*subcontracto*. *sub* is here a prefix meaning 'somewhat', qualifying the main matching word *contractus*, an adjective of Group A, ablative singular and hence describing *hypanthio*, meaning 'contracted'; followed by a period this ends the sentence; i.e. **'with the hypanthium somewhat contracted to or at the orifice.'** This is now added to the previous description of the fruit: **'Fruit pea-shaped, grouped 3–6 together, dark ash grey, smooth, with the hypanthium somewhat contracted to or at the orifice.'**





## Part IV

---

# Vocabulary

When searching for a Latin word in this vocabulary, remember that you have to look under the nominative singular for a noun and under the masculine nominative singular for an adjective (and for its comparative and superlative forms).

To save space, we have kept the length of entries to a minimum and not included definitions. Hence, the Vocabulary should be used in conjunction with glossaries, several of which are listed in the bibliography, and Stearn's *Botanical Latin*.

Where Latin and English words of the same meaning are the same or so similar that they would appear side by side, they are listed once, under either the English or the Latin term. The Latin may be recognised by the part of speech given immediately afterwards, in brackets. Closely related terms (e.g. *aequalis*, *aequans*; alternate, alternately) are grouped in one entry.

Entries are included for many prefixes and suffixes. We indicate whether these are of Greek or Latin origin, since they should be associated with words of the same language when new epithets or terms are coined. We also indicate whether the associated word is a noun or verb (it's rarely an adjective). Note that the declension and gender are not given for prefixes, since these are joined to a following word, but they are for suffixes since these terminate a compound word.

Numbers for nouns refer to the Declension. Letters for adjectives and participles refer to the Group.

The plus sign (+) indicates the case to be used for a following word.

Cross-references '[see p. 00]' are given after all words and closely related words that are given in full in the grammar, e.g. both **frutex** and **suffrutex** are cross-referenced to the table declining **frutex**.

Explanatory terms and notes are set in *italic* and included within square brackets, e.g.

**dark** [*colour*] atratus (part. A); **dark** [*gloomy, shaded*] tenebrosus (adj. A)

**kidney-shaped** reniformis (adj. B) [*flat object*], nephroideus (adj. A) [*solid object*].

*Abbreviations and contractions:* abl. ablative, acc. accusative, act. active, adj. adjective, adv. adverb or adverbial, app. apposition, c. common [gender],

comp. compound, compar. comparative, conj. conjunction, dat. dative, def. definitive, decl. declined dem. demonstrative, determ. determinative, distr. distributive, Eng. English, esp. especially, f. feminine, gen. genitive, ger. gerundive, Gk Greek, ind. indicative, indecl. indeclinable, indef. indefinite, Lat. Latin, lit. literally, m. masculine, n. neuter, nom. nominative, num. number/numerical, ord. ordinal, p. page, part. participle, pass. passive, pers. person, phr. phrase, pl. plural, possess. possessive, pref. prefix, prep. preposition, pres. present, pron. pronoun *or* pronominal, *q.v. quod vide* (which see), rel. relative, sing. singular, suff. suffix, sup. superlative, usu. usually.

## A

**a, ab** (prep. + Ablative) away from, out of, by, from [see p. 00]; also pref. in Lat. comp.

**a-, an-** (pref. in Gk comp.) without, not, less

**abaxial** abaxialis (adj. B); **abaxial side** dorsum (noun n. 2)

**abbreviatus** (adj. A) shortened

**aberrans** (part. B) aberrant

**abhorrens** (part. B) differing from

**abhymenialis** (adj. B) abhymenial, opposite the hymenium

**abiens** (part. B) departing, changing suddenly to, leaving off

**-abilis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with verb as stem) indicates ability

**abnormal** abnormalis, abnormis (both adj. B); anomalus, atypicus, monstruosus, monstrosus (all adj. A); **abnormally** abnormaliter (adv.)

**abode** sedes (noun f. 3), habitatio (noun f. 3)

**abortion** abortio (noun f. 3), abortus (noun m. 4); **aborted**,

**abortive** abortivus (adj. A). *See also* **tabescens**

**about** circa (adv.), circiter (adv.), de (prep. + Ablative), fere (adv.), quasi (adv.); **about** (pref. in Gk comp.) peri-

**above** super (prep. + Accusative, rarely Ablative), supra (prep. + Accusative), insuper (prep. + Ablative, rarely Accusative); (pref. in Gk comp.) hyper-; **from above** desuper (adv.), insuper (adv.), superne (adv.)

**above-ground** supraterraneus (adj. A)

**abruptens** breaking off (part. B)

**abrupt** abruptus (adj. A); **abruptly** abrupte (adv.)

**abscissus** (part. A) cut off, steep

**absconditus** (part. A) hidden

**absence** absentia (noun f. 1); **absent** absens (part. B), carens (part. B)

**absorbing** bibulus (adj. A); **absorbing again** resorptus (part. A)

**absque** (prep. + Ablative) without

**abstriction** abstrictio (noun f. 3)

**abundant** abundus, amplus, largus (all adj. A), abundans (part. B);

**abundantly** abundanter (adv.), copiose (adv.)

**ac** (conj.) and

- acanth-**, **acantho-** (in Gk comp.) spiny, prickly  
**acanthophyllus** (adj. A) acanthophyll  
**acanthophysis** acanthophysis (noun f. 3)  
**acarodomatium** (noun n. 2) acarodomatium  
**acaulescens** (part. B), **acaulis** (adj. B) stemless  
**accedens** (part. B + Dative, or with *ad* + Accusative) approaching, resembling  
**accessorius** (adj. A) accessory  
**accidental** fortuitus (adj. A); **accidentally** fortuito (adv.)  
**acclivis** (adj. B) sloping upwards  
**accompanied** concomitatus (part. A + Ablative), comitatus (adj. A + Ablative)  
**according to** teste; fide; secundum (all prep.)  
**accordingly** ergo (adv.)  
**accrescent** accrescens (part. B), auctus (part. A), increscens (part. B)  
**accretus** (part. A) grown together  
**accumbens** (part. B) accumbent  
**accurate, accuratim** (adv.) accurately; **accuratus** (part. A) careful, exact [*but for persons use diligens*, part. B]  
**-aceae** (suff., adj. A, Nominative f. pl.) added to genitive stem of name of the type genus, or the full name if the genitive cannot be determined, to form the name of a family  
**acer** (adj. B), **acerbus** (adj. A) bitter, sharp [*to taste*]  
**acerosus** (adj. A) needle-shaped  
**acervatus** (part. A) heaped, piled; **acervulatus** (part. A) in small piles; **acervus** (noun m. 2) pile; **acervulus** (noun m. 2) small pile; **acervatim** (adv.) in heaps  
**acetabuliformis** (adj. B) saucer-shaped  
**-aceus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) resembling  
**achenium (achaenium)** (noun n. 2) achene  
**achlamydeus** (adj. A) achlamydeous  
**achromaticus, achromus** (both adj. A) colourless  
**acicularis** (adj. B) acicular, needle-pointed  
**aciculatus** (adj. A) having very fine irregular streaks  
**acid** acidum (noun n. 2); acidus (adj. A)

- acies** (noun f. 5) a sharp edge, angle
- aciformis** (adj. B) needle-like
- acorn** glans (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **acorn cup** cupula (noun f. 1)
- acranthus** (adj. A) with terminal flowers
- acrid** acer (adj. B)
- acrocarpus** (adj. A) with terminal fruit
- acrodromus** (adj. A) acrodrome [*veining*]
- acrogenus** (adj. A) borne *or* growing at apex
- acropetus** (adj. A) acropetal
- acrophyllus** (noun m. 2) adult lamina on high portions of some climbing ferns
- acropoleurogenous** acropoleurogenus (adj. A)
- acroscopicus** (adj. A) facing apex
- across** dia- (pref. in Gk comp.)
- acrostichoid** acrostichoideus (adj. A)
- acrotonic** acrotonicus (adj. A)
- acta** (noun n. 2, pl.) reports, transactions
- actino-** (pref. in Gk comp.) raylike, radiating out
- actinodromous** actinodromus (adj. A)
- actinomorphus** (adj. A) actinomorphic, regular
- active** agilis (adj. B)
- aculeatus** (adj. A) prickly; **aculeus** (noun m. 2) a prickle
- aculum** (Lat. suff., noun n. 2, with verb as stem) indicates means of action
- acumen** (noun n. 3) acumen
- acuminatus** (part. A) acuminate
- acus** (noun f. 4) husk
- acutangularis** (adj. B), **acutangulatus** (adj. A), **acutangulus** (adj. A)  
sharp-angled
- acutus** (adj. A) acute; **acute** (adv.) acutely; **acutatus** (adj. A) forming a sharp angle; **acutiusculus** (adj. A) slightly acute; *also* **acuti-** in Lat. comp.
- ad** (prep. + Accusative) to, at, near to [*place at which*]; **ad huc** (adv.) hitherto
- adamantinus** (adj. A) hard as steel
- adaxialis** (adj. B) adaxial
- added** adjectus (part. A); **added to** auctus (part. A)

- ademptus** (part. A) taken away from
- aden-** (in Gk comp.) gland-
- adest** (verb 3rd pers. sing. ind. act.) it is present
- adhering** adhaerens (part. B + Dative); adligans, alligans (both part. B + Accusative); haerens (part. B + Dative)
- adhibitus** (part. A) used
- adhuc, ad huc** (adv.) hitherto, until now, as yet
- adjectus** (part. A) added
- adjoining** contiguus (adj. A), confinis (adj. B usu. + Dative)
- adligans, alligans** (part. B) clasping, adhering to
- admodum** (adv.) fully, wholly, much, essentially
- admonens** (part. B) suggesting
- adnascens** (part. B) growing upon *or* to
- adnatus** (part. A) adnate
- adnexus, annexus** (part. A) adnexed
- adpressus, appressus** (part. A) appressed
- adscendens** (part. B) ascending
- adpersus, aspersus** (part. A) scattered
- adsunt** (verb. 3rd pers. pl. ind. act.) they are present
- adulescens** (part. B) not yet mature
- adult** adultus (part. A), maturus (adj. A)
- adumbratio** (noun f. 3) outline, sketch
- aduncus** (adj. A) hooked
- advectus** (part. A) carried, brought
- adventitious** adventitius (adj. A)
- adversum** (adv. or prep. + Accusative) opposite to, against; **adversus** (part. A) turned towards
- aecidium** (noun n. 2) aecidium
- aeciospora** (noun f. 1) aeciospore
- aecium** (noun n. 2) aecium
- aeger** (adj. A) diseased
- aegre** (adv.) with difficulty, scarcely; **aegerrime** (sup. adv.) with very great difficulty
- aegrotus** (adj. A) diseased
- aemulans** (part. B), **aemulus** (adj. A) rivalling, emulating

- aeueus** (adj. A) bronze
- aequabilis** (adj. B) uniform, consistent
- aequalis** (adj. B) equal; **aequans** (part. B) equalling; **aequaliter** (adv.) equally, evenly; **aequaliter** (adv.) equally, evenly; **aeque** (adv.) equally; **aequi-** (in comp.) equal, even
- aequator** (noun m. 3) equator; **aequatorius** (adj. A) equatorial
- aequatus** (part. A) even, levelled
- aequidistans** (adj. B) equidistant
- aequilaterus** (adj. A) equal-sided
- aequilongus** (adj. A) of the same length
- aequimagnus** (adj. A) of equal size
- aequus** (adj. A) equal
- aerenchyma** (noun n. 3) aerenchyma
- aerial** aerius (adj. A)
- aerobic** aerobius (adj. A)
- aerophore** aerophorum (noun n. 2)
- aerugineus, aeruginosus** (both adj. A) verdigris
- aestas** (noun f. 3) summer; **aestivalis** (adj. B), **aestivus** (adj. A) pertaining to summer
- aestivation** aestivatio, praefloratio (both noun f. 3)
- aestualis** (adj. B) tidal
- aestuans** (part. B) moving to and fro, oscillating
- aestuarium** (noun n. 2) estuary
- aestus** (noun m. 4) tide
- aetas** (noun f. 3) age
- aethalium** (noun n. 2) aethalium
- aeus** (Gk suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates sense of belonging
- affectus** (part. A) affected (by)
- affinis** (adj. B) allied to; **affinitas** (noun f. 3) affinity, relationship
- affixus** (part. A) attached to, fastened to, fixed to
- after** post (adv. or prep.), postea (adv.); **immediately after** subinde (adv.)
- afternoon, opening in the** postmeridianus (adj. A)
- again** denuo, iterum (both adv.); re- (pref. in Lat. comp.); ana- (pref. in Gk comp.); **again and again** etiam atque etiam, iterum atque iterum

**against** adversum (adv. or prep. + Accusative), contra (adv. or prep. + Accusative); also re- (pref. in Lat. comp.); anti-, cat-, cata- (pref. in Gk comp.)

**agamicus, agamus** (both adj. A) asexual

**agar** (noun m. 2, Genitive sing. *agari*) agar

**age** aetas (noun f. 3); **aged** vetus (adj. B, Genitive veteris); **old age** vetustas (noun f. 3); **of great age** longaevus (adj. A); **of the same age** coetaneus (adj. A)

**ager** (noun m. 2) field, district

**agger** (noun m. 3) mound, earth rampart *or* bank

**agglomeratus** (part. A) collected into a head

**agglutinatus, adglutinatus** (part. A) glued to, adhering as if glued

**aggregatus** (part. A) clustered, grouped

**agilis** (adj. B) active, agile

**-ago** (Lat. suff., noun f. 3, with noun as stem) indicates resemblance or connection

**agrarius** (adj. A) relating to the land

**agreeable** gratus (adj. A)

**agreeing** congruens (part. B), conveniens (part. B), consentaneus (adj. A); all + Dative or with *cum* + Ablative

**agrestis** (adj. B) relating to fields

**agricola** (noun c. 1) field-dweller [see p. 00]

**agrost-** (in Gk comp.) grass-; **agrostologia** (noun f. 1) the study of grasses

**air chamber** cavernula (noun f. 1) aeria (adj. A)

**air pore** pneumathodium (noun n. 2); *or* porus (noun m. 2) aerifer (adj. B)

**akinetum** (noun n. 2) akinete, non-motile spore

**ala** (noun f. 1) wing

**alabastrum** (noun n. 2) flower bud

**alar cell** cellula (noun f. 1) alaris (adj. B)

**alaris** (adj. B) axillary

**alatus** (adj. A) winged

**albens** (part. B) whitened; **albescens** (part. B) becoming white; **albidus** (adj. A) whitish; **albus** (adj. A) white (esp. dull)

**albumen** (noun n. 3) albumen; **albuminatus** (adj. A) having albumen; **albuminosus** (adj. A) having copious albumen



**alcalinus** (adj. A) alkaline

**alcohol** alcohol (noun n. 3); **alcoholic** or **producing alcohol** alcoholicus (adj. A)

**-ales** (suff., adj. B, Nominative f. pl.) added to stem of name of the type family to form name of an order

**aletus** (adj. A) alete, *of a spore* formed alone

**aleurioconidium** (noun n. 2) aleurioconidium

**aleuriospora** (noun f. 2) aleuriospore

**alga** (noun f. 1) alga; **pertaining to an alga** algaceus (adj. A), algensis (adj. B);  
**plant body of an alga** phycoma (noun n. 3); **thread of alga** filum  
 (noun n. 2); **relating to algae** (in Gk comp.) phyco-

**algidus** (adj. A) cold

**alibi** (adv.) elsewhere

**alicubi** (adv.) anywhere

**alicunde** (adv.) from elsewhere

**alienus** (adj. A) alien, foreign, not related

**aliformis** (adj. B) wing-shaped

**alike** similaris, conformis (both adj. B)

**alio modo** (adv. phrase) differently

**aliquam** (adv.) somehow; **aliquamdiu** (adv.), **aliquantisper** (adv.) for a while; **aliquando** (adv.) at some time, sometimes; **aliquanto** (adv.) somewhat, rather; **aliquantum** (adv.) somewhat, considerably

**aliqui, aliquae, aliquod** (adj., decl. like *qui*, see p. 00) some; **aliquot** (adv.) somewhat (with numbers); **aliquot** (indecl. number) some, several

**aliquis, aliqua, aliquod** (indef. pron.) someone, something [see p. 00]

**aliquoties** (adv.) several times

**-alis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with noun as stem) usu. in Lat. comp., meaning *belonging to, similar to*

**aliter** (adv.) otherwise, differently

**alius, alia, aliud** (adj. A) another, other [*of several*] [see p. 00]; **alius ... alius ...** the one ... the other ...

**alive** vivens (part. B), vivus (adj. A)

**alkaline** alcalinus (adj. A)

**all** omnis (adj. B), totus (adj. A)

**allantoideus** (adj. A) sausage-shaped

**allatus** (part. A) brought

- alliaceus** (adj. A) like onion *or* garlic
- allied to** affinis (adj. B); **closely allied** fraternus (adj. A)
- alligans** *see* **adligans**
- allo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) other, another
- allochrous** (adj. A) changing from one colour to another
- allopatric** allopatricus (adj. A)
- alluring** illecebrosus (adj. A)
- alluvio** (noun f. 3) alluvial land
- almost** fere, paene, propemodo, quasi (all adv.); sub- (pref.)
- alone** solus (adj. A); solum (adv.)
- along** secus (prep. + Accusative); **along with** cum (prep. + Ablative)
- alpha-spore** alphaspora (noun f. 1)
- alpinus** (adj. A) alpine
- also** etiam (adv.)
- alte** (adv.) high up, deeply
- alter** (adj. A) other [*of two*], second; *also* **alter**, **altera**, **alterum** (pron.) the other [see p. 00]
- altered** mutatus, transmutatus (both part. A)
- alternate** alternus (adj. A); **alternately** alternatim (adv.), alterne (adv.);
- alternating** alternans (part. B); **alternation** alternatio (noun f. 3);
- alternative** alternativus (adj. A)
- although** etsi (conj.), quamquam (conj.)
- altitudo** (noun f. 3) altitude, depth
- altogether** omnino (adv.)
- altum** (noun n. 2) a height, depth; **altus** (adj. A) high, tall
- alutaceus** (adj. A) pale brown, leather-coloured
- alveiformis** (adj. B) trough-shaped
- alveola** (noun f. 1) a cavity, alveoli, pore; **alveolaris** (adj. B), **alveolatus** (adj. A) pitted, alveolate, honeycombed; **alveolus** (noun m. 2) a small cavity
- always** semper (adv.); **almost always** persaepe (adv.)
- amabilis** (adj. B) pleasing
- amanitoideus** (adj. A) *Amanita*-like
- amans** (part. B) loving; **amat** (verb, *amo*, to love) it loves, it likes
- amarus** (adj. A) bitter

**amb-, ambi-** (pref.) around  
**amber-coloured** *sucinacius* (adj. A); *succineus* (adj. A)  
**ambiens** (part. B) surrounding  
**ambiguus** (adj. A) doubtful, uncertain  
**ambitus** (noun m. 4) circumference, outline  
**ambly-** (in Gk comp.) blunt, obtuse  
**ambo** (num. adj.) both together  
**ambustus** (part. B) burned  
**amentaceus** (adj. A) like a catkin; **amentum** (noun n. 2) a catkin  
**amerospora** (noun f. 1) amerospore  
**amethysteus** (adj. A), **amethystinus** (adj. A) amethyst, violet  
**ammo-** (in Gk comp.) sand-  
**amnis** (noun m. 3) a torrent  
**amoeba** (noun f. 1) amoeba; **amoeboid** *amoeboideus* (adj. A)  
**amoene** (adv.) beautifully; **amoenus** (adj. A) pleasing, beautiful  
**among** inter (prep. + Accusative); met-, meta- (pref. in Gk comp.)  
**amorphus** (adj. A) shapeless, of indefinite shape  
**amotus** (part. A) removed, withdrawn  
**amphi-, ampho-** (pref. in Gk comp.) around, double, on both sides  
**amphicarpicus** (adj. A) amphicarpic  
**amphigastrium** (noun n. 2) amphigastrium  
**amphigenous** *amphigenus* (adj. A)  
**amphispore** *amhispora* (noun f. 1)  
**amphistomaticus** (adj. A) amphistomatic  
**amphithecium** (noun n. 2) amphithecium  
**amphitropus** (adj. A) amphitropous  
**ample** *amplus* (adj. A); **amplly** *ample*, *abunde* (both adv.)  
**amplectens** (part. B) clasping, embracing  
**amplexicaulis** (adj. B) stem-clasping, amplexicaul  
**amplexifolius** (adj. A) with leaves clasping stem  
**amplexus** (adj. A) clasping, encircling  
**ampliatu**s, **amplificatus** (both part. A) enlarged, increased, magnified  
**amplificatio** (noun f. 3) enlargement  
**amplus** (adj. A) ample, abundant, great

- ampulla** (noun f. 1) flask-like bladder; **ampullaceus** (adj. A), **ampullaris** (adj. B), **ampulliformis** (adj. B) flask-shaped
- amygdalinus** (adj. A) almond-like
- amyloideus** (adj. A) starch-like, amyloid, staining blue, purple or reddish in iodine
- amylum** (noun n. 2) starch; **amylaceus** (adj. A) starchy; **amyloideus** (adj. A) starch-like
- an** (conj.) or, perhaps [*indicates doubt*]
- an-** (pref. in Gk comp. before a vowel) without, lacking
- ana-** (pref. in Gk comp.) upwards, back, again
- anadromus** (adj. A) anadromous
- analysis** analysis (noun f. 3), explicatio (noun f. 3)
- anamorphus** (adj. A) asexual stage characterised by the production of conidia
- anandrus** (adj. A) lacking stamens
- anantherus** (adj. A) antherless
- anastomosans** (part. B) anastomosing; **anastomosis** (noun f. 3) a network of joined veins or hyphae
- anatomia** (noun f. 1) anatomy
- anatropus** (adj. A) anatropous
- anceps** (adj. B), **ancipitius** (adj. A) two-edged
- ancistrus** (adj. A) barbed with small hooks
- and** et, necnon, neque non (all conj.); *also* ac and atque before consonants; *also* shown by adding the suff.-que to a noun when closely related to previous word
- andro-, -andrus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) male
- androecium** (noun n. 2) androecium
- androgynus** (adj. A) androgynous
- androphorum** (noun n. 2) androphore
- androspora** (noun f. 1) androspore; **androsporangium** (noun n. 2) androsporangium
- anemo-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to the wind; but note **anemonoides**, like *Anemone*
- aneus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates resemblance or source material
- anfractuosus** (adj. A) sinuous, gently zigzag
- anfractus** (part. A) winding, bending, crooked

- angle** angulus (noun m. 2); [*sharp*] acies (noun f. 5); **angled** angulatus (part. A), angularis (adj. B); **-angled** (in Lat. comp.) -angulus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -gonus (adj. A); **sharp-angled** acutangularis (adj. B), acutangulus (adj. A), acutatus (adj. A); **strongly angled** angulosus (adj. A)
- anguilliformis** (adj. B) worm- or eel-like
- angularis** (adj. B), **angulatus** (adj. A) angled; *see* **angle**
- angulus** (noun m. 2) angle *q.v.*
- angustatus** (part. A) narrowed [see p. 00]; **angustus** (adj. A) narrow; **anguste** (adv.) narrowly; **angusti-** (in Lat. comp.) narrow
- animal** animal (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **animalcule** animalculum (noun n. 2)
- anisatus** (adj. A) scented or flavoured like aniseed; **anisodorus** (adj. A) scented like aniseed
- aniso-** (pref. in Gk comp.) unequal, uneven
- anisogameta** (noun f. 1) a type of motile gamete
- anisomorphus** (adj. A) anisomorphic
- anisophyllus** (adj. A) [*of mosses and ferns*] anisophyllous
- anisotomus** (adj. A) branching unequally with main axis and smaller side branches
- anisovalvatus** (adj. A) when both valves of sporangium are unequal in size
- annelophorum** (noun n. 2) annellophore
- annexus** (part. A) adnexed
- anniculus** (adj. A) a year old
- annotinus** (adj. A) of *or* belonging to last year
- annual** annuus (adj. A); **annually** quotannis (adv.)
- annularis** (adj. B) ring-shaped, annular; **annulatum** (adv.) arranged in a ring; **annulatus** (adj. A) marked with rings, bordered by raised rings or bands; **annuliformis** (adj. B) ring-shaped; **annulus** (noun m. 2) an annulus *or* ring
- annulatio** (noun f. 3) annulation, formed like *or* in a ring, often pigmented
- annulus** annulus (noun m. 2), gyroma (noun n. 3), gyrus (noun m. 2)
- annus** (noun m. 2) a year; **annuus** (adj. A) annual
- anomalus** (adj. A) abnormal
- another, other** alius (adj. A); allo- (pref. in Gk comp.)
- ant** formica (noun f. 1); **pertaining to ants** formicarius (adj. A); **full of ants** formicosus (adj. A); **pertaining to ants** (in Gk comp.) myrme-, myrmec-, myrmeco-; **ant plant** planta formicosa (noun f. 1 + adj.)

- ant-**, **anti-** (pref. in Gk comp.) against, opposite to
- antapex** (noun f. 3) antapex, *in diatoms* posteriormost part of cell body excl. spines etc.
- ante** (prep. + Accusative; *also* pref. in Lat. comp.) before, in front of
- antea** (adv.) previously, before, formerly
- antecedens** (part. B) preceding, *in space* + Accusative, *in time* + Dative
- anterior** anticus (adj. A)
- anteris** (noun f. 3) buttress
- anthela** (noun f. 1) anthela
- anther** anthera (noun f. 1); **anther-bearing** antherifer (adj. A); **locule of anther** sacculus (noun m. 2)
- antheridium** androecium (noun n. 2)
- antheridiophore** antheridiophorum (noun n. 2)
- antheridium** antheridium (noun n. 2)
- antherifer** (adj. A) anther-bearing
- antherless** anantherus (adj. A)
- antherozoid** antherozoides (noun m. 2)
- anthesis** (noun f. 3) anthesis, time of flowering [see p. 00]
- anthocarpium** (noun n. 2) anthocarp
- anthodium** (noun n. 2) head [*in Asteraceae*]
- anthoecium** anthoecium (noun n. 2)
- anthophorum** (noun n. 2) anthophore
- anthracinus** (adj. A) coal black
- anti-** (pref. in Gk comp.) against, opposite to
- antice** (adv.) in front; **anticus** (adj. A) anterior, at the front, turned away from the axis
- anticlinalis** (adj. B) anticlinal
- anti-clockwise** antihelice (adv.)
- anticus** (adj. A) anterior
- antidromus** (adj. A) antidromous
- antihelice** (adv.) anti-clockwise, dextrorse
- antiligula** (noun f. 1) antiligule
- antipetalus** (adj. A) antipetalous
- antisepalus** (adj. A) antisepalous
- antitropus** (adj. A) antitropical

- antrorsus** (adj. A) antrorse
- anularis, anulus** *see annularis, annulus*
- anus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) belonging to, esp. to form an epithet from a place or personal name
- anvil-shaped** *incudiformis* (adj. B)
- any** ullus (adj. A); **anywhere** alicubi, ubicumque (both adv.); **at any time** aliquando (adv.)
- ap-, apo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) from, away, downwards
- apart** seorsum (adv. + Ablative); *distans* (part. B)
- aperiens** (part. B) opening
- apertus** (adj. A) open; **aperturatus** (adj. A) having pores; **apertura** (noun f. 1) an opening [*hole*]; **apertio** (noun f. 3) opening [*unfolding, e.g. of a flower*]
- apetalus** (adj. A) without petals
- apex** apex (noun m. 3); **borne at apex** acrogenus (adj. A); **facing apex** *acroscopicus* (adj. A)
- apex stillans** (noun m. 3 + part. B) drip tip
- aphanoplasmodium** (noun n. 2) aphanoplasmodium
- aphyllus** (adj. A) without leaves
- apical** *apicalis* (adj. B)
- apicifixus** (adj. A) attached by the apex; **apiculatus** (adj. A) apiculate, with a short point; **apiculum** (noun n. 2) apiculum
- aplanospora** (noun f. 1) aplanospore
- apo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) from, away from, out of, free
- apoblastus** (noun m. 2) apoblast [*a vigorous shoot after pruning*]
- apocarpus** (adj. A) apocarpous
- apodus** (adj. A) sessile
- apogamus** (adj. A) apogamous
- apomictus** (adj. A) apomictic
- apophysis** (noun f. 3) apophysis; **apophysate** *apophysatus* (adj. A)
- apothecium** apothecium (noun n. 2); **having apothecia** *lecideinus* (adj. A)
- apotropus** (adj. A) apotropous
- apparatus** (noun m. 4) apparatus
- apparens** (part. B) appearing
- apparently** *apparenter* (adv.), *ut videtur* [*lit., as it appears*]

- appearance, general** *facies* (noun f. 5), *aspectus* (noun m. 4)
- appearing** *apparens, sistens* (both part. B)
- appendiculatus** (adj. A) *appendiculate*
- appendix** (noun f. 3) *appendix, appendage*
- applanatus** (adj. A) *flattened, horizontally extended*
- apple-green** *pomaceo-viridis* (adj. B)
- applicitus** (part. A) *lying upon or close to*
- appositus** (part. A) *placed against, side by side with*
- appressus, adpressus** (part. A) *appressed*
- apprime** (adv.) *especially*
- approaching** *accedens* (part. B + Dative, *or* with *ad* + Accusative)
- approbavit** (verb, 3rd pers. sing. perf.) *he or she has approved or confirmed*  
*[name on herbarium sheet]*
- appropriate** *aptus* (part. A)
- approved** *probatus* (part. A)
- approximately** *circa, circum, quasi* (all adv.)
- approximatus** (part. A) *near each other, more or less*
- apricot-coloured** *armeniacus* (adj. A)
- apricum** (noun n. 2) *an open, sunny place*; **apricus** (adj. A) *uncovered, growing in the sun*
- aptatus, aptus** (both part. A) *suitable, fit for, appropriate*
- apud** (prep. + Accusative) *with, near, in the works of*
- aqua** (noun f. 1) *water*; **aquae** (noun f. 1, pl.) *medicinal springs*; **aquaticus** (adj. A), **aquatilis** (adj. B) *aquatic, growing in water*; **aqueus** (adj. A) *clear as water*; **aquosum** (noun n. 2) *a watery place*; **aquosus** (adj. A) *watery*
- arachnoideus, araneosus** (both adj. A) *cobwebby*
- arbor** (noun f. 3) *tree*; **arborescens** (part. B) *becoming tree-like*; **arboretum** (noun n. 2) *arboretum*; **arbores** (adj. A) *tree-like*; **arboricola** (adj. A) *living in a tree*; **arbuscula** (noun f. 1) *a small tree*; **arbustum** (noun n. 2) *a shrub*
- arc** *arcus* (noun m. 4)
- arch** *fornix* (noun m. 3); **arched** *arcuatus* (adj. A); **arched inwards** *recavus* (adj. A); **having an arch-like structure** *fornicatus* (adj. A); **archedly** *arcuatim* (adv.)



- arche-** (pref. in Gk comp.) primitive, original  
**archegoniophore** archegoniophorum (noun n. 2)  
**archegonium** archegonium (noun n. 2)  
**archi-** (pref. in Gk comp.) chief  
**archicarp** archicarpus (noun m. 2)  
**archipelago** archipelagus (noun n. 2)  
**arcte, arte** (adv.) closely, tightly  
**arctic** arcticus (adj. A)  
**arctus, artus** (adj. A) close, confined, tight  
**arcuatus** (part. A) curved like a bow, arched; **arcuatim** (adv.) archedly; **arcus**  
 (noun m. 4) curve, arc  
**ardella** (noun f. 1) ardella  
**ardesiacus** (adj. A) slate-coloured  
**area** area (noun f. 1)  
**arefactus** (part. A) dried  
**arena** (noun f. 1) sand, sandy place; **arenaceus** (adj. A) sandy; **arenarius**  
 (adj. A) growing in sand, sandy; **arenosum** (noun n. 2) sandy place;  
**arenosus** (adj. A) very sandy  
**arenosaxum** (noun n. 2) sandstone  
**areola** (noun f. 1) areole; **areolatus** (adj. A) areolate; **areolatio**  
 (noun f. 3) areolation  
**arescens** (part. B) becoming dry  
**argenteus** (adj. A) silvery  
**argilla** (noun f. 1) clay; **argillaceus** (adj. A) clayey, growing in clay; **argillosus**  
 (adj. A) full of clay  
**argute** (adv.) sharply; **argutus** (adj. A) sharp, sharp-toothed  
**argyr-** (in Gk comp.) silver-  
**aridus** (adj. A) dry [*habitat*]  
**aril** arillus (noun m. 2); **arillate** arillatus (adj. A)  
**arillode** arillodium (noun n. 2)  
**-aris** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with noun as stem) belonging to, resembling, used esp.  
 with nouns ending in *l* or *r*  
**arisen from** ortus, exortus (both part. A); **arising** oriens, exoriens, nascens,  
 surgens (all part. B); **arising from** exoriens (part. B), enascens (part. B)  
**arista** (noun f. 1) arista, awn; **aristatus** (adj. A) aristate, awned

- arius** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun or numeral as stem) indicates possession or connection
- arm** brachium (noun n. 2); **arm-length** brachialis (adj. B)
- armatus** (part. A) equipped, armed
- armeniacus** (adj. A) apricot-coloured
- armillarioideus** (adj. A) *Armillaria*-like
- armoured** thecatus (adj. A)
- aromatic** aromaticus (adj. A)
- around** circa, circum (both adv., *or* prep. + Accusative); (pref. in Lat. comp.) amb-, ambi-, circum-; (pref. in Gk comp.) amphi-, peri-
- arranged** dispositus, ordinatus, digestus (all part. A)
- arrangement** collocatio, dispositio (both noun f. 3); **arrangement of leaves** phyllotaxis (noun f. 3) *or* dispositio (noun f. 3) foliorum (noun n. 2 Genitive pl., remains unchanged if *dispositio* is declined)
- arrectus** (adj. A) erect, directed upwards at angle of less than 30°
- arrhizus** (adj. A) without roots
- arrow-headed** sagittatus (adj. A)
- arte** (adv.) closely, tightly
- arthro-** (in Gk comp.) jointed
- arthroconidium** (noun n. 2) arthroconidium
- arthrodontus** (adj. A) arthrodontous
- arthrospore** arthrospora (noun f. 1)
- articulatus** (part. A) articulate, jointed; **articulus** (noun m. 2) joint *or* segment between nodes
- artificial** artifactus (adj. A), artificialis (adj. B), artificiosus (adj. A), factitius (adj. A)
- arvalis** (adj. B), **arvensis** (adj. B) pertaining to fields *or* cultivated land; **arvum** (noun n. 2) cultivated land
- as** [*in like manner*] atque (conj.); **as** [*in comparison of size*] quam (adv.); **as far as** tenus (prep. + Ablative); **as in** ut (conj. + *in* + Dative); **as if** velut (adv.); **as yet** adhuc (adv.); **just as** pro (prep. + Ablative)
- ascending** adscendens, ascendens (part. B)
- ascens** (Lat. suff., part. B, with noun or adj. as stem) indicates a process of becoming, *or* not fully reached
- ascidiatus** (adj. A) ascidiate

- ascidium** (noun n. 2) pitcher
- ascocarp** ascocarpus (noun m. 2)
- ascogenus** (adj. A) ascogenous
- ascogonium** (noun n. 2) ascogonium
- ascohymenialis** (adj. B) having asci and paraphyses arranged as a hymenium
- ascolocularis** (adj. B) having asci in cavities
- ascoma** (noun n. 3) ascoma
- ascospore** ascospora (noun f. 1)
- ascus** ascus (noun m. 2)
- ascyphous** ascyphosus (adj. A)
- asepalus** (adj. A) asepalous
- aseptatus** (adj. A) without septa
- asexual** agamicus, agamus (both adj. A), asexualis (adj. B)
- aspectabilis** (adj. B) visible, worthy of notice
- aspectus** (noun m. 4) general appearance
- asper** (adj. A) rough to touch, uneven, harsh
- asperatus** (adj. A) rough with points *or* short stiff hairs; **asperitas** (noun f. 3) roughness
- aspergilliformis** (adj. B) brush-shaped
- aspersus, adpersus** (both part. A) scattered
- asperulus** (adj. A) slightly rough
- aspiciens** (part. B) facing forward
- aspicilioideus** (adj. A) aspicilioid
- asservatus** (part. A) preserved, kept
- assimilating** assumens, assimilans (both part. B)
- associated** consociatus (part. A), concomitatus (adj. A);  
**association** consortio (noun f. 3), consortium (noun n. 2)
- assumens** (part. B) taking up, assimilating
- assurgens** (part. B) rising upwards
- aster** (noun m. 3) star, starwort
- aster** (noun m. 2), **-astra** (noun f. 1), **-astrum** (noun n. 2) (all Lat. suff., with noun as stem) denoting some likeness *or* inferiority, *also* a diminutive sense
- asterinus** (adj. A) aster-violet

- astero-, astro-** (in Gk comp.) stellate, starry
- astictus** (adj. A) without spots
- astomous** astomus (adj. A)
- astrictus** (part. A) tight, drawn together
- astylus** (adj. A) without a style
- asymmetricus** (adj. A) asymmetric, irregular; **asymmetrice** (adv.) asymmetrically
- at** (conj.) but, yet
- at** [*at which, place where*] ad (prep. + Accusative); in (prep. + Ablative)
- at last** demum, denique (both adv.)
- at least** saltem, quidem (both adv.)
- at length** demum, denique (both adv.)
- at present** nunc (adv.)
- ater** (adj. A) black [*esp. dull*]
- athecatus** (adj. A) unarmoured
- aticus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates place of growth
- atilis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with noun as stem) indicates place of growth
- atomatus** (adj. A) sprinkled with small particles
- atque** (conj.) and
- atrans** (adj. B) darkening
- atratus** (part. A) blackened, dark
- atri-, atro-** (in Lat. comp.) dark-
- atrovirens** (adj. B) deep green
- attached to** affixus (part. A)
- attacking** invadens (part. B); **attacked** invasus (part. A)
- attaining** attingens (part. B)
- attamen** (adv.) nevertheless
- attenuate** attenuatus (part. A)
- attingens** (part. B) attaining, reaching
- attractive** illecebrosus (adj. A)
- atus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates possession or likeness;  
also (Lat. suff., part. A, with noun) denotes something completed
- atypicus** (adj. A) atypical, abnormal
- auctor** (noun m. or f. 3) author, writer [see p. 00]

**auctus** (part. A) enlarged, added to, accrescent, magnified  
**augmen** (noun n. 3), **augmentum** (noun n. 2) growth, increase  
**aulac-** (in Gk comp.) furrow  
**aurantiacus** (adj. A) orange  
**auratus** (adj. A) flecked with gold  
**aureus** (adj. A) golden; **aureolinus** (adj. A) aureolin yellow; **aurei-**, **aureo-**,  
**auri-** (in Lat. comp.) golden  
**auricle** auricula (noun f. 1); **auriculate** auriculatus, auritus (both adj. A)  
**auriformis** (adj. A) ear-shaped  
**aurum** (noun n. 2) gold  
**australis** (adj. B) southern  
**aut** (conj.) or  
**aut-**, **auto-** (pref. in Gk comp.) self  
**autem** (conj.) but, however  
**authentic** authenticus, genuinus, verus (all adj. A)  
**author** auctor (noun m. or f. 3) [see p. 00]  
**autoicus** (adj. A) autoecious, autoicous  
**autophragm** autophragma (noun n. 3)  
**autumn** autumnus (noun m. 2); **autumnal** autumnnalis (adj. B)  
**auxiliary** auxiliaris (adj. B)  
**auxospore** auxospora (noun f. 1)  
**available** suppetens (part. B)  
**avellaneus** (adj. A) hazel [*colour*], nut brown  
**avenis** (adj. B), **avenius** (adj. A) veinless, without visible veins  
**avenue** [*of trees*] ambulacrum (noun n. 2)  
**aversus** (part. A) turned backward, on the back  
**away from** a, ab (prep. + Ablative; also pref.); (pref. in Lat. comp.) di-, dis-,  
(pref. in Gk comp.) ap-, apo-  
**awl-shaped** subulatus (adj. A), lesiniformis (adj. B)  
**awn** arista (noun f. 1); **awned** aristatus (adj. A); **awnless** muticus (adj. A)  
**axe-shaped** dolabriformis (adj. B)  
**axil** axilla (noun f. 1); **axillary** axillaris (adj. B), alaris (adj. B); **placed above**  
**an axil** superaxillaris, supra-axillaris (both adj. B)  
**axis** axis (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **axialis** (adj. B) axial, along the axis  
**azonatus**, **azonus** (both adj. A) without zones

**azureus** (adj. A) azure, deep blue  
**azygospore** azygospora (noun f. 1)

## B

**bacca** berry (noun f. 1); **baccans** becoming juicy and berry-like (part. B)  
**baccarium** (noun n. 2) aggregate fruit made of attached drupelets  
**baccatus** berry-like, pulpy (adj. A)  
**baccifer** bearing berries (adj. A); **bacciformis** shaped like a berry (adj. B)  
**bacillaris, bacilliformis, baculiformis** (all adj. B) rod-shaped, rod-like  
**back** dorsum (noun n. 2); **turned backward, on the back** aversus (part. A);  
**backwards** recessim, retro (both adv.); **curved or bent backwards**  
reduncus (adj. A); **back-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) re-, retro-, (pref. in Gk  
comp.) noto-, opistho-; **backwards and forwards** ultro citroque, ultro  
et citro (adv.)  
**bacterium** (noun n. 2) bacterium  
**bactrosporous** bactrosporus (adj. A)  
**baculatus** (adj. A) baculate [*of a spore*]  
**bad** malus (adj. A), dys- (pref. in Gk comp.); **very bad** pessimus (adj. A);  
**badly** male (adv.) [see p. 00]  
**badius** (adj. A) bay, red-brown, dull brown, chocolate brown  
**bald** calvus (adj. A); **becoming bald** calvenscens (part. B); **made bald**  
calvatus (adj. A), calvifactus (part. A)  
**ballistoconidium** (noun n. 2) forcibly discharged conidium  
**ballistospore** (noun f. 1) ballistospore  
**balsameus** (adj. A) balsamic, with resinous smell  
**balteiformis** (adj. B) belt-shaped  
**band** taenia (noun f. 1), (in Gk comp.) -desma (noun f. 3);  
**banded** fasciatus (adj. A); **band-shaped** vittiformis (adj. B), taeniatus  
(adj. A), fasciarius (adj. A); **band-like** (in Gk comp.) taeni-, taenio-  
**bank** [*of earth*] agger (noun m. 3), crepido (noun f. 3)  
**bank** [*of river*] ripa (noun f. 1); **pertaining to banks** riparius (adj. A)  
**banner-petal** vexillum (noun n. 2)  
**bar** [*cross beam*] transtrum (noun n. 2)

- barb** hamus (noun m. 2), uncus (noun m. 2), hamulus (noun m. 2)
- barba** (noun f. 1) beard; **barbatus** (adj. A) bearded; **barbellatus** (adj. A) with short, stiff hairs
- barbed, with small hooks** ancistrus (adj. A), hamatus (adj. A), uncinatus (adj. A), glochideus (adj. A)
- bare** nudus (adj. A)
- barely** vix (adv.)
- bark** cortex (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **with bark peeling off** decorticans (part. B); **with bark peeled off** decorticatus (part. A); **without bark** eorticatus (adj. A); **inner bark** liber (noun m. 2)
- barrel** dolium (noun n. 2); **barrel-shaped** cupiformis, doliiformis, orculiformis (all adj. B); **like a small barrel** cupelliformis (adj. B)
- barren** sterilis (adj. B)
- bary-** (in Gk comp.) heavy
- basal** basalis, basilaris (both adj. B)
- basally** basaliter (adv.)
- base** basis (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **attached at base** basifixus (adj. A)
- basic** basicus (adj. A)
- basidioma** (noun n. 3) basidioma
- basidiospore** basidiospora (noun f. 1); **basidiosporous** basidiosporus (adj. A)
- basidium** basidium (noun n. 2)
- basifixus** (adj. A) attached at base
- basilaris** (adj. B) basal
- basin** pelvis (noun f. 3)
- basin-shaped** crateriformis, lebetiformis, pelviformis (all adj. B)
- basipetalous** basipetalus (adj. A)
- basiramifer** (adj. A) branches borne from base
- basis** (noun f. 3) base [see p. 00]
- baiscopicus** (adj. A) directed towards base
- bathyphyllum** (noun n. 2) basal lamina in some high-climbing ferns
- beach** litus, littus (both noun n. 3) [see p. 00]
- beak** rostrum (noun n. 2) [see p. 00]; **beaked** rostratus (adj. A); **slightly beaked** rostellatus (adj. A); **having a beak** (in Gk comp.) rhynch-, rhyncho-, (in Lat. comp.) rostri-, -rostrus (adj. A)

- bean-shaped** fabiformis, phaseoliformis (both adj. B)
- beard** barba (noun f. 1), pogon (noun m. 3); **bearded** barbatus (adj. A);  
**beardless** imberbis (adj. B)
- bearing** ferens (part. B + Accusative), gerens (part. B + Accusative);  
 praeditus (part. A. + Ablative); instructus (part. A + Ablative)
- beautiful** amoenus, concinnus, formosus, pulcher, venustus (all adj. A);  
 (in Gk comp.) calli-, calo-
- beautifully** amoene (adv.), pulchre (adv.)
- because of** ob (prep. + Accusative), propter (prep. + Accusative)
- becoming** (in Lat. comp.) -ascens, -escens (both part. B)
- bed** lectus (noun m. 2)
- beetroot-coloured** betinus (adj. A)
- before** [*in place*] ante (prep. + Accusative); [*in time*] antea (adv.), antequam  
 (conj.); (pref. in Lat. comp.) prae-, (pref. in Gk comp.) pro-, proso-,  
 prosth-
- beginning** initium (noun n. 2), nascens (part. B)
- behind** post (prep. + Accusative), opistho- (pref. in Gk comp.)
- bell-** campani- (in Lat. comp.), codon- (in Gk comp.)
- bell-shaped** campanulatus (adj. A), campaniformis (adj. B)
- belonging** pertinens (part. B)
- below** inferne (adv.), infernus (adj. A), inferus (adj. A), infra (adv. and  
 prep. + Accusative), sub (prep. + Ablative), subter (prep. + Ablative);  
 (pref. in Gk comp.) cat-, cata-, cato-, hyp-, hypo-
- below-ground** hypogaeus, subterraneus (both adj. A)
- belt-shaped** balteiformis (adj. B)
- bend** flexus (noun m. 4); **bent** flexus (part. A); **bent downwards or  
 forwards** declinatus (part. A), [*from the horizontal*] inclinatus (part. A);  
**bent inwards** inflexus, introflexus, uncatus (all adj. A); **sharply  
 bent** infractus (part. A); **bent upon itself** intortus (part. A);  
 (in Gk comp.) campo-, campso-, camppto-, campylo-
- bending** anfractus (part. A)
- bene** (adv.) well [see p. 00]
- beneath** sub (prep. + Accusative or Ablative), subter (prep. + Ablative)
- benthic** (adj. A) benthic
- berry** bacca (noun f. 1); **berried** baccatus (adj. A); **berry-bearing** baccifer  
 (adj. B); **becoming berry-like** baccans (adj. B)



- berry-shaped** bacciformis (adj. B)
- beside** juxta (adv. or prep. + Accusative), para- (pref. in Gk comp.)
- besides** extra (prep. + Accusative)
- betinus** (adj. A) beetroot-coloured
- better** melior (adj. compar.), melius (adv.)
- between** inter (prep. + Accusative); **placed between** interjectus, interpositus (both part. A); (pref. in Lat. comp.) di-, dis-
- beyond** extra (prep. + Accusative), ultra (adv.), ulterius (adv.); (pref. in Gk comp.) hyper-
- bi-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) two-
- biatorinus** (adj. A) biatorine, having lecideine-type apothecia
- bibulus** (adj. A) absorbing moisture
- biconjugatus** (adj. A) twice-conjugate
- bicuspidatus** (adj. A) bicuspid
- biennial** biennis (adj. B)
- bifariam** (adv.), **bifarius** (adj. A) in two rows
- biflagellatus** (adj. A) biflagellate
- bifurcatus** (adj. A) bifurcate
- bifusiformis** (adj. B) bifusiform
- big** grandis (adj. B), magnus (adj. A); (in Lat. comp.) grandi-, magni-; (in Gk comp.) macro-, mega-, megalo-; **very big** giganteus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) megisto-
- bigeminatus** (adj. A) twice-conjugate
- bijugatus** (adj. A) bijugate
- bilabiate** bilabiatus (adj. A)
- bilateralis** (adj. B) bilateral
- bilis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with verb as stem) indicates ability
- bilocularis** (adj. B) bilocular
- binarius** (adj. A) binary
- binatim** (adv. ) in pairs; **binatus** (adj. A) paired, twinned [*as of leaflets*]
- binding together** colligans (part. B)
- bini** (num. adj. distr. pl.) two each
- bipartitio** (noun f. 3) splitting into two
- bipinnatus** (adj. A) bipinnate
- bis** (num. adv.) twice

- bisectiformis** (adj. B) slightly rounded-oblong with slight constriction in middle
- bisculptus** (part. A) with two different elements in ornamentation
- biseriate** biseriatus (adj. A)
- bisexualis** (adj. B) bisexual, hermaphrodite
- bistratose** bistratus (adj. A), distromaticus (adj. A)
- bistre** sepiaceus (adj. A)
- bit** frustum (noun n. 2)
- bitter** acerbus, acidus, amarus (all adj. A), acer (adj. B); (in Gk comp.) picro-
- bitunicatus** (adj. A) with two distinct walls
- bius** (Gk suff., adj. A) -living
- black** ater (adj. A) [*dull*], niger (adj. A) [*glossy*]; **coal black** anthracinus (adj. A); **ebony black** ebeneus (adj. A); **becoming black** nigrescens (part. B); **blackened** atratus, denigratus, nigrifactus (all part. A); **blackening** denigricans (part. B); **blackish** nigricans (part. B); **black as pitch** piceus (adj. A); **black-** (in Lat. comp.) atri-, atro-, nigr-, (in Gk comp.) mel-, mela-, melano-
- bladder** vesica (noun f. 1), ampulla (noun f. 1), (in Gk comp.) physo-; **bladder-like or having bladders** utricularis (adj. B), utriculatus, utriculosus (both adj. A); **covered with small bladders** vesiculosus (adj. A)
- blade** lamina (noun f. 1); **blade-like** laminaris, laminiformis (both adj. B)
- blast-, blasto-** (in Gk comp.) shoot-
- blastidium** blastidium (noun n. 2)
- blastoconidium** (noun n. 2) conidium formed by blastic conidiogenesis
- blastospore** blastospora (noun f. 1)
- blephari-, blepharid-, blepharo-** (in Gk comp.) fringed with hairs *or* cilia
- blepharoplast** blepharoplastus (noun m. 2)
- blight** robigo (noun f. 3)
- blistered** bullatus (adj. A); **covered with small blisters** vesiculosus (adj. A)
- blister-shaped** pustuliformis (adj. B)
- blood-coloured** haematicus, haematochrous (both adj. A)
- bloom** [*waxy, whitish, powdery covering*] pruina (noun f. 1)
- blotch** macula (noun f. 1) [see p. 00]; **blotched** maculatus (part. A)
- blown out** inflatus, sufflatus (both part. A)

- blue** lazulinus (adj. A); **cobalt blue** cobaltinus (adj. A); **deep blue** azureus (adj. A), cyaneus (adj. A); **gentian blue** gentianus (adj. A); **greyish blue** nubilus (adj. A); **heavenly blue** caelestis (adj. B); **hyacinth blue** hyacinthinus (adj. A); **indigo blue** indigoticus (adj. A); **lavender blue** caesius (adj. A); **sky blue** caelestis (adj. B); **brilliant sky-blue** caeruleus (adj. A); **slate blue** lazulino-ardesiacus (adj. A); **Venice-blue** venetus (adj. A); **becoming blue** cyanescens (part. B); **becoming sky blue** caerulescens (part. B); **staining blue** amyloideus (adj. A); **blue-** (in Lat. comp.) caesio-, (in Gk comp.) cyano-, cyano-
- blunt** obtusus (adj. A); ambly- (in Gk comp.); **blunted** obtusatus (part. A)
- boat** navicula (noun f. 1); **boat-shaped** navicularis, naviculiformis, cymbiformis (all adj. B)
- body** corpus (noun n. 3)
- bog** palus (noun f. 3); **peat-bog** turbarium (noun n. 2); **boggy** uliginosus (adj. A)
- bole** truncus (noun m. 2)
- bombycinus** (adj. A) silky
- bone** os, Genitive sing. ossis (noun n. 3)
- bonus** (adj. A) good
- bony** osseus (adj. A); **bone-shaped** ossiformis (adj. B)
- book** liber (noun m. 2) [see p. 00]
- border** margo (noun m. or f. 3) [see p. 00]; **bordered** marginatus (adj. A), praetextus (part. A), (in Gk comp.) lomato-; **bordering on** conterminus (adj. A, + Dative or Genitive)
- borealis** (adj. B) northern
- born** natus, genitus (both part. A); **born within** innatus (part. A + Dative, or with 'in' + Ablative)
- borne** portatus (part. A)
- boss** umbo (noun m. 3); **bossed** umbonatus (adj. A)
- bostryx** (noun m. 3) bostryx, helicoid cyme
- botanic, botanical** botanicus (adj. A); **botanist** botanicus (noun m. 2); **botany** botanica (noun f. 1), phytologia (noun f. 1)
- both ... and ...** et ... et ...
- both sides, on** utrinque, utrinsecus (both adv.); amphi- (pref. in Gk comp.).
- both together** ambo (num. adj.)

**bothr-** (in Gk comp.) pit

**bothryospermus** (adj. A.) with pitted seeds

**botryoideus** (adj. A) grape-like [*in a cluster*]; **-botrys** (noun m. 3, in Gk comp.), **botry-** (in Gk comp.) bunch, raceme

**bottom** fundus (noun m. 2)

**botuliformis** (adj. B) sausage-shaped

**boundary** finis (noun f. 3); limes (noun m. 3)

**bounded** definitus, limitatus (both part. A)

**bowed** arcuatus (adj. A)

**bowl** cratera (noun f. 1), crater (noun m. 3); **bowl-shaped** crateriformis (adj. B)

**brachialis** (adj. B) as long as an arm [*approx. 2 feet, 70 cm*]

**brachiatus** (adj. A) having branches with arms

**brachium** (noun n. 2) arm

**brachy-** (in Gk comp.) short

**brachyblastus** (noun m. 2) short shoot, spur

**brackish** salsugineus, salsuginosus (both adj. A)

**bract** bractea (noun f. 1); **bracteate** bracteatus (adj. A)

**bracteolate** bracteolatus (adj. A); **bracteole** bracteola (noun f. 1)

**brain-like** cerebriiformis (adj. B)

**bran-like** furfuraceus (adj. A)

**branch** ramus (noun m. 2); **bearing branches** ramifer (adj. A);

**branched** ramosus (adj. A); **very branched** ramosissimus (adj. A sup.);

**belonging to a branch** ramealis (adj. B), rameus (adj. A);

**branching** ramificatio (noun f. 3), ramificans (part. B); clad- (Gk pref.), -cladus (adj. A, in Gk comp.); **2-branched**

[e.g. *hairs*] dibrachiatus (adj. A); **branched-** (in Lat. comp.) rami-

**branchlet** ramulus (noun m. 2)

**breadth** longitudo (noun f. 3)

**breaking** frangens (part. B); **breaking apart** rumpens (part. B); **breaking forth** erumpens, prorumpens (both part. B); **breaking off** abrumpens, disrumpens (both part. B); **breaking open** refringens (part. B)

**brevi-** (in Lat. comp.) short-

**breviarium** (noun n. 2) summary

**brevis** (adj. B) short; **brevissimus** (adj. A sup.) very short; **breviter** (adv.) shortly

- brevipes** (adj. B) short-footed [see. p.00]  
**brevitas** (noun f. 3) shortness  
**brick-red** latericius, lateritius, testaceus (all adj. A)  
**bridge** pons (noun m. 3), ponticulus (noun m. 2)  
**bright** clarus (adj. A), vividus (adj. A); **brightly** clare, laete, splendide, vivide (all adv.); **bright-coloured** fulgens (part. B), fulgidus (part. A); **bright** (in Gk comp.) lampro-  
**bringing forth** edens, efferens, gignens, pariens (all part. B)  
**bristle** seta (noun f. 1); **bristle-bearing** setifer (adj. A); **bristle-like** setaceus (adj. A); **bristle-shaped** setiformis (adj. B); **bristly** setosus (adj. A), echinatus (adj. A), hispidus (adj. A), horricomis (adj. B), intonsus (adj. A); **-bristle** (in Gk comp.) -chaeta, -chaete (both noun f. 1)  
**brittle** fragilis (adj. B), friabilis (adj. B); **brittleness** fragilitas (noun f. 3)  
**broad** latus (adj. A); **broadly** late (adv.); **very broadly** perlate (adv.); **broad** (in Lat. comp.) lati-, (in Gk comp.) platy-; **broad-leaved** frondosus (adj. A)  
**broken** fractus, ruptus (both part. A); **broken off** disruptus, effractus (both part. A); **broken through** perruptus (part. A); **broken in pieces** diffractus (part. A); **abruptly broken off** succisus (part. A)  
**bronze** aeneus (adj. A)  
**brook** rivus (noun m. 2); **pertaining to brooks** rivalis (adj. B); **brooklet** rivulus (noun m. 2)  
**broom-like** [*fastigiately*] scoparie (adv.), [*like a brush*] scopiformis (adj. B), scopulatus (adj. A)  
**brought** [*from*] advectus (part. A); allatus (part. A), usu. with *ex*  
**brown** brunneus (adj. A); **bay** badius (adj. A); **buff** bubalinus (adj. A); **chestnut brown** castaneus (adj. A); **chocolate brown** badius (adj. A); **dark brown** fuscus, pullatus (both adj. A); **deep reddish-brown** spadiceus (adj. A); **dirty brown** luridus (adj. A); **fawn** hinnuleus (adj. A); **light reddish-brown** cinnamomeus (adj. A); **nut brown** avellaneus (adj. A); **pale brown** alutaceus (adj. A); **brownish** brunneolus, infuscatus (both adj. A)  
**bruise** contusum (noun n. 2); **bruised** contusus, sugillatus, tritus (all part. A)  
**brumalis** (adj. B) wintry  
**brunneolus** (adj. A) brownish  
**brush-shaped** aspergilliformis (adj. B), penicillatus (adj. A)

- bryo-** (in Gk comp.) relating to mosses
- bryophytum** (noun n. 2) bryophyte
- bubalinus** (adj. A) buff
- bubble** bulla (noun f. 1); **bubble-like** bulliformis (adj. B)
- buccinatus, buccinatorius** (both adj. A) trumpet-shaped [*somewhat curved*]
- bud** gemma (noun f. 1); **bud (of a flower)** alabastrum (noun n. 2); **bud-bearing** gemmatus (adj. A), gemmifera (adj. B), gemmiparus (adj. A); **budding** gemmatio (noun f. 3); **bud-like** gemmiformis (adj. B); **budding off** pullulans (part. B)
- buff** bubalinus (adj. A)
- bulb** bulbus (noun m. 2); **bulb-shaped** bulbiformis (adj. B)
- bulbil, bulblet** bulbilus (noun m. 2)
- bulbotuber** (noun n. 3) [*in early authors*] corm
- bulbous** bulbosus (adj. A)
- bulge** protuberatio (noun f. 3); **bulging** protuberans, tumescens (both part. B)
- bulla** (noun f. 1) bubble; **bullatus** (adj. A) blistered; **bulliformis** (adj. B) bubble-like
- bunch** [*like grapes*] (in Gk comp.) botry-, -botrys (noun m. 3)
- bundle** fascis (noun m. 3), fasciculus (noun m. 2), *also* phalanx (noun f. 3); **bundle** -desma (noun f. 1, in Gk comp.)
- bundus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with verb as stem) indicates something in progress, *or* completed
- bung** obturamentum (noun n. 2)
- buried** defossus, infossus, obrutus (all part. A)
- burned** ambustus, ustulatus (both part. A)
- burr** lappa (noun f. 1); **burr-like** lappaceus (adj. A)
- bursicule** bursicula (noun f. 1)
- bursting** rumpens (part. B); **bursting elastically** dissiliens (part. B); **bursting forth** eruptio (noun f. 3), *also* prorumpens (part. B)
- bush** frutex (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **bushy** fruticosus (adj. A), dumalis (adj. B); **of bushy habit** dumosus (adj. A); **becoming bushy** frutescens (part. B)
- but** at (conj.), autem (conj.), sed (conj.); **but for** praeter (prep. + Accusative)
- buttery** butyraceus (adj. A)

**button-like** globuliformis (adj. B)

**buttress** anteris (noun f. 3)

**butyraceus** (adj. A) buttery

**by** [*by whom or which something is done*] a, ab (prep. + Ablative), per (prep. + Accusative), *also* expressed by Ablative without prep.; [*near*] ad (prep. + Accusative); [*along*] secundum (prep. + Accusative)

**byssaceus, byssinus, byssoideus** (all adj. A) cobwebby, cottony, with fine threads

## C

**cacumen** (noun n. 3) peak, very top [see p. 00]

**cadens** (part. B) falling

**caducus** (adj. A) falling, dropping early, caducous

**caelestis** (adj. B) heavenly blue

**caelum** (noun n. 2) the sky

**caeoma** (noun n. 3) caeoma

**caeruleo-griseus** (adj. A) sky grey

**caerulescens** (part. B) becoming sky blue; **caeruleus** (adj. A) brilliant sky-blue

**caesariatus** (adj. A) hairy

**caesio-** (in Lat. comp.) blue; **caesius** (adj. A) lavender blue

**caespes** (noun m. 3) tuft, turf, sward [see p. 00]; **caespitulus** (noun m. 2) little tuft; **caespiticius** (adj. A) turf-like; **caespitosus, cespitosus** (both adj. A) growing in tufts

**caeterum** (adv.) otherwise

**calathidium, calathium** (both noun n. 2) capitulum [*in Asteraceae*]; calathiformis (adj. B), **calathinus** (adj. A) cup-shaped

**calcar** (noun n. 3) spur, hollow appendage on calyx *or* corolla [see p. 00]; **calcaratus** (adj. A) spurred; **calcariformis** (adj. B) spur-like

**calcareus** (adj. A) calcareous, chalky, limy

**calceiformis** (adj. B), **calceolatus** (adj. A) slipper-like

**calcificatio** (noun f. 3) calcification; **calcium** (noun n. 2) calcium

**calculation** ratio (noun f. 3)

**caldarium** (noun n. 2) hot-house

- calendulinus** (adj. A) marigold orange
- calidus** (adj. A) hot, warm
- calli-** (in Gk comp.) beautiful
- callifer** (adj. A), **callosus** (adj. A) callose; **callus** (noun m. 2) callus
- calm** tranquillus (adj. A)
- calo-** (in Gk comp.) beautiful
- calvatus** (adj. A) bald; **calvescens** becoming bald (part. B); **calvifactus** (part. A) made bald
- calvus** (adj. A) bald
- calx** (noun f. 3) lime
- calyciformis** (adj. B) calyx-like; **calycinus** (adj. A) belonging to the calyx
- calyculus** (noun m. 2) epicalyx; **calyculatus** (adj. A) with a calyculus
- calymma** (noun n. 3, in Gk comp.) covering, veil
- calyptra** calyptra (noun f. 1); **calyptratus** (adj. A) having a calyptra;
- calyptriformis** (adj. B) shaped like a conical cap
- calyx** calyx (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **within the calyx** intracalycinus (adj. A)
- cambium** cambium (noun n. 2)
- campani-** (in Lat. comp.) bell-
- campanulatus** (adj. A), **campaniformis** (adj. B) bell-shaped
- campanulinus** (adj. A) campanula violet
- campanuloides** (adj. B) resembling a campanula
- campester** (adj. B), **campestris** (adj. B) pertaining to fields and plains
- campo-**, **campso-**, **campto-**, **camplyo-** (in Gk comp.) bent
- camptodromus** (adj. A) camptodrome
- campylidia** (noun n. 2, pl.) campylidia
- campylotropus** (adj. A) campylotropous
- canaliculatus** (adj. A) grooved, channelled; **canalis** (noun m. 3) groove, channel
- canarinus** (adj. A) canary yellow
- cancellatus** (adj. A) latticed
- candelabriformis** (adj. B) candelabriform
- candidus** (adj. A) pure, glossy white; **candidans** (part. B) becoming white
- cane** harundo (noun f. 3) [*grass reed*], virga (noun f. 1) [*rod*]
- caneolithus** (noun m. 2) caneolith
- canescens** (part. B) canescent, becoming grey



- canino-** (in Lat. comp.) pertaining to dogs
- canker** robigo (noun f. 3), cancer (noun m. 2)
- canopy** canopeum (noun n. 2)
- canus** (adj. A) grey
- cap** calyptra (noun f. 1), operculum (noun n. 2), pileus (noun m. 2), pyxidium (noun n. 2)
- cap-shaped** pileatus (adj. A)
- cape** [*Geography*] caput (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]
- caperatus** (adj. A) wrinkled
- capiens** (part. B) containing
- capillaceus** (adj. A), **capillaris** (adj. B), **capilliformis** (adj. B) capillary-like, hair-like
- capillitium** capillitium (noun n. 2)
- capillus** (adj. A) hair, hair's breadth
- capitatus** (adj. A) with a rounded head *or* tip, capitate
- capitulum** (noun n. 2) head; [*in Asteraceae*] anthodium (noun n. 2), calathidium (noun n. 2) calathium (noun n. 2); **capit-**, **capiti-** (in Lat. comp.) head-
- capreolus** (noun m. 2) tendril
- capsicinus** (adj. A) capsicum red
- capsularis** (adj. B) capsular
- capsule** capsula (noun f. 1)
- capucinus** (adj. A) nasturtium red
- caput** (noun n. 3) head, cape [*Geography*] [see p. 00]
- carbo** (noun m. 3) carbon, charcoal
- carbonaceus** (adj. A) brittle and black
- carbonarius** (adj. A) pertaining to coal
- carbonas** (noun m.3) carbonate
- cardia-**, **cardio-** (in Gk comp.) heart-
- cardinalis** (adj. B) cardinal red
- careful** accuratus (adj. A) but use *diligens* for persons; **carefully** diligenter (adv.)
- careless** neglectim, negligenter (both adv.)
- carens** (part. B) lacking, absent
- caries** (noun f. 3) decay

- carina** (noun f. 1) keel; **carinalis** (adj. B) belonging to the keel; **carinatus** (adj. A) with a keel, keeled
- cariosus** (adj. A) rotten, decayed, decomposed
- carmesinus** (adj. A) crimson
- carmine** carminus, carmineus, coccineus, carmesinus (all adj. A)
- carneus** (adj. A) flesh-coloured
- carnosulus** (adj. A) slightly fleshy; **carnosus** (adj. A) succulent, fleshy
- caro** (noun f. 3) flesh, substance [see p. 00]
- carp-**, **carpo-** (in Gk comp.) relating to the fruit
- carpel** carpellum, carpidium (both noun n. 2)
- carpicus** (adj. A) relating to the fruit
- carpidium** (noun n. 2) carpel
- carpocephalum** carpocephalum (noun n. 2)
- carpogonial** carpogonialis (adj. B); **carpogonium** carpogonium (noun n. 2);  
**carpogonium-bearing** carpogonifer (adj. A)
- carpophorum** (noun n. 2) carpophore
- carpospora** (noun f. 1) carpospore
- carposporangium** (noun n. 2) carposporangium
- carposporophytum** (noun n. 2) carposporophyte
- carpotetrasporangium** (noun n. 2) carposporangium containing 4 carpospores
- carpus** (noun m. 2), **-carpa** (noun f. 1), **-carpium** (noun n. 2, in Gk comp.)  
 -fruit, -fruited
- carried** portatus (part. A), vectus (part. A); **carried** [*from*] advectus (part. A)  
 usu. with *ex*
- carrot-red** daucus (adj. A); **carrot-shaped** dauciformis (adj. B)
- carrying** ferens (part. B + Accusative); gerens (part. B + Accusative);  
 (in Lat. comp.) -fer, -ger (both adj. A); (in Gk comp.) -phorus (adj. A)
- cartilaginous** cartilagineus (adj. A); **like cartilage** chondroideus (adj. A)
- caruncula** (noun f. 1) caruncle; **carunculatus** (adj. A) carunculate
- caryo-** (in Gk comp.) nut-, nucleus-
- caryopsis** caryopsis (noun f. 3)
- case** [*container*] (in Gk comp.) -theca (noun f. 1)
- cask-shaped** cupiformis, doliiformis, orculiformis (all adj. B); **like a small cask** cupelliformis (adj. B)

- cassideus** (adj. A) helmet-shaped  
**cassis** (noun f. 3) helmet  
**cassus** (adj. A + Genitive or Ablative) empty  
**cast off** exutus (part. A), exuviatus (adj. A), rejectus (part. A)  
**castaneus** (adj. A) chestnut brown  
**castratus** (adj. A) castrated, emasculated  
**cat-, cata-** (pref. in Gk comp.) against, along, below  
**catadromus** (adj. A) catadromous  
**catalogue** catalogus (noun m. 2), index (noun m. 3)  
**cataphyll** cataphyllum (noun n. 2)  
**cataract** cataracta (noun f. 1)  
**catathecium** catathecium (noun n. 2)  
**catena** (noun f. 1) chain; **catenatus** (adj. A) linked as in a chain; **catenulatus** (adj. A) in short chains  
**caterva** (noun f. 1) crowd, group; **catervatim** (adv.) in groups, crowdedly  
**catilliformis** (adj. B) saucer-shaped; **catillus** (noun m. 2) plate [*platter*], saucer  
**catkin** amentum (noun n. 2); **like a catkin** amentaceous, julaceous (both adj. A)  
**cato-** (pref. in Gk comp.) downwards, below  
**caudatus** (adj. A) with a tail-like appendage  
**caudex** (noun m. 3) rootstock  
**caudicle** caudicula (noun f. 1)  
**cauliflorus** (adj. A) cauliflorous  
**caulis** (noun m. 3) stem; **caulinus** (adj. A) cauline  
**caulonema** (noun n. 3) caulonema  
**caulorhiza** (noun f. 1) rootstock  
**causing** efficiens (part. B)  
**cautes** (noun f. 3) pointed rock  
**cave** caverna, spelunca (both noun f. 1)  
**cavernosus** (adj. A) full of cavities  
**cavernula** (noun f. 1) **aeria** (adj. A) air chamber  
**cavitas** (noun f. 3) cavity

**cavity** alveola (noun f. 1), cavum (noun n. 2), cavitas (noun f. 3); **small cavity** alveolus (noun m. 2); **full of cavities** cavernosus (adj. A)

**cavum** (noun n. 2) hole

**cavus** (adj. A) hollow

**ceasing** desinens (part. B)

**cecdiophorus** (adj. A) gall-bearing

**celans** (part. B) hiding, concealing; **celatus** (part. A) hidden, concealed

**celeriter** (adv.) quickly

**cell** cellula (noun f. 1); **within a cell** intracellularis (adj. B);  
**cellular** cellulosus (adj. A)

**-celled** -cellularis (adj. B, in Lat. comp.)

**cellula** (noun f. 1) **alaris** (adj. B) alar cell

**cellulosa** (noun f. 1) cellulose

**-cellus, -cillus, -culus** (Lat. suff., adj. A) indicates diminutive form

**celsus** (adj. A) high, lofty

**centensimus** (adj. A) a hundredth

**centi-** (in Lat. comp.) hundred-; **centiens, centies** (both adv.) hundred-fold

**centimetre** centimetrum (noun n. 2)

**central** centralis (adj. B), medius (adj. A)

**centralium** centralium (noun n. 2)

**centre** centrum (noun n. 2)

**centrifugus** (adj. A) developing from centre outwards

**centripetus** (adj. A) developing from outside towards centre

**centrum** (noun n. 2) centrum, centre

**centum** (num. adj. indecl.) hundred

**cephal-, cephalo-** (in Gk comp.) head; **-cephalus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.)  
 -headed

**cephalium** (noun n. 2) cephalium

**cephalodium** cephalodium (noun n. 2)

**-ceps** (adj. B, in Lat. comp.) -headed

**cera** (noun f. 1) wax

**-ceras, -ceros** (both noun n. 3, in Gk comp.) -horn, horny projection

**cerasinus** (adj. A) cherry-red

**cerato-** (in Gk comp.) horned-

- cerebriformis** (adj. B) brain-like in appearance  
**cereus** (adj. A) waxy, dull yellow  
**cernuus** (adj. A) drooping, descending  
**certainly** *certe, nempe, nimirum* (all adv.)  
**certus** (adj. A) definite, settled, specified  
**cespitosus** (adj. A) growing in tufts (*see caespitosus*)  
**cetera, ceteroquin, ceterum** (all adv.) otherwise; **ceterus** (adj. A) the other  
     [*the rest*]  
**-chaeta, -chaete** (noun f. 1, in Gk comp.) bristle, long hair  
**chaffy** *paleaceus* (adj. A)  
**chain** *catena* (noun f. 1); **chained** *catenatus* (adj. A); **chain-like** *cateniformis*  
     (adj. B)  
**chalaza** *chalaza* (noun f. 1)  
**chalky** *calcareus, cretaceus* (both adj. A) [*use also for chalk-white*]  
**chalybeus** (adj. A) steel grey  
**chamae-** (in Gk comp.) lowly, creeping  
**chamber** *cubiculum* (noun n. 2); **chambered** *locellatus* (adj. A)  
**changeable** *inconstans, mutabilis* (both adj. B); **changed** *mutatus,*  
     *transmutatus, transformatus* (all part. A); **changing suddenly to**  
     *abiens* (part. B)  
**channel** *canalis* (noun m. 3), [*strait*] *fretum* (noun n. 2), *fretus* (noun m. 4);  
**channelled** *canaliculatus* (adj. A)  
**character** *character* (noun m. 3)  
**characteristic** *proprius* (adj. A); **characteristically** *proprie* (adv.)  
**chartaceus** (adj. A) papery  
**cheil-, cheilo-** (in Gk comp.) lip  
**cheilocystidium** *cheilocystidium* (noun n. 2)  
**chequered, checkered** *tessellatus* (adj. A)  
**cherry-red** *cerasinus* (adj. A)  
**chestnut brown** *castaneus* (adj. A)  
**chiastobasidium** (noun n. 2) *chiastobasidium*  
**chief** *primarius* (adj. A), *archi-* (pref. in Gk comp.); **chiefly** *imprimis* (adv.)  
**-chilus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) lipped  
**chion-** (in Gk comp.) snow

- chiton** (noun m. 2) chitin; *also* **-chiton** (noun m. 3, in Gk comp.) covering, tunic
- chlamyd-** (in Gk comp.) cloaked, wearing a cloak
- chlamydocyst** chlamydocystis (noun f. 3)
- chlamydospora** (noun f. 1) chlamydospore
- chlamys** (noun f. 3) mantle, cloak
- chlor-, chloro-** (in Gk comp.) green-
- chloride** chloridum (noun n. 2); **chlorine** chlorinum (noun n. 2)
- chlorinus** (adj. A) yellow-green
- chloronema** (noun n. 3) chloronema
- chlorophyll** chlorophyllum (noun n. 2); **chlorophyllose** chlorophyllosus (adj. A)
- chloroplast** chloroplastus (noun m. 2)
- chocolate brown** badius (adj. A)
- chondroideus** (adj. A) chondroid, like cartilage
- chorate** [*in diatoms*] choratus (adj. A)
- chori-** (pref. in Gk comp.) separate, free
- chosen** lectus, excerptus (both part. A)
- chrom-, chromato-** (in Gk comp.) relating to colour
- chromatophore** chromatophorum, phaeophorum (both noun n. 2)
- chromatropic** chromatropicus (adj. A)
- chromosome** chromosoma (noun f. 1)
- chromus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) relating to colour
- chrys-, chryso-** (in Gk comp.) golden-
- chrysocystidium** (noun n. 2) cystidium that turns yellow in alkali solution
- cibarius** (adj. A) relating to food
- cibus** (noun m. 2) food
- cicatricatus** (adj. A) scarred; **cicatricosus** (adj. A) covered in scars; **cicatrix** (noun f. 3) scar [see p. 00]
- cidus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) killing
- ciliate** ciliatus (adj. A); **ciliated** (in Gk comp.) blephari-, blepharid-, blepharo-
- cilium** cilium (noun n. 2)
- cillus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with adj. as stem) indicates diminutive form
- cinnus** cinnus (noun m. 2)

- cinctus** (part. A) encircled, girdled
- cinereus, cineraceus** (both adj. A) ash grey; **cinerascens** (part. B) becoming ash grey
- cingens** (part. B) encircling, girdling
- cingulum** (noun n. 2) cingulum, girdle
- cinnabarinus** (adj. A) vermilion
- cinnameus** (adj. A) smelling of cinnamon; **cinnamomeus** (adj. A) light reddish brown; **cinnamominus** (adj. A) relating to cinnamon
- circa, circum** (both adv., or prep. + Accusative) about
- circinatus** (adj. A) coiled inwards
- circiter** (adv., or prep. + Accusative) about
- circle** orbis (noun m. 3), gyrus (noun m. 2); **coiled into a circle** cyclicus (adj. A); **rolled up circularly** cyclicalis (adj. B); **almost circular** rotundus (adj. A); **circular** (in Gk comp.) cyclo-. *See also ring*
- circum-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) around
- circumcinctus** (part. A) surrounded
- circumcirca** (adv.) all around
- circumdatus** (part. A) encircled; **circumdans** (part. B) encircling, girdling
- circumference** ambitus (noun m. 4), circumferentia (noun f. 1), circumscriptio (noun f. 3), periphēria (noun f. 1)
- circumnexus** (part. A) wrapped around, surrounding
- circumscissilis** (adj. B), **circumscissus** (part. A) circumscissile
- circumscriptio** (noun f. 3) circumference, outline
- cirratus, cirrosus** (all adj. A) having tendrils; **cirriifer** (adj. A) bearing tendril(s); **cirriiformis** (adj. B) tendril-like; **cirrus** (noun m. 2) tendril
- cis** (prep. + Accusative) on this side; **cis-** [*in geographical comp.*] on this side of, e.g. *cisalpinus*
- cisterna** (noun f. 1) cistern, reservoir [*esp. underground*]
- cito** (adv.) quickly, soon
- citrinus** (adj. A) lemon yellow; **citriiformis** (adj. B) lemon-shaped; **citriodoros** (adj. A) lemon-scented
- city** urbs (noun f. 3)
- clad-, -cladus** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) branch, shoot
- cladocarpus** (adj. A) cladocarpous
- cladode** cladodium (noun n. 2)

- cladophyll** cladophyllum (noun n. 2)
- clamp** colligatio (noun f. 3), zygoesma (noun n. 3); **clamp connection** fibula (noun f. 1); **provided with clamps** fibulatus (adj. A); **bearing clamps** fibuliger (adj. A)
- clandestinus** (adj. A) concealed, hidden
- clare** (adv.) brightly, clearly; **clarus** (adj. A) bright
- clasping** adligans, alligans, amplexens, complexens (all part. B), amplexus (adj. A)
- class** classis (noun f. 3)
- clathratus** (adj. A) latticed
- clausus** (part. A) closed
- clava** (noun f. 1) club; **clavatus** (adj. A) clavate, club-shaped; **claviformis** (adj. B) clavate
- clavi-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) club-
- clavis** (noun f. 3) key (to species etc.)
- clavula** (noun f. 1) a small club
- clavus** (noun m. 2) peg
- claw** unguis (noun m. 3); **clawed** unguiculatus (adj. A)
- clay** argilla (noun f. 1); **clayey, growing in clay, clay-coloured** argillaceus (adj. A); **full of clay** argillosus (adj. A)
- clear** liquidus, pellucidus, hyalinus, lucidus, translucidus (all adj. A), translucens (part. B); **clearly** clare, evidenter, manifeste, perspicue, plane (all adv.)
- cleft** fissura (noun f. 1); fissus (part. A); **cleft** (in Gk comp.) schist-, schisto-, schiz-, schizo-
- cleistocarpus** (adj. A) cleistocarpous
- cleistogamus** (adj. A) cleistogamous
- cleistothecium** (noun n. 2) cleistothecium
- clema** (noun n. 3), **-clemus** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) shoot, branch, twig
- cliff** scopulus (noun m. 2), praeruptum (noun n. 2)
- climbing** scandens (part. B)
- clinandrium** (noun n. 2) clinandrium
- clinging** adhaerens, haerens, cohaerens (all part. B)
- clitocybioideus** (adj. A) *Clitocybe*-like
- clivus** (noun m. 2) hillside



- cloak** chlamys (noun f. 3); **cloaked** (in Gk comp.) chlamyd-
- clockwise** helice (adv.)
- clone** clon (noun m. 3); **clonal** clonalis (adj. B)
- close** arctus, artus (both adj. A); (in Gk comp.) pycn-, pycno-; **closed** clausus (part. A), inapertus (adj. A), impervius (adj. A), reconditus (part. A); **closed up** oclusus (part. A); **closely** arcte, arte (both adv.); **close together** approximatus (part. A), confertus (part. A), creber (adj. A)
- clothed** vestitus (part. A); **clothed with** indutus (part. A + Ablative); **clothed with withered parts** induvius (adj. A)
- cloud** nubes (noun f. 3); **clouded** nebulosus (adj. A); **cloudy** nubilus (adj. A)
- club** clava (noun f. 1); **a small club** clavula (noun f. 1); **club-shaped** clavatus (adj. A), claviformis (adj. B); **club-** (in Lat. comp.) clavi-; (in Gk comp.) coryne-, coryno-, rhopalo-
- clump** caespes (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **clumped** caespitosus (adj. A)
- cluster** fasciculus (noun m. 2), consocius (noun f. 3); **clustered** aggregatus (part. A), fasciculatus (adj. A); **clustered as in a sphere** conglomeratus (part. A)
- clypeatus** (adj. A) shaped like a circular shield; **clypeus** (noun m. 2) shield-like stromatic growth
- co-** (before vowels, *h*), **col-** (before *l*), **com-** (before *b, m, p*), **con-** (before *c, d, f, g, j, n, qu, s, t, v*), **cor-** (before *r*) (pref. in Lat. comp.) together with
- coacervatus** (part. A) heaped together, crowded
- coactus** (part. A) felted
- coadnatus** (part. A) united, fused
- coetaneus, coetanus** (adj. A) of the same age, at the same time
- coalescens** (part. B) coming together by growth; **coalitus** (part. A) united by growth
- coal-like** carbonaceus (adj. A); **pertaining to coal** carbonarius (adj. A)
- coarctatus** (part. A) pressed together
- coarse** grossus (adj. A); **coarsely** grosse (adv.)
- coast** ora, maritima (both noun f. 1)
- coaxial** coaxialis (adj. B)
- cobaltinus** (adj. A) cobalt
- cobwebby** arachnoideus, araneosus, byssaceus, byssoideus (all adj. A)

- coccineus** (adj. A) crimson
- coccoideus** (adj. A) coccoid
- coccolith** coccolithus (noun m. 2)
- coccosphere** coccoglobus (noun m. 2)
- coccus** coccus (noun m. 2)
- cochleariformis, cochlearis** (both adj. B) spoon-like; *also*, when one item or segment encloses the others
- cochleatus** (adj. A) coiled like a snail's shell
- codon-** (in Gk comp.) bell-
- coelo-** (in Gk comp.) hollowed
- coelospermus** (adj. A) hollow-seeded
- coenobium** (noun n. 2) colony
- coenocyte** coenocytum (noun n. 2); **coenocytic** coenocyticus (adj. A)
- coenosorus** (noun m. 2) fused sorus
- cognatus** (adj. A) related
- cognitus** (part. A) known, understood
- cohaerens** (part. B) clinging together, cohering; **cohaerentia** (noun f. 1) coherence
- cohort** cohors (noun f. 3)
- coil** gyrus (noun m. 2), spira (noun f. 1); **coiled** helicus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) helic-; **coiled inwards** circinatus (adj. A)
- cola** -dweller (suff. in comp., treated as noun in app. & of common gender, i.e. m., f. or n., so, regardless of the gender of a generic name, is declined like *agricola* [see p. 00]; when adj., declined as Group A)
- colboid** colboideus (adj. A)
- cold** frigidus, gelidus, algidus (all adj. A)
- collapsed** collapsus (part. A); **collapsing** collabens (part. B)
- collar** collum (noun n. 2); **collared** collariatus (adj. A), collaris (adj. B)
- collateralis** (adj. B) being side by side
- collected** lectus (part. A); **collection** collectio (noun f. 3), collectanea (noun n. 2, p1.); **collector** collector (noun m. 3)
- collective** collectivus (adj. A)
- collenchymatous** collenchymatosus (adj. A)
- colliculosus** (adj. A) colliculose
- colligans** (part. B) binding together; **colligatus** (part. A) joined together; **colligatio** (noun f. 3) a ligature, clamp

- collinus** (adj. A) pertaining to hills; **collis** (noun m. 3) a hill
- collocatio** (noun f. 3) arrangement
- collum** (noun n. 2) neck, collar
- collybioideus** (adj. A) *Collybia*-like
- colony** colonia (noun f. 1), coenobium (noun n. 2); **colonial** colonialis (adj. B)
- colour** color (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **coloured** coloratus, fucatus (both part. A); **-coloured** -color (adj. B, in Gk comp); **changing colour** allochrous (adj. A), versicolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]; **of a different colour** discolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]; **uniform in colour** concolor (adj. B) [see p. 00], concolorans (part. B), concolorus (adj. A); **many-coloured** (in Gk comp.) poecil-, poecilo-
- colourless** achromaticus (adj. A), achromus (adj. A), diaphanus [*almost transparent*] (adj. A), incolor (adj. B) [see p. 00], incoloratus (adj. A)
- colpus** colpus (noun m. 2)
- colubrinus** (adj. A) serpent-like
- columella** columella (noun f. 1)
- column** columna (noun f. 1); **columnar** columnaris (adj. B); **column** (in Gk comp.) -stela, -stele (noun f. 1)
- coma** (noun f. 1) coma, tuft; **comalis** (adj. B) relating to a coma
- comb** pecten (noun m. 3); **comb-like** pectinatus (adj. A); **comb-** (in Lat. comp.) pectini-, (in Gk comp.) cten-, cteno-
- comestibilis** (adj. B) edible
- combinatio** (noun f. 3) a combination, joining; **combinatus** (part. A) combined, united
- coming forth** egrediens, oriens, prodiens, proveniens (all part. B)
- comitatus** (adj. A + Ablative) accompanied
- commiscens** (part. B) intermingling
- commissure** commissura (noun f. 1); **commissural** commissuralis (adj. B)
- commixtus** (part. A) intermingled
- commode** (adv.) conveniently, aptly
- common** [*shared*] communis (adj. B), [*widespread*] vulgaris (adj. B), [*widespread*] pervagatus (part. A), [*very common*] pervulgatus (part. A); **commonly** plerumque (adv.); **in common** communiter, conjunctim (both adv.)

- comosus** (adj. A) having a tuft of hairs
- compact** compactus (part. A); **compactly** confertim, spisse (both adv.)
- compaginatus** (part. A) packed closely, one over the other
- comparable** comparandus (adj. A)
- compare** (adv.) comparatively, relatively
- comparison** comparatio (noun f. 3)
- complanatus** (part. A) flattened; **complanus** (adj. A) on the same plane, level
- complectens** (part. B) clasping, enfolding
- complens** (part. B) filling
- complete** [*whole*] totus (adj. A), [*filled*] completus (part. A);  
**completed** effectus (part. A); **completely** perfecte (adv.); **completely** (in Gk comp.) **eu-**
- complex** complexus (part. A), tortuosus (adj. A)
- complicatus** (part. A) folded upon itself
- compluriens, compluries** (both adv.) several times
- composed of** constatus (part. A)
- compositus** (part. A) compound, made up [of]
- compound** compositus (part. A)
- compressed** contractus (part. A)
- compressus** (part. A) flattened [*usu. laterally*]
- concatenatus** (part. A) linked, connected
- concave** concavus (adj. A)
- concealed** absconditus, celatus, occultus, reconditus, tectus (all part. A), clandestinus (adj. A)
- concentric** concentricus (adj. A)
- conceptacle** conceptaculum (noun n. 2)
- concerning** de (prep. + Ablative)
- conchatus** (adj. A), **conchiformis** (adj. B) shell-shaped; **conchifer** (adj. A) shell-bearing
- concinnus** (adj. A) neat, beautiful
- concolor** (adj. B) [see p. 00], **concolorans** (part. B), **concolorus** (adj. A) uniform in colour, of the same colour
- concomitatus** (part. A + Ablative) accompanied, associated
- concretus** (part. A) grown together, *also* thickened, hardened

- condensatus** (part. A) condensed [*e.g. an inflorescence*]  
**condition** status (noun m. 4); habitus (part. A)  
**conditus** (part. A) stored  
**conduplicatus** (part. A) conduplicate  
**condyle** condylus (noun m. 2)  
**cone** [*of a conifer*] strobilus (noun m. 2), [*solid figure*] conus (noun m. 2);  
**cone-shaped** conicus, conoideus (both adj. A); **cone-like** strobiliformis  
 (adj. B), strobilaceus (adj. A), strobilinus (adj. A); **cone-bearing** conifer  
 (adj. A)  
**conferruminatus** (part. A) fused together  
**confertus** (part. A) close together, crowded, dense; **confertim** (adv.)  
 compactly, densely  
**confervaceus, confervoideus** (both adj. A) composed of loose filaments like  
*Conferva*  
**confestim** (adv.) immediately [*quickly*]  
**confined to** limitatus (part. A with ad + Accusative)  
**confinis** (adj. B usu. + Dative) adjoining  
**confirmavit** (verb, 3rd pers. sing. act. perf.; abbreviation **conf.**) he or she  
 confirmed [*a determination*]  
**conflatus** (part. A) melded together, united  
**confluens** (part. B) confluent, running together  
**conformatio** (noun f. 3) shape, form  
**conformis** (adj. B) alike, agreeing closely, the same shape as  
**confused** confusus (part. A)  
**congener** (noun m. 2) member of same genus; **congenericus** (adj. A)  
 congeneric  
**congestus** (part. A) crowded together  
**conglobatus** (part. A) pressed together  
**conglomeratus** (part. A) clustered e.g. as in a sphere  
**conglutinatus** (part. A) glued together  
**congruens** (part. B + Dative or with *cum* + Ablative) agreeing with  
**conicus** (adj. A), **conoideus** (adj. A) cone-shaped, conical; **conice** (adv.)  
 conically; **conifer** (adj. A) cone-bearing  
**conidiogenus** (adj. A) producing conidia  
**conidiolum** (noun n. 2) secondary conidium

- conidioma** (noun n. 3) structure bearing conidia
- conidiophore** conidiophorum (noun n. 2); **without conidiophores** histogenus (adj. A)
- conidiosporangium** (noun n. 2) conidiosporangium
- conidium** (noun n. 2) conidium
- conifer** (adj. A) cone-bearing
- coniocyst** coniocysta (noun f. 1)
- conjugation** conjugatio (noun f. 3), copulatio (noun f. 3);  
**conjugating** conjungens (part. B)
- conjugatus, conjunctus** (both part. A) joined, connected
- conjunctio** (noun f. 3) union, fusion
- connatus** (part. A) joined, connate, fused, united
- connected** concatenatus, conjunctus, connexus, consociatus (all part. A);  
**connecting** jungens (part. B)
- connective** connectivum (noun n. 2)
- connexus** (part. A) connected
- connivens** (part. B) connivent, converging
- conoideus** (adj. A) almost conical
- consentaneus** (adj. A + Dative or with *cum* + Ablative) agreeing with
- consequently** itaque (adv.)
- conservatus** (part. A) preserved, conserved
- considerably** aliquantum (adv.)
- consimilis** (adj. B + Dative or Genitive) similar in all respects, equal
- consistent** aequabilis (adj. B)
- consistentia** (noun f. 1) texture, consistency
- consisting of** constans (part. B, + ex and Ablative)
- consociatus** (part. A) associated, connected, united; **consocies** (noun f. 3) cluster
- consortio** (noun f. 3), **consortium** (noun n. 2) association
- conspecificus** (adj. A) conspecific
- conspetus** (noun m. 4) survey, conspectus
- conspersus** (part. A) sprinkled
- conspicuus** (adj. A) conspicuous, striking; **conspicue** (adv.) conspicuously
- constans** (part. B, + ex and Ablative) consisting of
- constantly** constanter, perpetuo (both adv.)

- constatus** (part. A) composed of
- constipatus** (part. A) crowded closely together
- constricted** constrictus (part. A); **constriction** constrictio (noun f. 3), strictura (noun f. 1); **with a constriction** isthmoideus (adj. A)
- constructed** constructus, contextus, exstructus, fabricatus (all part. A)
- consuete** (adv.) customarily
- contained** contentus (part. A); **containing** capiens, continens (both part. B)
- contaminatus** (part. A) impure, polluted, contaminated
- contents** contentum (noun n. 2)
- contentus** (part. A) contained
- conterminus** (adj. A, + Dative or Genitive) bordering on
- contextus** (part. A) woven together, constructed; *also* (noun m. 4) hyphal mass in pileus
- contiguus** (adj. A usu. + Dative) adjoining
- continens** (part. B) containing
- continentalis** (adj. B) continental
- continuus** (adj. A) continuous, uninterrupted, non-septate
- contorted** contortus (part. A)
- contortuplicatus** (adj. A) entangled, intricate
- contra** (adv. or prep. + Accusative) against, opposite to; also pref. in Lat. comp.
- contractile** contractilis (adj. B); **contractile vacuole** vacuola (noun f. 1) contractilis (adj. B)
- contractus** (part. A) contracted, narrowed, compressed
- contrarius** (adj. A) contrary, in an opposite direction
- contrary** il- (pref. in Lat. comp. before *l*), im- (before *b, m, p*), in- (before vowels, most consonants)
- contrary, on the** immo (adv.)
- contributing** contribuens, donans (both part. A)
- contusum** (noun n. 2) bruise; **contusus** (part. A) bruised
- conus** (noun m. 2) cone [*solid figure*]
- convariety** convarietas (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]
- conveniens** (part. B + Dative or with *cum* + Ablative) agreeing
- conveniently** commode (adv.)
- converging** connivens (part. B)

- conversus** (part. A) reversed
- convexus** (adj. A) convex
- convolutus** (part. A) convolute, rolled together
- copiose** (adv.) abundantly
- coppery** cupreus, cuprinus (both adj. A)
- coprophilus** (adj. A) dung-loving [*growing on dung*]; **copro-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to dung
- cupula** (noun f. 1) the intercalary band of a diatom
- copulatio** (noun f. 3) conjugation [*of cells*]
- coralliformis** (adj. B) coral-like [*in form*]; **coralloides** (adj. B) of coral, coral-like; **corallinus** (adj. A) coral red
- corculum** (noun n. 2) plumule
- cord** [*slender rope*] funiculus (noun m. 2)
- cordatus** (adj. A) cordate; **cordiformis** (adj. B) heart-shaped; **cordi-** (in Lat. comp.) heart-
- coriaceus** (adj. A) coriaceous, leathery; **corium** (noun n. 2) rind, covering
- cork** suber (noun n. 3); **corky** suberosus (adj. A)
- corm** cormus (noun m. 2); bulbotuber [*in early authors*] (noun n. 3)
- corner** angulus (noun m. 2)
- corneus** (adj. A) horny, hard but not brittle
- cornflower blue** cyaninus, cyaneus (both adj. A)
- corniculatus** (adj. A) having small horn-like appendage; **corniculum** (noun n. 2) a small horn-like appendage
- cornu** (noun n. 4) horn, spur [see p. 00]; **cornutus** (adj. A) horned; **cornuatus** (adj. A) horn-shaped; **-cornis**, **-cornu** (both adj. B, in Lat. comp.), **-cornutus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -horned; **corni-** (in Lat comp.) horned
- corolla** (noun f. 1) corolla; **corollaceus** (adj. A) corolla-like; **corollatus** (adj. A) having a corolla; **corolliflorus** (adj. A) having calyx, corolla and ovary inserted on a disc and stamens inserted on corolla; **corollinus** (adj. A) belonging to or inserted on corolla; **epicorollinus** (adj. A) inserted on corolla
- corona** (noun f. 1) corona; **coroniformis** (adj. B) having the form of a corona; **coronans** (part. B) crowning; **coronatus** (part. A) crowned; **coronarius** (adj. A) of a wreath, coronary
- coronule** coronula (noun f. 1)



- corpus** (noun n. 3) body
- corpuscule** corpusculum (noun n. 2)
- correction** emendatio (noun f. 3); **corrected** emendatus (part. A);  
**correctly** rite (adv.)
- corresponding to** congruens (part. B), consentaneus (adj. A)
- corrugatus** (part. A) corrugated, crumpled
- cortex** (noun m. 3) bark, cortex [see p. 00]; **corticalis** (adj. B), **corticeus**  
 (adj. A) cortical; **corticatus** (adj. A) covered with bark *or* a cortex,  
 [in lichens] having outer layer made up of compacted hyphae
- corticola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of bark
- cortina** (noun f. 1) cortina; **cortinatus** (adj. A) cortinate
- corymb** corymbus (noun m. 2); **corymbose** corymbosus (adj. A);  
**corymbosely** corymbose
- cosmopolitanus** (adj. A) world-wide
- costa** (noun f. 1) midrib, rib; **costalis** (adj. B) relating to the midrib;  
**costatus** (adj. A) ribbed with one or more primary veins *or* ridges
- costapalmatus** (adj. A) costapalmate
- costula** (noun f. 1) costule
- cottony** byssaceus, byssinus, byssoideus, gossypinus (all adj. A)
- cotyledon** cotyledon (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]
- countless** innumerus (adj. A), innumerabilis (adj. B); pref. in Gk comp.,  
 myri-, myrio-
- covered** tectus, obtectus, obductus, velatus (all part. A); (in Gk comp.)  
 crypt-, crypto-; **a covering** corium (noun n. 2), tegmen (noun n. 3),  
 tegmentum (noun n. 2); **covering** tegens, obtegens, obducens  
 (all part. B); (in Gk comp.) -calymma (noun n. 3, in Gk comp.);  
**covered over with** obsitus (part. A); **-cover** (in Gk comp.) -theca  
 (noun f. 1)
- coxal** coxalis (adj. B)
- crack** rima, fissura (both noun f. 1); **cracked** rimosus (adj. A); **minutely**  
**cracked** rimulosus (adj. A)
- craspedromus** (adj. A) craspedromus [*veining*]
- crassus** (adj. A) thick; **crasse** (adv.) thickly; **crassiusculus**  
 (adj. A) moderately thick; **crassities** (noun f. 5) thickness
- crater** (noun m. 3) bowl; **crateriformis** (adj. B) basin-shaped, bowl-shaped
- craticula** craticula (noun f. 1)

- cream** [*colour*] *cremeus* (adj. A), *cremicolor* (adj. B) [see p. 00], [*ivory*] *eburneus* (adj. A)
- creber** (adj. A) close together, frequent; **crebiter**, **crebro** (both adv.) often, repeatedly
- creeping** *repens* [see p. 00], *reptans*, *serpens* (all part. B); (in Gk comp.) *chamae-*
- cremeus** (adj. A), **cremicolor** (adj. B) *cream* [*colour*] [see p. 00]
- cremocarp** *cremocarpium* (noun n. 2)
- crenatus** (adj. A) crenate, scalloped; **crenulatus** (adj. A) crenulate
- crepido** (noun f. 3) a bank [*of soil, rocks*]
- crescens** (part. B) growing, increasing, inhabiting
- crecent-shaped** *lunaris* (adj. B), *lunatus* (adj. A)
- crest** *crista* (noun f. 1); (pref. in Gk comp.) *loph-*, *lophio-*, *lopho-*; **crested** *cristatus* (adj. A)
- cretaceous** (adj. A) chalky, chalk-white
- crevice** *rima*, *fissura* (both noun f. 1)
- cribratus**, **cribrosus** (both adj. A) sieve-like, much perforated
- cribrum** (noun n. 2) *cribrum*
- crimson** *carmesinus*, *coccineus*, *kermesinus* (all adj. A)
- crinis** (noun m. 3) the hair; **crinitus** (adj. A) with tufts of long, weak hairs
- crispatus** (part. A), **crispus** (adj. A) crisped, irregularly wavy
- crista** (noun f. 1) crest; **cristatus** (adj. A) crested
- croceus** (adj. A) saffron yellow
- crooked** *anfractus* (part. A)
- cross** *crux* (noun f. 3); **cross-shaped** *cruciatus* (adj. A); **cross-wise** *cruciatim* (adv.)
- cross-beam** *transtrum* (noun n. 2)
- cross-wall** *septum* (noun n. 2)
- crowd** *caterva*, *turba* (both noun f. 1); **crowded** *aggregatus*, *coacervatus*, *coarctatus*, *confertus* (all part. A), *creber* (adj. A), [*surrounded*] *stipatus* (part. A); **crowded closely together** *congestus*, *conglomeratus*, *constipatus* (all part. A); **crowdedly** *catervatim*, *confertim*, *crebro* (all adv.)
- crown** *corona* (noun f. 1); **crowning** *coronans* (part. B); **crowned** *coronatus* (part. A)

- cruciatus** (adj. A) cross-shaped; **cruciatim** (adv.) cross-wise  
**crudus** (adj. A) raw, uncooked, unripe  
**crumbling** *fatiscens* (part. B)  
**crumpled** *corrugatus* (part. A)  
**crushed** *obtritus* (part. A)  
**crusta** (noun f. 1) crust, upper surface of pileus *or* thallus; **crustaceus**  
 (adj. A) hard, thin and brittle, crustaceous  
**crustosus** (adj. A) crustose, crust-like  
**crux** (noun f. 3) cross; **cruciatus** (adj. A) cross-shaped; **cruciatim** (adv.)  
 cross-wise  
**crypt-, crypto-** (in Gk comp.) covered, hidden  
**cryptocotularis** (adj. B) germination in which cotyledons remain enclosed  
 in seed  
**cryptogamicus, cryptogamus** (both adj. A) cryptogamic  
**cryptolecanorinus** (adj. A) with inapparent thalline margin  
**cryptosome** *cryptosoma* (noun n. 3)  
**crystal** *crystallum* (noun n. 2); **crystalline** *crystallinus* (adj. A)  
**cten-, cteno-, -ctenium** (noun n. 2) (in Gk comp.) comb  
**-ctonus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) killing  
**cubical** *cubicus* (adj. A), *cubiformis* (adj. B); **more or less cubical** *tessularis*  
 (adj. B)  
**cubiculum** (noun n. 2) chamber  
**cucullatus** (adj. A) hooded; **cucullus** (noun m. 2) hood  
**cujus** (Genitive sing. of *qui*) of which, of whose; **cujusvis** (m.), **cujavis** (f.),  
**cujumvis** (n.) of anyone  
**culm** *culmus* (noun m. 2)  
**cultivated** *cultus* (part. A); **cultivated land** *arvum* (noun n. 2); **cultivated**  
**land, pertaining to** *arvalis, arvensis* (both adj. B); **cultivar** *cultivarietas*  
 (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **cultigen** *cultigenum* (noun n. 2);  
**cultivation** *cultura* (noun f. 1)  
**culture** *cultura* (noun f. 1)  
**cultratus** (adj. A) *cultrate*; **cultriformis** (adj. B) *cultriform*  
**-culus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with adj.) indicates diminutive form  
**cum** (prep. + Ablative) along with; *also* as conj., when, while, whereas  
**cumulatus** (part. A) heaped; **cumulus** (noun m. 2) a heap, pile

- cundus** (Lat. suff., adj. A) indicates a tendency
- cuneate** cuneatus (adj. A), cuneiformis (adj. B)
- cuniculus** cuniculus (noun m. 2)
- cup** cupula (noun f. 1) e.g. of an acorn; **cup-** (in Gk or Lat. comp.) calath-, cotyl-, cyath-, cymbio-, scyph-; (in Lat. comp.) acetabul-, pocul-; (in Gk comp.) peli-, scyph-, scyphi-, scypho-
- cupelliformis** (adj. B) like a small cask
- cupiformis** (adj. B) barrel-*or* cask-shaped
- cupola-shaped** cupuliformis (adj. B)
- cupreus, cuprinus** (both adj. A) coppery
- cup-shaped** cupulatus, calathinus (both adj. A), calathiformis, cyathiformis, poculiformis (all adj. B)
- cupule** cupula (noun f. 1)
- curled** crispus, crispatus (both adj. A)
- cursus** (noun m. 4) direction
- curtus** (adj. A) short
- curve** arcus (noun m. 4), curvamen (noun n. 2); **curve-** (in Lat. comp.) cuvi-, (in Gk comp.) cyrto-; **curved** curvus (adj. A), curvatus, arcuatus (both part. A); **curvature** curvatura (noun f. 1); **curved downwards or forwards** declinatus (part. A); **curved inwards** incurvatus, incurvus (both adj. A); **curved in one direction** homotropus (adj. A)
- cushion** pulvinus (noun m. 2); **cushion-shaped** pulvinatus (adj. A), pulviniformis (adj. B)
- cuspidate** cuspidatus (adj. A)
- customarily** consueve (adv.)
- cut** scissus (part. A); **cut to midrib** sectus (part. A); **cut deeply** incisus (part. A); **cut more than half-way to midrib** partitus (part. A); **cut half-way or less to midrib** fissus (part. A); **cut off** abscissus (part. A); **cut into** insculptus (part. A); **cut out** excisus, exsectus (both part. A); **a cut** incisura (noun f. 1)
- cuticle** cuticula (noun f. 1), cutis (noun f. 3); **cuticular** cuticularis (adj. B)
- cyaneus, cyaninus** (both adj. A) deep *or* cornflower blue; **cyanescens** (part. B) becoming blue; **cyan-, cyano-** (in Gk comp.) blue
- cyanobacterium** (noun n. 2) cyanobacterium
- cyanobiont** cyanobion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti-*)
- cyath-** (in Gk & Lat. comp.) cup-; **cyathiformis** (adj. B) cup-shaped

**cyathium** (noun n. 2) cyathium  
**cyclus** (adj. A) coiled into a circle; **cyclicalis** (adj. B) rolled up circularly;  
**cyclo-** (in Gk comp.) circular; **-cyclus** (adj. A, in Lat. & Gk comp.)  
 whorled  
**cygneus** (adj. A) curved like neck of swan  
**cylinder** cylindrus (noun m. 2); **cylindrical** cylindraceus, cylindricus,  
 cylindratus (all adj. A); **cylindrically** cylindrice (adv.)  
**cymba** (noun f. 1) woody spathe  
**cymbiformis** (adj. B) boat-shaped  
**cyme** cyma (noun f. 1); **cymose** cymosus (adj. A)  
**cyphella** (noun f. 1) cyphella  
**cypsela** cypsela (noun f. 1)  
**cyst** cysta (noun f. 1); (in Gk comp.) cysto-, -cystis (noun f. 3)  
**cystidiole** cystidiola (noun f. 1)  
**cystidium** cystidium (noun n. 2), setula (noun f. 1)  
**cystocarp** cystocarpium (noun n. 2)  
**cystolith** cystolithus (noun m. 2), furunculus (noun m. 2)  
**cystosorus** (noun m. 2) cystosorus  
**cystospore** cystospora (noun f. 1)  
**cyto-** (in Gk comp.) relating to the cell; **cytologia** (noun f. 1) cytology;  
**cytoplasma** (noun f. 3) cytoplasm

## D

**dacryoideus** (adj. A) tear-*or* pear-shaped, dacryoid  
**dactyl** dactylus (noun m. 2); **dactylinus**, **dactyloideus** (both adj. A) divided  
 into finger-like structures; **dactyl-** (in Gk & Lat. comp.) finger-  
**dagger-shaped** pugioniformis (adj. B)  
**damage** laesio (noun f. 3); **damaged** laesus (adj. A)  
**damp** humectus, humidus, udus (all adj. A), (in Gk comp.) hygro-;  
**dampened** humectatus, humefactus (both part. A)  
**dark** [colour] atratus (part. A); **dark** [gloomy, shaded] tenebrosus (adj. A);  
**darkened** fuscatus (adj. A); **darkening** atrans, fuscans (both adj. B);  
**dark-** (in Lat. comp.) atri-, atro-, (in Gk comp.) phae-, phaeo-; **very**  
**dark** (in Gk comp.) mel-, mela-, melano-  
**dasy-** (in Gk comp.) shaggy

- data** (noun n. 2, pl.) data [sing. **datum**]  
**date-coloured** spadiceus (ad. A)  
**datus** (part. A) given  
**dauciformis** (adj. B) carrot-shaped; **daucinus** (adj. A) carrot-red  
**daughter** filia (noun f. 1); **daughter cell** cellula (noun f. 1) filialis (adj. B)  
**day** dies (noun m. 5); **of day-time** diurnus (adj. A); **every day**,  
**daily** quotidianus (adj. A)  
**de** (prep. + Ablative) about, concerning  
**de-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) downwards, outwards  
**dead** mortuus, emortuus, defunctus (all part. A); (in Gk comp.) necro-  
**deadly** funestus (adj. A), lethalis (adj. B)  
**dealbatus** (part. A) covered with white powder  
**debilis** (adj. B) weak  
**deca-** (in Gk comp.) ten-  
**decalvatus** (adj. A) become glabrous  
**decay** caries (noun f. 3); **decayed** cariosus (adj. A), putrefactus (part. A);  
**decaying** putrescens (part. B)  
**deceased** mortuus, defunctus, emortuus (all part. A)  
**decem** (num. adj. indecl.) ten; **decem-** (in Lat. comp.) ten-  
**deceptive** fallax (adj. B)  
**decidedly** valde, perspicue (both adv.)  
**deciduous** deciduus, caducus (both adj. A)  
**decies**, **decies** (num. adv.) ten times, tenfold  
**decimus** (ord. num., adj. A) tenth  
**decipiens** (part. B) deceiving [*used of a taxon closely resembling another*]  
**declinatus** (part. A) bent or curved downwards or forwards  
**declivis** (adj. B) sloping downwards; **declivitas** (noun f. 3) slope  
**declivituber** (noun n. 2) dropper, sinker [*in orchids, tulips etc.*]  
**decolor** (adj. B) faded [see p. 00]  
**decomposed** cariosus (adj. A), putrefactus (part. A), putridus (adj. A)  
**decorated** ornatus, decoratus (both part. A)  
**decorticans** (part. B) with bark peeling off; **decorticatus** (part. A) with bark  
peeled off; lacking cortex  
**decrescens** (part. B) decreasing, diminishing

- decumbens** (part. B) decumbent, prostrate with the tip turned upwards  
**decurrent** decurrens (part. B), decursivus (adj. A)  
**decurved** decurvus, decurvatus (both adj. A)  
**decussatus** (adj. A) decussate  
**deep** profundus (adj. A); **deeply** alte, penitus, profunde (all adv.), [*of colours*] saturate (adv.)  
**deest** (verb 1st pers. sing. ind. act.) it is lacking  
**defective** defectivus, imperfectus, mancus (all adj. A)  
**deficiens** (part. B) lacking, wanting  
**definite** [*Eng.*] certus (adj. A)  
**definite** (adv.) definitely, precisely; **definitus** (part. A) bounded, definite  
**definite in outline or number** determinatus (part. A)  
**deflexus** (part. A) deflected, turned downwards  
**defloratus** (adj. A) having flowers fallen  
**defoliatu**s (adj. A) having leaves fallen; **defoliatio** (noun f. 3) leaf-fall  
**deformis** (adj. B) misshapen  
**defossus** (part. A) buried  
**defunctus** (part. A) deceased  
**dehiscence** dehiscencia (noun f. 1); **dehiscent, dehiscing** dehiscens (part. B);  
**dehiscing irregularly** ruptilis (adj. B)  
**dein, deinde** (both adv.) then, thereafter  
**deinceps** (adv.) successively  
**dejectus** (part. A) fallen [*lit. thrown down*]  
**delapsus** (part. A) fallen away [*naturally*]  
**delectus** (noun m. 4) a selection  
**delicate** subtilis, tenuis (both adj. B), tenellus (adj. A); **delicately** subtiliter (adv.)  
**delineatio** (noun f. 3) drawing; **delineatus** (part. A) drawn [*illustrated*]  
**deliquescent** (part. B) deliquescent, melting  
**deltate** deltatus (adj. A), triangularis (adj. B); **deltoid** deltoideus (adj. A)  
**dematiaceus** (adj. A) dematiaceous, darkly pigmented  
**dematoid** dematoideus (adj. A)  
**demersus** (part. A) submerged  
**deminuens** (part. B) diminishing; **deminutus** (part. A) diminished, diminutive

- demissus** (part. A) low, drooping
- demptus** (part. A) subtracted
- demum** (adv.) at length, at last
- dendr-, dendro-, -dendron** (noun n. 2) (in Gk comp.) tree; **dendriticus**, **dendroideus**, **dendromorphus** (all adj. A) tree-like
- dendrophysis** (noun f. 3) dendrophysis, irregularly branched cystidium
- denigratus** (part. A) blackened; **denigricans** (part. B) blackening
- deni** (num. adj. distr., pl.) ten each
- denique** (adv.) at length, finally
- dens** (noun m. 3) tooth, prong [see p. 00]
- dense** *densus*, *spissus* (both adj. A), *confertus* (part. A), (in Gk comp.) *pycn-*, *pycno-*; **densely** *confertim*, *spisse* (both adv.)
- dentatus** (part. A) dentate, toothed; **denticulatus** (adj. A) denticulate; **denti-** (in Lat. comp.) tooth-
- denudatus** (part. A) denuded, stripped
- denuo** (adv.) again
- deorsum** (adv.) downwards
- departing** *abiens* (part. B)
- depauperatus** (adj. A) depauperate, reduced
- dependens** (part. B), **dependulus** (adj. A) hanging, suspended
- depending** *secundum* (prep. + Accusative)
- depictus** (part. A) painted
- deplanatus** (part. A) levelled
- depression** *depressio* (noun f. 3); **covered with depressions** *lacunosus* (adj. A); **depression in lichen thallus** *lacuna* (noun f. 1)
- depressus** (part. A) pressed down, sunken
- depth** *altum* (noun n. 2), *altitudo* (noun f. 3), *profunditas* (noun f. 3)
- depulsus** (part. A) driven away, dislodged, expelled
- derasus** (part. A) smoothed *or* shaved off
- derived from** *oriundus* (ger. adj. A)
- derma** (noun n. 3) skin; **dermato-** (in Gk. comp.) skin-
- dermatocystidium** *dermatocystidium* (noun n. 2)
- descaled** *desquamatus* (part. A)
- descended from** *ortus* (part. A), *oriundus* (adj. A + ab)



- descending** descendens (part. B), cernuus (adj. A), declinatus (adj. A),  
deflexus (part. A), nutans (part. B)
- described** descriptus (part. A); **description** descriptio (noun f. 3)
- desert** desertum (noun n. 2); **desert-** (in Lat. comp.) deserti-, (in Gk comp.)  
erem-
- deserticola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of desert
- desiccatus** (part. A) dried up
- designated** designatus (part. A)
- desinens** (part. B) ending, stopping
- desma** (in Gk comp.) either noun n. 3, band, or noun f. 1, bundle
- desquamatus** (part. A) descaled, peeled off
- destitutus** (part. A) lacking
- desunt** (verb, 3rd pers. pl., pres.) they are lacking
- desuper** (adv.) from above
- det.** *see* **determinavit**
- detached** separatus (part. A)
- detectus** (part. A) discovered
- detergendus** (ger. adj. A) easily removed
- determinatus** (part. A) definite in outline *or* number
- determinavit** (verb, 3rd pers. sing. act. perf.; abbreviation **det.**) he *or* she  
determined [*identified*]
- detersile** detersilis (adj. B) [*of a villous covering that can be removed so that  
the surface becomes bare*]
- detersus** (part. A) wiped clean
- detrusus** (part. A) pushed down *or* into
- deuter-** (in Gk comp.) second
- deuteroconidium** deuteroconidium (noun n. 2)
- developed** evolutus, effectus (both part. A)
- devexus** (adj. A) steep, sloping
- devoid of** carens (part. B), cassus (adj. A + Genitive or Ablative), expers  
(adj. B + Genitive or Ablative)
- dewy** roridus (adj. A)
- dexter** (adj. A) to the right, on the right-hand side
- dextrinoideus** (adj. A) staining yellowish *or* reddish-brown in iodine
- dextrorse** antihelice (adv.)

**dextrose** dextrosum (noun n. 2)

**di-** (in Gk comp.) two-

**di-, dis-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) away from, between

**dia-** (pref. in Gk comp.) across, through

**diagnosis** diagnosis (noun f. 3); **diagnostic** diagnosticus (adj. A)

**diagonally** diagonaliter (adv.)

**diallagous** [*changing from one colour to another and back*] diallagus (adj. A)

**dialy-** (in Gk comp.) separated

**diameter** diameter (noun m. 2)

**diaphanus** (adj. A) diaphanous, colourless and almost transparent

**diaphragm** diaphragma (noun n. 3)

**diarthrodactylus** (adj. A) with each ultimate ray 2-celled [*in Charophyta*]

**diaspore** (noun f. 1) diaspore

**diatom** diatoma (noun f. 1)

**dibrachiatus** (adj. A) 2-branched (hairs)

**dicha-, dicho-** (pref. in Gk comp.) in two

**dichasium** dichasium (noun n. 2)

**dichotomus** (adj. A) dichotomous; **dichotome** (adv.) dichotomously

**diclinus** (adj. A) with antheridium and oogonium on different hyphae

**dictyo-** (in Gk comp.) net-

**dictyospora** (noun f. 1) dictyospore

**dictyostela** (noun f. 1) dictyostele

**didymospora** (noun f. 1) didymospore

**didymus** (adj. A) didymous, in pairs; [*in mycology*] 2-celled

**didynamus** (adj. A) didynamous

**dies** (noun m. 5) day

**different** dissimilis (adj. B + Dative or Genitive), diversus (part. A), (in Gk comp.) hetero-; **differing from** ahorrens, differens, discrepans, divergens (all part. B); **differently** aliter (adv.), alio modo (adv. phrase)

**differt** (verb 3rd pers. sing. pres.) it differs (from) [see p. 00]

**difficult** difficilis (adj. B), dys- (pref. in Gk comp.); **difficulty, with** aegre, difficile, difficiliter, difficulter (all adv.)

**diffluens** (part. B) dissolving

**difformis** (adj. B) irregularly/unevenly/differently formed

**diffRACTUS** (part. A) broken in pieces, shattered

- diffusus** (part. A) diffuse
- digestus** (part. A) arranged in order
- digitatus** (adj. A) digitate
- digitiformis** (adj. B) finger-like
- dilabens** (part. B) falling away
- dilatatus** (part. A) widened, expanded; **dilatatio** (noun f. 3) a swelling, widening
- dilutus** (part. A) diluted, thin, weak, light; **dilute** (adv.) slightly, weakly, faintly
- dimension** *dimensio* (noun f. 3)
- dimidiatus** (part. A) dimidiate; **dimidium** (noun n. 2) half; **dimidio** (adv.) by half; **dimidius** (adj. A) half
- diminishing** *deminuens, decrescens, imminuens, minuens* (all part. B); **diminished** *diminutus* (part. A)
- diminutus** (part. A) diminished
- dimissus** (part. A) discharged
- dimiticus** (adj. A) dimitic, having two kinds of hyphae
- dimorphus** (adj. A) having two forms
- dingy** *sordidus* (adj. A)
- dioecious, dioicous** *dioecius* (adj. A); [*in bryology*] *dioicus* (adj. A); **gynodioecious** *gynodioecius* (adj. A)
- diplecolobeus** (adj. A) with cotyledons incurved and twice folded transversely
- diplo-** (in Gk comp.) doubly-
- diploid** *diploideus* (adj. A)
- diplolepidus** (adj. A) *diplolepidous*, with two rows of teeth
- direction** *cursus* (noun m. 4); *directio* (noun f. 3); **in all directions** *quaquaversum* (adv.); **of no particular direction, in several directions** *vagus* (adj. A)
- directus** (part. A) going straight *or* direct
- disappearing** *evanescens* (part. B), *evanidus* (adj. A)
- disc** *discus* (noun m. 2); **disc-like** *disciformis* (adj. B), *discoideus* (adj. A), *discoidalis* (adj. B); **disc floret** *flosculus* (noun m. 2) *disci* (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *flosculus* is declined)
- discedens** (part. B) separating, dividing
- discernible** *distinguibilis* (adj. B)

- discharged** dimissus, emissus (both part. A); **discharging** emittens (part. B)
- disciformis** (adj. B), **discoideus** (adj. A), **discoidalis** (adj. B) disc-like
- discocarp** discocarpus (noun m. 2)
- discolith** discolithus (noun m. 2)
- discolor** (adj. B) of a different colour [see p. 00]
- discovered** detectus, inventus (both part. A)
- discrepans** (part. B) differing from
- discretus** (part. A) separated, set apart; **discretim** (adv.) separately
- disease** morbus (noun m. 2); **diseased** aeger, aegrotus, morbidus, morbosus (all adj. A)
- dish-shaped** patelliformis (adj. B)
- disintegrating** fatiscens (part. B)
- disjunctus** (part. A) separate, distinct; **disjuncte**, **disjunctim** (both adv.) separately
- dislodged** depulsus (part. A)
- disordered** asymmetricus, inordinatus (both adj. A); **disorderly** inordinate, inordinatim, inordinaliter (all adv.)
- dispar** (adj. B) unlike, unequal
- disparatus** (part. A) separated
- disperse**, **dispersim** (both adv.) dispersedly, here and there; **dispersio** (noun f. 3) dispersion, scattering; **dispersus** (part. A) scattered
- dispersing** spargens (part. B)
- displaying** ostendens, praebens (both part. B)
- displicatus** (part. A) scattered
- dispora** (noun f. 1) one of the spores from a 2-spored basidium
- dispositus** (part. A) arranged, grouped; **dispositio** (noun f. 3) arrangement
- disrumpens** (part. B) breaking off, bursting; **disruptus** (part. A) broken off
- dissectus** (part. A) dissected, deeply divided
- dissepimentum** (noun n. 2) dissepiment, partition
- dissiliens** (part. B) bursting elastically
- dissimilis** (adj. B + Dative or Genitive) different, dissimilar
- dissitus** (adj. A) well-spaced, scattered; **dissiti-** (in Lat. comp.) remote, apart
- dissocians** (part. B) dissociating
- dissolutus** (part. A) dissolved

- dissolving** diffluens, dissolvens (both part. B)
- distalis** (adj. B) distal; **distaliter** (adv.) distally
- distant** distans (part. B), semotus (part. A)
- distentus** (part. A) distended
- distichus** (adj. A) distichous
- distinct** disjunctus (part. A), distinctus (part. A), [*on its own*] proprius (adj. A); **distinctly** plane (adv.)
- distinguendus** (ger. of verb *distinguo*, adj. A) it must be distinguished (used in diagnoses)
- distinguililis** (adj. B) discernible, distinguishable
- distributed** distributus (part. A); **distribution** distributio (noun f. 3)
- district** ager (noun m. 2)
- distromaticus** (adj. A) bistratose
- disturbed** turbatus (part. A)
- distylus** (adj. A) distylous
- ditch** fossa (noun f. 1), scrobis (noun m. 3)
- dithecate** dithecatus (adj. A)
- diu** (adv.) a long time; **diuscule**, **diutule** (both adv.) a little while; **diutius** (adv.) a very long time; **diutinus**, **diuturnus** (both adj. A) long-lasting
- diurnus** (adj. A) of day-time
- divaricatus** (part. A) divaricate
- divergens** (part. B) diverging, differing from
- diversus** (part. A) different; **diverse** (adv.) differently, diversely; **diversi-** (in Lat. comp.) diverse, varied
- dives** (adj. B) plentiful, rich
- divided** divisus (part. A); **dividing** discedens, dividens (both part. B);  
**deeply divided** dissectus (part. A); **divisible** partibilis (adj. B);  
**division** divisio (noun f. 3); **without divisions** inarticulatus (adj. A)
- divulgatus** (part. A) widespread
- divulsus** (part. A) torn apart
- dodrans** (noun m. 3) three-quarters
- dolabriformis** (adj. B) dolabriform
- dolich-**, **dolicho-** (in Gk comp.) long-
- doliiformis** (adj. B) barrel-shaped
- domatium** (noun n. 2) domatium

- dome** tholus (noun m. 2); **dome-shaped** tholiformis (adj. B)
- dominans** (part. B) dominant
- donans** (part. A) contributing, giving; **donatus** (part. A) given
- donec** (adv.) while, until
- dormiens** (part. B) sleeping, resting
- dorsal** dorsalis, dorsualis (both adj. B), (in Gk comp.) noto-;  
**dorsally** dorsaliter (adv.); **dorsifixed** dorsifixus (adj. A)
- dorsiventralis** (adj. B) dorsiventral
- dorsum** (noun n. 2) the back, abaxial side
- dot** punctum (noun n. 2); **dotted** punctatus, stictus (both adj. A), (in Gk comp.) stict-, sticto-; **dot-like** punctiformis (adj. B); **dotting** punctatio (noun f. 3); **not dotted** impunctatus (part. A)
- double** duplex (adj. B), [*as in double flower*] multiplex (adj. B);  
**doubled** duplicatus, geminatus (both adj. A); **doubly** duplo (adv.);  
**doubly-** (in Lat. comp.) duplicato-, (in Gk comp.) diplo-
- doubtful** ambiguus, dubius, incertus (all adj. A); **doubtfully** dubie (adv.);  
**without doubt** sine dubio; **doubt** dubitatio (noun f. 3)
- downward** deorsum (adv.); de- (pref. in Lat. comp.); ap-, apo-, cato- (pref. in Gk comp.)
- downy** pubescens (part. B), pubens (adj. B)
- doxa** (noun f. 1), **-doxus** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) glory, splendour
- dragging** trahens (part. B)
- drawing** delineatio (noun f. 3); **drawn** [*illustrated*] delineatus (part. A)
- drawn out** extensus, productus, extractus (all part. A)
- dredged** subductus, prolatus (both part. A)
- drepan-** (in Gk comp.) curved like a sickle
- dried** exsiccatus, desiccatus, siccatus, arefactus (all part. A); **dried up** desiccatus (part. A)
- drip tip** apex stillans (noun m. 3 + part. B)
- driven** [*pushed*] away depulsus (part. A)
- drooping** cernuus (adj. A), demissus (part. A)
- drop** gutta (noun f. 1); **droplet** guttula (noun f. 1)
- dropper** [*also sinker, in orchids, tulips etc.*] declivituber (noun n. 2)
- dropping** (early) caducus (adj. A)
- drum-shaped** tympaniformis (adj. B)

- drupaceus** (adj. A) drupaceous, drupe-like; **drupa** (noun f. 1) drupe;  
**drupeola** (noun f. 1) drupelet
- dry** [*habitat*] aridus, [*object*] siccus (both adj. A); **becoming dry** arescens  
(part. B)
- dubius** (adj. A) doubtful; **dubie** (adv.) doubtfully; **dubitatio** (noun f. 3)  
doubt; **sine dubio** without doubt
- duct** vas (noun n. 3)
- dulcis** (adj. B) sweet, pleasant, [*of water*] fresh
- dull** hebes (adj. B), obscure (adv.); **dull-coloured** [*sad*] tristis (adj. B), [*dusky*]  
obscurus (adj. A), [*dingy*] sordidus (adj. A)
- dum** (adv.) while, now
- dumalis** (adj. B) bushy; **dumosus** (adj. A) of bushy habit; **dumus**  
(noun m. 2) thorn-bush; **dumetum** (noun n. 2) thorn scrub, thicket
- dumtaxat** (adv.) exactly
- dune** thinium (noun n. 2)
- dung** stercus (noun n. 3), fimus (noun m. 2); **dung-loving** [*growing on dung*]  
coprophilus (adj. A), fomicola (noun c. 1); **pertaining to dung**  
stercorarius (adj. A), (in Lat. comp.) fimi-, sterc-, sterco-, (in Gk comp.)  
apopato-, copro-, ontho-, scato-, scybal-; **stinking like dung**  
stercoreus (adj. A)
- duo** (adj. num.) two [see p. 00]
- duplex** (adj. B) double; **uplicatus** (adj. A) doubled; **duplo** (adv.) doubly;  
**uplicato-** (in Lat. comp.) doubly
- duration** duratio (noun f. 3), longiturnitas (noun f. 3)
- during** per (prep. + Accusative), [*at the time of*] tempore (noun. n. 3,  
Ablative sing. + Genitive), [*period of time*] inter (prep. + Accusative)
- duritia** (noun f. 1) hardness
- durus** (adj. A) hard; **duriusculus** (adj. A) somewhat hard
- dusky** furvus, obscurus (both adj. A)
- dwarf** nanus, pumilus, pygmaeus (all adj. A); **dwarf** (in Gk comp.) nan-,  
nann-, nan-, nanno-
- dweller** -cola (suff. in comp., treated as noun in app. & of common gender,  
i.e. m., f. or n., so, regardless of the gender of a generic name, is declined  
like *agricola* [see p. 00]); (in Gk comp.) -geton (noun m. 3)
- dying off** emoriens (part. B)
- dys-** (pref. in Gk comp.) bad, difficult

## E

**e** (prep. + Ablative) from, out of [= **ex**]

**e-** (pref. in Lat. comp. but not before a vowel, *h*, *t* and *q*, rarely before *p*, *s*, when **ex-** is used) without, lacking

**ea** (determ. pron., f.) she [see p. 00]

**each** [*of two*] uterque (pron., m.), utraque (f.), utrumque (n); **each** [*of more than two*] unusquisque (compar. pron., m), unaquaeque (f.) unumquidque (n.); **each and every** [= *all*] omnis (adj. B); **on/in each** in quoque/quaque (prep., prep. + noun in Ablative); **each, everyone** quisque (pron. m.), quaeque (f.), quodque (n.)

**eadem** (def. pron. f.) the same [see p. 00]

**ear** auricula (noun f. 1), [*of cereal*] spica (noun f. 1); **eared** auriculatus (adj. A); **ear-shaped** auriformis (adj. A)

**early** praecox (adj. A), mature (adv.)

**earth** [*soil*] humus (noun f. 2), solum (noun n. 2), terra (noun f. 1)

**easily** facile (adv.); **easy** facilis (adj. B)

**east** oriens (noun m. 3); **eastern** orientalis (adj. B)

**eaten away** exesus (part. B)

**ebeneus** (adj. A) ebony black

**eburneus** (adj. A) ivory [*colour*]

**ecarinatus** (adj. A) without a keel

**eccentricus** [**excentricus**] (adj. A) eccentric [*off-centre*]

**echinatus** (adj. A) bristly, echinate; **echinulatus** (adj. A) echinulate

**eciliatus** (adj. A) without cilia

**ecorticatus** (adj. A) without bark, without cortex

**ect-, ecto-** (pref. in Gk comp.) on the outside, outwards

**ectoascus** (noun m. 2) ectoascus

**ectomycorrhiza** (noun f. 1) ectomycorrhiza

**ectophragma** (noun n. 3) ectophragm

**ectosporium** (noun n. 2) ectosporium, hardly visible spore wall outside the perisporium

**ectostroma** (noun n. 3) ectostroma

**ectotheca** (noun f. 1) ectotheca

**ectotunica** (noun f. 1) outer wall of bitunicate ascus



- edens** (part. B) bringing *or* putting forth
- edentatus** (adj. A) without teeth
- edge** [*e.g. of a leaf, field*] **margo** (noun m. or f. 3)
- edge** [*sharp*] **acies** (noun f. 5); **two-edged** **anceps** (adj. B), **ancipitius** (adj. A)
- edible** **edibilis**, **edulis**, **comestibilis** (all adj. B), **esculentus** (adj. A)
- eel-like** **anguilliformis** (adj. B)
- effaced** **obliteratus** (part. A)
- effectus** (part. A) developed, completed
- efferens** (part. B) bringing forth
- efficiens** (part. B) causing, effecting, presenting, making
- effiguratus** (adj. A) without definite form or figure
- efflorescentia** (noun f. 1) period of opening of flower
- effractus** (part. A) broken off
- effusus** (part. A) widely spreading, straggling [*in habit*], indeterminate
- egg** **ovum** (noun n. 2); **egg-** (in Lat. comp.) **ovi-**
- egg-yolk yellow** **vitellinus** (adj. A)
- eglandulosus**, **eglandulatus** (both adj. A) non-glandular, without glands
- egrediens** (part. B) coming forth
- egregius** (adj. A) excellent; **egregie** (adv.) excellently
- eguttulatus** (adj. A) lacking oil-like globules or guttules
- eight** **octo** (num. adj. indecl.); **eighth** **octavus** (ord. num., adj. A); **eight each** **octoni** (num. adj. distr. pl.) [see p. 00]; **eight times** **octies**, **octiens** (both num. adv.); **eight-** (in Lat. & Gk comp.) **octo-**
- either** **alteruter** (adj. A, m.), **alterutra** (f.), **alterutrum** (n.); **either ... or** **vel ... vel**
- ejected** **ejectus**, **expulsus** (both part. A)
- ejectosome** **ejectosoma** (noun n. 3)
- ejusdem** (pron., Genitive) of the same
- elaboratus** (part. A) elaborate
- elaosome** **elaiosoma** (noun n. 3)
- elapho-** (in Gk comp.) **fawn**
- elasticus** (adj. A) elastic
- elater** **elater** (noun m. 3)
- elatus** (adj. A) tall

- elegans** (adj. B) elegant [see p. 00]; **elegant** (adv.) elegantly
- element** [*a part of something*] membrum (noun n. 2)
- eleuther-** (in Gk comp.) free
- elevated** elevatus (part. A); **elevation** elevatio (noun f. 3)
- eleventh** undecimus (adj. A); **eleven times** undeciens, undecies (both adv.)
- eligulatus** (adj. A) eligulate, without a ligule
- elimbatus** (adj. A) without differentiated marginal cells
- ellipsoid** ellipsoideus (adj. A), ellipsoidalis (adj. B)
- elliptic** ellipticus (adj. A)
- ellus** (Lat. suff., adj. A) used to form a diminutive, *in colour* a pale tint
- elongated** elongatus (adj. A), productus, prolatus (both part. A)
- elsewhere** alibi (adv.); **from elsewhere** alicunde (adv.)
- elytron** (in Gk comp.) a covering
- em-** (before *b* and *p*), **en-** (pref. in Gk comp.) within, in
- emarcidus** (adj. A) withered
- emarginatus** (part. A) emarginate, notched
- emasculated** castratus (adj. A)
- embracing** amplectens, compectens (part. B), fovens (part. B)
- embryo** (noun m. 3) embryo; **embryonalis** (adj. B) pertaining to an embryo;  
**embryonatus** (adj. A) having an embryo
- embryotega** (noun f. 1) embryotega
- emendatus** (part. A) corrected; **emendatio** (noun f. 3) a correction, amendment
- emerald-green** smaragdinus (adj. A)
- emergens** (part. B) emerging
- emersus** (part. A) raised up, brought forth
- emeticus** (adj. A) emetic
- eminens** (part. B) standing out, eminent; **eminentia** (noun f. 1) projection, protuberance
- emissus** (part. A) discharged; **emittens** (part. B) discharging
- emoriens** (part. B) dying off
- emortuus** (part. B) dead
- empty** cassus (adj. A + Genitive or Ablative), inanis (adj. B); *also* cavus (adj. A) [*hollow*], evacuatus (part. A) [*emptied*]; **empty space** vacuus (noun n. 2)

- emulating** aemulans (part. B), aemulus (adj. A)
- emulsivus** (adj. A) milk-like in consistency
- en-, em-** (before *b* and *p*) (pref. in Gk comp.) within, in
- enantio-** (in Gk comp.) opposite
- enascens** (part. B) arising from
- enatus** (part. A) issuing from
- encircled** cinctus (part. A), circumdatus (part. A); **encircling** amplexus (adj. A), cingens (part. B), circumdans (part. B)
- enclosed** inclusus (part. A); **enclosing** includens (part. B)
- encrusted** incrustatus (part. A); **encrusting** incrustans (part. B)
- encysted** incystatus (adj. A)
- end** extremum (noun n. 2), extremitas (noun f. 3), finis (noun f. 3);  
**ending** desinens (part. B); **ending in** desinens (part. B, with *in* + Accusative), terminatus (part. B, with *in* + Accusative);  
**ended** terminatus (part. A, + Ablative); **in the end** [finally] demum, tandem (both adv.)
- end-, endo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) within, inside
- endemic** endemicus (adj. A)
- endexine** endexinium (noun n. 2)
- endo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) within, inside
- endobasidium** endobasidium (noun n. 2)
- endocarpus** (adj. A) with the mature hymenium covered
- endoconidium** endoconidium (noun n. 2)
- endogenous** (adj. A) endogenous
- endolithicus** (adj. A) endolithic, growing within rock
- endomycorrhiza** (noun f. 1) endomycorrhiza
- endoparasitic** endoparasiticus (adj. A)
- endoperidium** (noun n. 2) endoperidium
- endophloeodes** (adj. C), **endophloeodicus** (adj. A) endophloeodal, growing in cork layer of bark
- endophragm** endophragma (noun n. 3)
- endophyticus** (adj. A) endophytic, growing within tissue
- endosperm** endospermium (noun n. 2)
- endospore** endosporium (noun n. 2)
- endosubstraticus** (adj. A) endosubstratic, growing within the substrate

- endosymbiont** endosymbion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti*-)  
**endotheca** (noun f. 1) endotheca  
**endothecium** endothecium (noun n. 2)  
**endozoicus** (adj. A) endozoic, growing within an animal; **endozoophyticus**  
 (adj. A) growing within *or* among zoophytes  
**enecans** (part. B) killing  
**enervis** (adj. B), **enervius** (adj. A) without nerves  
**enfolding** complectens, fovens (both part. B)  
**engraved** sculptus, insculptus, sculpturatus (all part. A)  
**enim** (conj.) truly, for  
**enlarged** ampliatus (part. A), [*made wider*] amplificatus (part. A), [*enlarged by growth*] auctus (part. A), [*spread out*] dilatatus (part. A), [*growing with age*] accrescens (part. B); **enlarging** excrescens (part. B) [*usu. abnormally*]; **enlargement** amplificatio (noun f. 3); **abnormally enlarged in places** varicosus (adj. A)  
**ennea-** (in Gk comp.) nine-  
**enodis** (adj. B) without nodes  
**ensatus** (adj. A), **ensiformis** (adj. B) sword-shaped; **ensifolius**  
 (adj. A) sword-leaved  
**-ensis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with noun as stem) indicates place of origin  
**ensnaring** illaquens (part. B)  
**entangled** contortuplicatus (adj. A), implexus, implicatus, implicitus, intricatus (all part. A)  
**entering** ingrediens, iniens (both part. B)  
**entire** integer (adj. A) [see p. 00], (in Lat. comp.) integri-; **entirely** omnino (adv.)  
**ento-** (pref. in Gk comp.) within, inside  
**entomo-** (in Gk comp.) insect-  
**entwined** nexus (part. A)  
**enumerated** enumeratus, noncupatus (both part. A);  
**enumeration** enumeratio, recensio (both noun f. 3)  
**envelope** involucrum (noun n. 2); **enveloped** involutus (part. A);  
**enveloping** involvens (part. B)  
**ephemeral** ephemerus (adj. A), fugax (adj. B)  
**ephippioideus, ephippiomorphus** (both adj. A) saddle-shaped  
**epi-** (pref. in Gk comp.) upon, over, added to (**ep-** before vowels, *h*)

- epicalyx** epicalyx (noun m. 3) [see p. 00], calyculus (noun m. 2)
- epicarp** epicarpium (noun n. 2)
- epicingulum** epicingulum (noun n. 2)
- epicormicus** (adj. A) epicormic
- epicorollinus** (adj. A) inserted on corolla
- epicortex** (noun m. 3) [see p. 00] epicortex
- epicotyl** internodium (noun n. 2), epicotylum (noun n. 2);  
**epicotylous** epicotylus (adj. A)
- epicutis** epicutis (noun f. 3)
- epicyst** epicysta (noun f. 1)
- epidermis** epidermis (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **epidermal** epidermalis  
 (adj. B), epidermicus (adj. A); **beneath the epidermis** hypodermicus  
 (adj. A)
- epidermoideus** (adj. A) epidermis-like
- epigaeus** (adj. A) epigeal
- epigenus** (adj. A) epigenous
- epigynicus, epigynus** (both adj. A) epigynous
- epihymenium** (noun n. 2) upper layer of hymenium
- epilithicus** (adj. A) epilithic
- epimatium** (noun n. 2) [*in conifers esp. Podocarpaceae*] epimatium
- epipetalus** (adj. A) epipetalous
- epiphloeodes** (adj. C), **epiphloeodicus** (adj. A) growing on surface of bark or  
 wood
- epiphragm** epiphragma (noun n. 3), tympanum (noun n. 2)
- epiphyllus** (adj. A) epiphyllous
- epiphyticus** (adj. A) epiphytic
- epipsamma** (noun f. 1) epipsamma
- episepalus** (adj. A) episepalous
- episporium** (noun n. 2) epispore; **episporiatus** (adj. A) having an epispore
- epitepalus** (adj. A) epitepalous
- epithallus** (noun m. 2) epithallus; **epithallialis** (adj. B) epithallial
- epithecā** (noun f. 1) epitheca
- epithecium** (noun n. 2) epithecium
- epitunica** (noun f. 1) epitunica

**epitype** epitypus (noun m. 2)

**epivalva** (noun f. 1) epivalve

**epizootyphiticus** (adj. A) growing on zoophytes

**equal** aequalis (adj. B), aequus (adj. A), parilis (adj. B), [*very like*]

consimilis (adj. B + Dative or Genitive); (in comp.) aequi-;

**equalling** aequans (part. B + Accusative); **equally** aequae, aequaliter, pariter (all adv.); (in Gk comp.) iso-

**equal-sided** aequilaterus (adj. A)

**equator** aequator (noun m. 3); **equatorial** aequatorius (adj. A)

**equidistant** aequidistans (adj. B)

**equinus** (adj. A) pertaining to horses; **equus** (noun m. 2) horse

**equitans** (part. B) equitant

**erasus** (part. A) scraped off

**erect** erectus, arrectus (part. A), (in Gk comp.) orth-, ortho-; **almost erect** erectiusculus (adj. A)

**erecto-patens** (adj. B) spreading at angle of about 45°

**erem-** (in Gk comp.) desert-, solitary

**erga** (prep. + Accusative) in relation to, opposite to

**ergo** (adv.) accordingly, therefore

**ericetum** (noun n. 2) heath, moor

**erigens** (part. B) rising, raising itself

**erio-** (in Gk comp.) woolly-

**eroded** exesus (part. B)

**erosus** (part. A) erose

**erraticus** (adj. A) wandering to and fro

**erratum** (noun n. 2) mistake

**error** erratum (noun n. 2), error (noun m. 3); **errore** (adv.) incorrectly

**erubescens** (part. B) reddening, rose

**erumpens** (part. B) breaking forth, erumpent

**eruptio** (noun f. 3) bursting forth, eruption; **eruptione** (Ablative sing. of *eruptio*) explosively

**erythrinus** (adj. A) red; **erythro-** (in Gk comp.) red-

**escaping** evadens, elabiens (both part. B)

**-escens** (Lat. suff., part. B) indicates a process of becoming, *or* not fully reached

- esculentus** (adj. A) edible
- eseptatus** (adj. A) not septate
- esorediatus** (adj. A) esorediate
- especially** apprime, praecipue, praesertim (all adv.)
- essential** essentialis (adj. B); **essentially** admodum [*fully*], quasi [*almost*],  
revera [*in fact*] (all adv.)
- estriatus** (adj. A) not striate
- estris** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with noun as stem) indicates place of growth
- estuary** aestuarium (noun n. 2)
- et** (conj.) and
- etiam** (conj.) and also; **etiam atque etiam** again and again
- etsi** (conj.) although
- etum** (Lat. suff., noun n. 2) indicates domination by a particular plant,  
e.g. pinetum
- eu-** (pref. in Gk comp.) well, completely
- eucarpic** eucarpicus (adj. A)
- euphyllum** (noun n. 2) true leaf; **euphyллоideus** (adj. A) resembling foliage  
leaves
- eus** (Lat. suff, adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates resemblance in quality
- eus** (Gk suff, adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates belonging
- eusporangiatu**s (adj. A) eusporangiate
- eutopicu**s (adj. A) twining from left to right
- evacuatus** (part. A) emptied
- evadens** (part. B) escaping, going out
- evanescens** (part. B), **evanidus** (adj. A) disappearing; **evanidinervi**us (adj. A)  
having nerves that disappear before reaching the margin
- evelatus** (adj. A) without a veil
- even** (adv.) etiam (adv.)
- even** [*uniform*] aequus (adj. A), [*made even*] aequatus (part. A), [*flat*] planus  
(adj. A); (in comp.) aequi-; **evenly** aequaliter, aequabiliter (both adv.)
- evening** vesper (noun m. 2 or 3); **of evening** vespertinus (adj. A)
- evenly** aequaliter, aequabiliter (both adv.)
- eventually** demum, denique, tandem (all adv.)
- ever** [*at any time*] aliquando (adv.); [*always*] semper (adv.)
- evergreen** sempervirens (part. B)

- eversus** (part. A) everted, turned inside out
- every** omnis (adj. B), quot (adj. indecl.)
- every one** [*each*] quisque (pron. m.), quaeque (f.), quodque (n.) [see p. 00]
- everyway** quoquoversus, omnino (both adv.)
- everywhere** ubique, passim (both adv.)
- evident** evidens (adj. B), manifestus (adj. A), perspicuus (adj. A), visibilis (adj. B); **evidently** evidenter (adv.)
- evolutus** (part. A) developed
- evulgatus** (part. A) published
- ex, e** (prep. + Ablative) from, out of, away from; use *ex* before vowels, *ex* or *e* before consonants; **magna ex parte** to a great degree
- ex-** (pref., in Lat. comp. before a vowel, *h, p, q, s, t*; see **e-**) without, lacking
- exact** accuratus (part. A), exactus (part. A) [*used for numbers*]; use *diligens* for persons; **exactly** accurate, diligenter, dumtaxat (all adv.)
- exalbescens** (part. B) becoming white; **exalbidus** (adj. A) whitish
- exaltatus** (part. A) raised high, tall
- exalted** fastigatus (part. A)
- example** exemplum (noun n. 2)
- exannulatus** (adj. A) lacking an annulus
- exaratus** (part. A) furrowed, grooved, hollowed out
- exasperatus** (part. A) covered with short, hard points
- excavatus** (part. A) hollowed out
- excedens** (part. B) exceeding, rising above
- exceedingly** admodum, valde, magnopere [see p. 00], summopere (all adv.); *pel-, per-* (pref. in Lat. comp.)
- excellent** egregius, optimus (both adj. A); **excellently** egregie, optime, eximie (all adv.)
- excelsus** (part. A) high, lofty; **excelsus** (noun n. 2) a very high place
- excentricus** [*eccentricus*] (adj. A) eccentric, off-centre
- except for** praeter (prep. + Accusative); **excepting, excepted** exceptus (part. A)
- excerptus** (part. A) chosen, taken out of
- excessively** nimis, eximie (both adv.)
- exciple** excipulum (noun n. 2); **proper exciple** excipulum proprium (adj. A); **thalline exciple** excipulum thallinum (adj. A)



- excisus** (part. A) cut out
- exclusively** solum, nonnisi, omnino (all adv.)
- exclusus** (part. A) excluded
- excrescens** (part. B) growing out, enlarging [*usu. abnormally*]
- excretus** (part. A) fully grown
- excurrents** (part. B) excurrent
- excussus** (part. A) shaken off, plucked out
- exemplum** (noun n. 2) example, specimen
- exesus** (part. B) eaten away, irregularly eroded
- exfoliation** exfoliatio (noun f. 3)
- exhibiting** exhibitens, ostendens, praebens (all part. B)
- exiens** (part. B) going forth, springing up
- exiguus** (adj. A) weak, feeble
- exiliens** (part. B) springing out
- exilis** (adj. B) slender, small, thin
- eximie** (adv.) excellently, excessively
- exindusiatus** (adj. A) lacking an indusium
- exinium** (noun n. 2) exine
- exo-** (in Gk comp.) outward, outside
- exobasidialis** (adj. B) exobasidial
- exocarp** exocarpium (noun n. 2)
- exogenus** (adj. A) exogenous
- exoletus** (part. A) fully grown, mature
- exoperidium** (noun n. 2) exoperidium
- exoriens** (part. B) arising, coming out (with *ex* + Ablative); **exortus** (part. A) sprung from, arisen from
- exospore** exosporium (noun n. 2)
- exothecium** exothecium (noun n. 2)
- exotic** exoticus (adj. A)
- expanded** dilatatus (part. A)
- expansio** (noun f. 3) expansion; **expansus** (part. A) expanded, spread out
- expelled** depulsus (part. A)
- expers** (adj. B + Genitive or Ablative) without, devoid of
- explanation** explicatio (noun f. 3)

- explanatus** (part. A) flattened, outspread, explained  
**explicatio** (noun f. 3) explanation, analysis  
**exploding** *explodens* (part. B); **explosively** *eruptione* (Ablative sing. of *eruptio*)  
**exposed** *expositus* (part. A), [*open*] *apertus* (adj. A), [*bare, naked*] *nudus* (adj. A)  
**expressus** (part. A) prominent  
**expulsus** (part. A) ejected  
**exscapus** (adj. A) without a scape  
**exsculptus** (part. A) pitted with small depressions  
**exsectus** (part. A) cut out  
**exserted** *exsertus* (part. A), *protrudens* (part. B), *protrusus* (adj. A)  
**exsiccat** (part. A) dried up; **exsiccatum** (noun n. 2) a dried [*herbarium*] specimen; **exsiccata** (noun f. 1) *exsiccata*, a set of dried specimens [*usu. with labels*]  
**extans** (part. B) projecting  
**extipulate** *extipulatus*, *estipulatus* (both adj. A)  
**extructus** (part. A) constructed, put together  
**exsuccus** (adj. A) without sap or juice  
**exsudans** (part. B) exuding; **exudatum** (noun n. 2) exudate  
**exsulcus** (adj. A) without furrows  
**exurgens** (part. B) rising out of  
**extans** (part. B) jutting *or* standing out  
**extended** *extensus*, *productus*, *prolongatus*, *provectus* (all part. A);  
**extending** *extensus* (part. A); **extension** *extensio* (noun f. 3)  
**extensus** (part. A) extended, stretched out; **extense** (adv.) extensively, at length  
**exter** (adj. A) on the outside; **externus** (adj. A) outward, external; **extus** (adv.) on the outside  
**external** *externus* (adj. A)  
**extimus** (adj.) the outermost  
**extine** *extina* (noun f. 1)  
**extra** (prep. + Accusative; also pref. in Lat. comp.) beyond, besides, apart from;  
**extra** (adv.) on the outside; **extraneus** (adj. A) extraneous, strange, not related

**extractus** (part. A) drawn out

**extremely** maxime, magnopere (adv.) [see p. 00]

**extremum** (noun n. 2), **extremitas** (noun f. 3) end; **extremus** (adj. A) outermost, last, farthest; **ad extremum** (adv. phr.) finally

**extrinsecus** (adv.) outwardly, from *or* on the outside

**extrorsus** (adv.) extrorsely, towards the outside

**extrusome** extrusoma (noun n. 3)

**extrusus** (part. A) pushed out

**extus** (adv.) outside

**exudate** exudatum (noun n. 2); **exuding** exudans (part. B)

**exutus** (part. A), **exuviatus** (adj. A) cast off, shed, skinned

**eye** ocellus, oculus (both noun m. 2); (in Gk comp.) omma-, -ophthalmus (adj. A); **eye-spot** stigma (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **with naked eye** oculo nudo (adv. phr.)

## F

**fabiformis** (adj. B) bean-shaped

**fabrica** (noun. f. 1) structure; **fabricatus** (part. A) constructed

**face** superficies (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]; **facial** facialis (adj. B)

**faciens** (part. B) producing, making

**facies** (noun f. 5) general appearance

**facies** (noun f. 5) **valvaris** (adj. B), **facies frontalis** (adj. B) (decl. together) valve view

**facile** (adv.) easily; **facilis** (adj. B) easy

**facing** aspiciens, spectans (both part. B)

**fact** res (noun f. 3); **in fact** revera (adv.)

**factitius** (adj. A) artificial

**factus** (part. A) made, done, formed

**facultative** facultativus (part. A)

**faded** decolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]

**faecal** faecalis (adj. B); **faeces** faeces (noun f. 3, pl.)

**faint** dilutus (part. A); **faintly** dilute (adv.)

**fairly** satis (adv.)

**falcatus** (adj. A) falcate; **falciformis** (adj. B) sickle-shaped

- fall** [*shedding*] lapsus (noun m. 4); **fallen** dejectus (part. A), caducus (adj. A); **fallen away** [*naturally*] delapsus (part. A); **falling** cadens (part. B); **falling away** dilabens (part. B)
- fallax** (adj. B) deceptive, fallacious
- false** falsus, nothus (both adj. A); **falsely** false (adv.); **false-** (in Gk comp.) noth-, notho-, pseudo-
- family** familia (noun f. 1); **to form name of a family** add suff. *-aceae* (Nominative pl., adj. A) to genitive stem of name of the type genus, or the full name if the genitive cannot be determined
- fan-shaped** flabellatus (adj. A), flabelliformis (adj. B)
- far off** procul, longe, longinquo (all adv.); **as far as** tenus (prep. + Ablative)
- farciminiformis** (adj. B) sausage-shaped
- farctus** (part. A) filled, stuffed
- fariam** (adv., in Lat. comp.) -ranked, in a row
- farina** (noun f. 1) powdery covering; **farinaceous** (adj. A) starchy; **farinosus** (adj. A) covered in powder, mealy; [*of soredia*] like grains of flour
- farius** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -ranked
- farthest** ultimus (adj. A), extremus (adj. A)
- fartilis** (adj. B) stuffed, full
- fasciarius** (adj. A) band-shaped; **fasciatus** (adj. A) banded, fasciated
- fascicle** fasciculus (noun m. 2)
- fascis** (noun m. 3) bundle, **fasciculus** (noun m. 2) fascicle, little bundle; **fasciculatus** (adj. A) clustered
- fastened to** affixus (part. A)
- fastigatus** (part. A) exalted
- fastigate** fastigiatus (adj. A); **fastigiatly** scoparie (adv.)
- fat** [*adj.*] pinguis (adj. B), obesus (adj. A)
- fat** [*noun*] sebum (noun n. 2), pingue (noun n. 3)
- fatal** funestus (adj. A)
- fathom** orgya (noun f. 1), hexapodium (noun n. 2)
- fatiscens** (part. B) crumbling, disintegrating
- fauces** (noun f. 3, pl.) [*classical Lat.*] throat, gorge [*including landform*]
- faux** (noun f. 3, sing.) [*botanical Lat.*] throat or gorge of calyx or corolla
- faveolatus** (adj. A) finely honeycombed; **favosus** (adj. A) honeycombed
- fawn** hinnuleus (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) elapho-

- feathery** plumosus (adj. A)  
**feature** proprietas (noun f. 3)  
**fecundatio** (noun f. 3) fertilisation; **fecundus** (adj. A) fertile, fruitful  
**feeble** exiguus (adj. A)  
**felted** coactus (part. A), panniformis (adj. B), pannosus (adj. A)  
**female** femineus, foemineus (both adj. A); *or* use symbol ♀; (in Gk comp.) thely-  
**fenestra** (noun f. 1) window; **fenestratus** (adj. A), **fenestralis** (adj. B) windowed; **fenestrellatus** (adj. A) with little windows  
**-fer** (Lat. suff., adj. A) carrying, bearing  
**ferax** (adj. B) fruitful, fertile  
**fere** (adv.) about, almost  
**ferens** (part. B + Accusative) bearing, carrying  
**fermentation-causing** zymogenus (adj. A)  
**fermentatio** (noun f. 3) fermentation  
**fermentum** (noun n. 2) yeast  
**fern** filix (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **fern-like** filicinus (adj. A)  
**ferox** (adj. B) fierce  
**ferreus** (adj. A) iron  
**ferrugineus** (adj. A) rusty-red; **ferruginescens** (part. B) becoming rusty-red  
**ferrum** (noun n. 2) iron  
**fertile** fertilis (adj. B), fecundus (adj. A), foecundus (adj. A)  
**fertilisation** fecundatio (noun f. 3)  
**ferus** (adj. A) wild  
**few** paucus (adj. A); **a few** aliquot (num indecl.); **very few** perpaucus (adj. A); **few-** (in Lat. comp.) pauci-, (in Gk comp.) olig-, oligo-; **fewer** (in Gk comp.) mei-, meio-  
**fibre** fibra (noun f. 1); **fibril** fibrilla (noun f. 1)  
**fibrosus** (adj. A) fibrous; **fibrillosus** (adj. A) covered in fine fibres  
**fibula** (noun f. 1) clamp-connection; **fibulatus** (adj. A) provided with clamps; **fibuliger** (adj. A) bearing clamps  
**fici-** (in Lat. comp.) relating to figs  
**ficulneus** (adj. A) of a fig tree  
**fiddle-shaped** panduratus (adj. A), panduriformis (adj. B)  
**fide** (prep.) according to

**field** ager (noun m. 2); **relating to fields** agrestis (adj. B); **relating to open fields, plains** campestris (adj. B)

**fierce** ferox (adj. B)

**fiery-red** flammeus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) pyr-, pyro-

**fifth** quintus (ord. num., adj. A)

**fig** ficus (noun f. 4, but has been m. or f. and in Declension 2 or 4 from ancient times); **fig-** (in Lat. comp.) fici-

**figura** (noun f. 1) shape; **figuratus** (part. A) of definite shape

**filament** filamentum (noun n. 2); **filamentous** byssaceus, byssinus, byssoideus (all adj. A); **relating to filament** (in Gk comp.) nemato-, -nema (noun n. 3)

**fili-** (in Lat. comp.) relating to threads

**filia** (noun f. 1) daughter

**filic-** (in Lat. comp.) relating to ferns

**filiformis** (adj. B) filiform, thread-like

**filius** (noun m. 2) son

**filix** (noun f. 3) fern [see p. 00]; **filicinus** (adj. A) fern-like;

**filled** completus, farctus, impletus, plenus, refertus, repletus (all part. A), fertilis (adj. B); **filling** complens, implens (both part. B)

**filum** (noun n. 2) thread of alga

**fimbri-** (in Lat. comp.) fimbriate-

**fimbria** (noun f. 1) fringe; **fimbriatus** (adj. A) fimbriate, fringed

**finus** (noun m. 2) dung; **finecarius** (adj. A) growing on dung; **fimicola** (adj. A) dung-loving [*growing on dung*]; **fimi-** (in Lat. comp.) pertaining to dung

**final** ultimus (adj. A); **finally** demum, denique, extremum, postremo, tandem (all adv.)

**findens** (part. B) tearing, splitting

**fine** tenuis (adj. B); **finely** subtiliter, tenuiter (both adv.)

**fingens** (part. B) representing

**finger** dactylus (noun m. 2); **finger-like** digitiformis (adj. B); **divided into finger-like structures** dactylinus, dactyloideus (both adj. A); **finger-** (in Gk & Lat. comp.) dactyl-

**finis** (noun f. 3) end, boundary

**finished** terminatus (part. A)

- firm** firmus (adj. A); **firmly** firme solide (both adv.)
- first** primus (ord. num., adj. A) [see p. 00], (in Gk comp.) proto-;  
**firstly** primitus (adv.), primo (adv.), primum (adv.)
- fish** piscis (noun m. 3); **fish-pond** piscina (noun f. 1)
- fissilis** (adj. B) easily split; **fissio** (noun f. 3) fission; **fissi-** (in Lat. comp) split-
- fissitunicatus** (adj. A) fissitunicate
- fissura** (noun f. 1) crack, crevice; **fissus** (part. A) cleft, cut half-way or less to midrib
- fissured** fissuratus (adj. A)
- fistulosus** (adj. A) fistular
- fit** [*suitable, appropriate*] aptus, aptatus (both part. A)
- fitted together** interordinatus (adj. A)
- five** quinque (num. adj. indecl.); **five each** quini (num. adj. distr. pl.); **five times** quinquens, quinquies (both num. adv.); **fifth** quintus (adj. A); **five-** (in Gk comp.) penta-
- fixed** fixus (part. A); **fixed to** affixus (part. A)
- flabellatus** (adj. A), **flabelliformis** (adj. B) fan-shaped
- flaccid** flaccidus, laxus (both adj. A)
- flagellum** (noun n. 2) flagellum; **flagellar** flagellaris (adj. B);  
**flagelliform** flagelliformis (adj. B)
- flammeus** (adj. A) flame-coloured, fiery-red
- flask-shaped** ampullaceus (adj. A), ampullaris (adj. B), ampulliformis (adj. B), lageniformis (adj. B); **flask-like bladder** ampulla (noun f. 1)
- flat** planus (adj. A); **flattened** applanatus (adj. A), explanatus (part. A), [*in one plane*] complanatus (part. A), [*laterally*] compressus (part. A);  
**flattened from above** depressus (part. A); **flattened horizontally** tabularis (adj. B); **fairly flat** planiusculus (adj. A)
- flavescens** (part. B) yellowing; **flavidus** (adj. A) pale yellow; **flavovirens** (adj. B) yellowish green; **flavus** (adj. A) paler yellow than *luteus*
- flavour** gustus (noun m. 4)
- flesh** caro (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **flesh-coloured** carneus (adj. A), incarnatus (part. A); **fleshy** carnosus, succulentus (both adj. A); **slightly fleshy** carnosulus (adj. A); **fleshy and oily** oleagineus, oleaginosus (both adj. A); **flesh-, fleshy-** (in Gk comp.) sarc-, sarco-
- flexibilis, flexilis** (both adj. B) flexible
- flexuosus** (adj. A) flexuose, zigzag; **flexus** (part. A) bent

- flimmer** mastigonema (noun n. 3)
- floating** natans, fluitans (both part. B)
- floccosus** (adj. A) floccose; [*in algae*] appearing like matted, woolly hair
- flooded** inundatus (part. A)
- floor** solum (noun n. 2)
- flora** flora (noun f. 1)
- floralis** (adj. B) relating to the flower
- florens** (part. B) flowering; **florescentia** (noun f. 1) flowering period
- floret** flosculus (noun m. 2); **disc floret** flosculus disci (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *flosculus* is declined); **ray floret** flosculus radii (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *flosculus* is declined)
- floribundus** (adj. A) flowering profusely
- floricane** floricanna (noun f. 1) [*flowering shoots in second year*]
- florifer, floriger** (both adj. A) bearing flowers; **floridus, florosus, florulentus** (all adj. A) flowering profusely
- florilegium** (noun n. 2) florilegium [*collection of paintings of flowers*]; **florula** (noun f. 1) small flora
- florus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -flowered
- flos** (noun m. 3) flower [see p. 00]; **flosculus** (noun m. 2) floret
- flour** farina (noun m. 1); **floury** farinaceus (adj. A); **covered in flour or meal** farinosus (adj. A)
- flourishing** vicens (part. B)
- flow** fluxus (noun m. 4); **flowing** profluens (part. B)
- flower** flos (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **with terminal flowers** acranthus (adj. A); **flowers fallen** defloratus (part. A); **relating to the flower** floralis (adj. B); **flowering** florens (part. B); **flowering profusely** floridus, florosus, florulentus (all adj. A); **bearing flowers** florifer, floriger (both adj. A)
- flower bud** alabastrum (noun n. 2)
- flowering time** anthesis (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **period of opening of flower** efflorescentia (noun f. 1); **having a single flowering period** hapaxanthus (adj. A); **later than the flowers** [*e.g. leaves*] hysternanthus (adj. A)
- flowing** perfluens (part. B)
- fluitans** (part. B) floating, swimming
- flumen** (noun n. 3) river, stream; **fluminalis** (adj. B), **flumineus** (adj. A) referring to rivers



- fluted** striatus (adj. A)  
**fluviaticus** (adj. A), **fluviatilis** (adj. B) pertaining to rivers  
**fluvius** (noun m. 2) river [*rarely used*]  
**fluxus** (noun m. 4) flow  
**foaming** spumeus, spumous (both adj. A)  
**focicola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of burned places  
**fodder** pabulum (noun n. 2)  
**foecundus** (adj. A) fruitful, fertile  
**foedus** (adj. A) foul; **foedatus** (part. A) fouled, stained  
**foemineus** (adj. A) female  
**foetens** (part. B), **foetidus** (adj. A), **foetulentus** (adj. A) foetid, stinking  
**fold** plica (noun f. 1); **folded** plicatus (part. A); **folded upon itself** complicatus (part. A); **having folds** (in Gk comp.) ptycho-  
**foliaceus** (adj. A) leaf-like; **folianeus** (adj. A) taking the place of a leaf;  
**foliaris** (adj. B) relating to the leaf; **foliatus** (adj. A) having leaves;  
**-foliatus, -folius** (both adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -leaved; **foliifer** (adj. A) leaf-bearing; **foliiformis** (adj. B) leaf-like; **foliosus** (adj. A) leafy, full of leaves  
**foliolum** (noun n. 2) leaflet; **-foliolatus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -leafletted  
**folium** (noun n. 2) leaf  
**follicle** folliculus (noun m. 2)  
**following** sequens (part. B), secundus (adj. A), secundum (prep. + Accusative), post (prep. + Accusative)  
**fons** (noun m. 3) spring, fountain; **fontanus** (adj. A), **fontinalis** (adj. B) growing by or in springs  
**food** cibus (noun m. 2), alimentum (noun n. 2), nutrimentum (noun n. 2), pabulum (noun n. 2); **relating to food** cibarius (adj. A)  
**foot** pes (noun m. 3)  
**for** enim (conj.), per (prep. + Accusative), pro- (pref. in Lat. comp.)  
**foramen** (noun n. 3) opening, aperture  
**foratus** (adj. A) full of holes, holed  
**ford** vadum (noun n. 2)  
**foreign** alienus, exoticus, peregrinus (all adj. A)  
**forest** sylva or silva (noun f. 1); **pertaining to forests** sylvaticus (adj. A), sylvestris (adj. B); **growing in forest** sylvicola (noun c. 1)

- fork** furca (noun f. 1); **forked** furcatus (adj. A)
- form** forma (noun f. 1), conformatio (noun f. 3); **formed** factus (part. A);  
**formed irregularly/unevenly/differently** difformis (adj. B); **having two forms** dimorphus (adj. A); **without definite form** effiguratus (adj. A)
- formans** (part. B) making
- former** [*the*] ille (dem. pron. m); **formerly** antea, olim, pridem, quondam (all adv.)
- formica** (noun f. 1) ant; **formicarium** (noun n. 2) swelling on plant inhabited by ants; **formicarius** (adj. A) pertaining to ants; **formicosus** (adj. A) full of ants; **planta formicosa** (noun f. 1 + adj.) ant plant
- formis** (adj. B, in Lat. comp.) -shaped,-like
- formosus** (adj. A) beautiful
- fornix** (noun m. 3) arch; **fornicatus** (adj. A) having an arch-like structure
- fors, forsan** (both adv.) perhaps
- fortasse** (adv.) maybe, perhaps, probably; **forte** (adv.) by accident, perhaps
- fortis** (adj. B) strong, vigorous; **fortiter** (adv.) strongly, vigorously
- fortuitus** (adj. A) accidental; **fortuito** (adv.) accidentally, at random
- forward facing** aspiciens (part. B)
- forwards** prorsum, prorsus (both adv.)
- fossa** (noun f. 1) ditch; **fossula** (noun f. 1) little furrow
- foul** foedus (adj. A); **fouled** foedatus (part. A), inquinatus (part. A)
- found** inventus, repertus (both part. A)
- foundation** fundamentum (noun n. 2)
- fountain** fons (noun m. 3)
- four** quattuor, quatuor (num. adj. indecl.); **four each** quaterni (num. adj. distr. pl.); **fourth** quartus (ord. num., adj. A); **four times** quater (num. adv.); **four-fold** quadratim (adv.), quadruplo (adv.), quadruplus (adj. A); **four-** (in Lat. comp.) quadr-, quadri-, (in Gk comp.) tetra-
- fovea** (noun f. 1) small pit; **foveatus** (adj. A) pitted; **foveolatus** (adj. A) minutely pitted
- fovens** (part. B) embracing, enfolding
- fractiflexus** (adj. A) zigzag
- fractus** (part. A) broken
- fragilis** (adj. B) fragile, brittle; **fragilitas** (noun f. 3) brittleness
- fragmentum** (noun n. 2) a fragment

- fragrans** (part. B) fragrant  
**frangens** (part. B) breaking  
**fraternus** (adj. A) closely allied  
**freckled** lentiginosus (adj. A)  
**free** liber (adj. A) [see p. 00], discretus (part. A); (in Gk comp.) apo-, chori-, eleuther-; **freely** libere (adv.), [*abundantly*] copiose (adv.); **set free** liberatus (part. A)  
**frequent** creber (adj. A), frequens (part. B); **frequently** saepe, plerumque, increbre (all adv.)  
**fresh** vivus, novus (both adj. A), [*of water*] dulcis (adj. B)  
**fretum** (noun n. 2), **fretus** (noun m. 4) strait, channel  
**friabilis** (adj. B) brittle, fragile  
**frigidarium** (noun n. 2) cool greenhouse, orangery; **frigidus** (adj. A) cold  
**fringe** fimbria (noun f. 1); **fringed** fimbriatus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) lomato-, thysano-  
**from** a, ab (prep. + Ablative, *also* pref. in Lat. comp.), ex (prep. + Ablative); (pref. in Gk comp.) ap-, apo-  
**frond** frons (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]  
**frondescencia** (noun f. 1) unfurling of leaves  
**frondosus** (adj. A) leaf-like, very leafy, [*sometimes*] broad-leaved  
**frondula** (noun f. 1) division of a pinnate frond  
**front** frons (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **in front of** ante (adv.), antice (adv.), pro- (pref. in Gk comp.); **at the front** anticus (adj. A); **in front** (pref. in Lat. comp.) prae-, (pref. in Gk comp.) proso-, prostho-  
**froth** spuma (noun f. 1); **frothy** spumeus (adj. A)  
**frozen** gelatus (adj. A), glacialis (adj. B)  
**fruticulus** (noun m. 2) single fruiting carpel  
**frutifer** (adj. A) fruit-bearing; **frutificans** (part. B) fruiting; **fructificatio** (noun f. 3) fructification [*as used by Linnaeus*]  
**fructus** (noun m. 4) fruit; **fructuosus** (adj. A) fruitful  
**frugifer** (adj. A) fruit-bearing  
**fruit** fructus (noun m. 4) [see p. 00]; **fruit-body** fructificatio (noun f. 3); **fruiting** frutificans (part. B); **fruiting inflorescence** infructescentia (noun f. 1)  
**fruit-** (in Gk comp.) carp-, carpo-; **-fruit** (in Gk comp.) -carpa (noun f. 1), -carpus (noun m. 2), carpium (noun n. 2)

- fruitful** fecundus (adj. A), foecundus (adj. A), ferax (adj. B), fructuosus (adj. A); **not fruitful** infecundus (adj. A)
- frustillum** (noun n. 2) small piece, scrap; **frustum** (noun n. 2) bit, piece
- frustule** frustulum (noun n. 2)
- frutex** (noun m. 3) bush, shrub [see p. 00]; **frutescens**, **fruticans** (both part. B) becoming shrubby, bushy; **fruticosus** (adj. A) shrubby, bushy; **fruticulus** (noun m. 2) shrublet
- fucatus** (part. A) painted, coloured
- fuchsinus** (adj. A) fuchsia pink
- fugax** (adj. B) ephemeral, fugacious
- fulciens**, **fulcrans** (both part. B) supporting; **fulcratus** (part. A) supported
- fulcrum** (noun n. 2) prop, support [*as used by Linnaeus*]
- fulgens** (part. B), **fulgidus** (adj. A) shining, brightly coloured
- fuliginous** (adj. A) sooty; **fuliginosus** (adj. A) full of soot, sooty; **fuligo** (noun f. 3) soot
- full** plenus (adj. A), repletus (part. A), farctus (part. A), fertilis (adj. B), onustus (adj. A); **full of** complanus (adj. A + Dative); praegnans (adj. B)
- full-grown** adultus (adj. A)
- fully** admodum, plene, perfecte (all adv.)
- fultoportulum** fultoportulum (noun n. 2)
- fultus** (part. A) supported
- fulvus** (adj. A) tawny; **fulvidus** (adj. A) somewhat tawny; **fulvescens** (part. B) becoming tawny; **fulvi-**, **fulvo-** (in Lat. comp.) tawny-
- fumeus**, **fumidus**, **fumosus** (all adj. A) smoky
- funalis** (adj. B) rope-like
- functioning** fungens (part. B)
- fundamentum** (noun n. 2) foundation
- fundus** (noun m. 2) bottom
- funestus** (adj. A) deadly, fatal
- funga** fungalis (adj. B)
- fungens** (part. B) functioning
- fungiformis**, **fungilliformis** (both adj. B) mushroom-shaped
- fungosus** (adj. A) spongy
- fungus** fungus (noun m. 2); **funga**, **fungus-**, **-fungus** (in Gk comp.) myc-, mycel-, myceto-, myco-, -myces (adj. C); **funga** colony plagula (noun f. 1)

**funicle** funiculus (noun m. 2)

**funicularis, funiformis** (both adj. B) rope-like; **funiculosus** (adj. A) in rope-like bundles; **funiculus** (noun m. 2) cord, slender rope; **funis** (noun m. 3) rope

**funnel-shaped** infundibuliformis, infundibularis (both adj. B); **narrowly funnel-shaped** trombiformis (adj. B)

**furca** (noun f. 1) fork; **furcatus** (adj. A) forked

**furfuraceus** (adj. A) furfuraceous

**furnished** instructus (part. A)

**furrow** sulcus (noun m. 2), vallecule (noun f. 1); **furrowed** sulcatus, valleculeatus, exaratus (all part. A); (in Gk comp.) aulac-; **not furrowed** exsulcus (adj. A); **little furrow** fossula (noun f. 1); **having long, narrow furrows** lirellinus (adj. A)

**furunculus** (noun m. 2) cystolith, rapheid, sclereid

**furvus** (adj. A) dusky, almost black

**fuscus** (adj. A) brown; **fuscans** (adj. B) darkening; **fuscatus** (adj. A) darkened; **fusco-, fusci-** (in Lat. comp.) dark, dark brown

**fused** coadnatus, conferruminatus, connatus (all part. A); **fusing** conjungens (part. B)

**fusiformis** (adj. B) fusiform, spindle-shaped

**fusion** conjunction (noun f. 3); **fusion cell** cellula (noun f. 1) conjunctionis (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *cellula* is declined)

**future** futurus (part. A)

## G

**gal-, gala-, galacto-** (in Gk comp.) milk, milky [*refers to both colour and latex*]

**galactose** galactosum (noun n. 2)

**galbinus** (adj. A) greenish yellow

**galbulus** galbulus (noun m. 2)

**galea** (noun f. 1) helmet; **galeatus** (adj. A) having a helmet; **galeiformis** (adj. B) helmet-shaped

**galericulatus** (adj. A) having a small helmet-like cap

**gall** galla (noun f. 1); **gall-bearing** cecidiophorus (adj. A)

**gametangium** gametangium (noun n. 2)

- gamete** gameta (noun f. 1); **motile gamete** planogameta (noun f. 1), spermatozoideus (noun m. 2); **zoogamete** zoogameta (noun f. 1)
- gametoeceium** gametoeceium (noun n. 2)
- gametogenesis** gametogenesis (noun f. 3)
- gametophytum** (noun n. 2) gametophyte
- gamo-** (in Gk comp.) united
- gamopetalus** sympetalus (adj. A)
- gangliiformis** (adj. B) knot-like; **ganglion** (noun n. 2) knot, swelling [*esp. on stem*]; **ganglioneus** (adj. A) with knot-like swellings
- gaping** hians, ringens (both part. B)
- garden** hortus (noun m. 2); **pertaining to or raised in a garden** hortensis (adj. B); **gardener** hortulanus (noun m. 2)
- garlic** [*resembling*] alliaceus (adj. A)
- gaseous** gaseosus (adj. A)
- gasterospore** gasterospora (noun f. 1)
- gathered** lectus (part. A)
- gelatina** (noun f. 1) jelly
- gelatinous** gelatinosus (adj. A)
- gelatinum** (noun n. 2) gelatin
- gelatinus** (adj. A) jelly-like
- gelatus** (adj. A) frozen
- gelidus** (adj. A) [*very*] cold
- gelineus** (adj. A) jelly-like
- gemellus, geminus** (both adj. A) paired, twin-born; **geminatus** (adj. A) doubled
- gemma** (noun f. 1) bud; **gemmatus, gemmifer, gemmiparus** (all adj. A) bud-bearing; **gemmaio** (noun f. 3) budding; **gemmiformis** (adj. B) bud-like; **-gemmis** (adj. B, in Lat. comp.), **-gemmius** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -budded
- gemma cup** scyphulus (noun m. 2)
- gemma** (noun f. 1) ovule; **gemmulifer** (adj. A) ovule-bearing
- general** generalis, universalis (both adj. B); **generally** generatim, generaliter, plerumque, universe (all adv.)
- generation** generatio (noun f. 3)
- generative** genitalis (adj. B); **generative hyphae** hyphae genitales (noun f. 1, pl. + adj.)

- generic** genericus (adj. A)  
**generitypus** (noun m. 2) generitype, type of a generic name  
**genetic** geneticus (adj. A); **genetically** genetice (adv.)  
**-geneus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) of a certain kind  
**geniculatus** (adj. A) geniculate; **geniculum** (noun n. 2) node, joint; [*in coralline red algae*] the uncalcified 'joint' region  
**genitalia** (noun n. 2, pl.) sexual organs, stamens and pistil; **genitalis** (adj. B) generative  
**genitus** (part. A) born of, arising from  
**gentianus** (adj. A) gentian blue  
**gently** leniter (adv.)  
**genuflexus** (adj. A) bent like a knee  
**genuinus** (adj. A) authentic, genuine  
**genus** genus (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]  
**-genus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) born or produced in a certain place or condition  
**geocarpus** (adj. A) geocarpic  
**geographical** geographicus (adj. A)  
**geophytum** (noun n. 2) geophyte  
**geotropus** (adj. A) geotropic  
**-ger** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) bearing, carrying  
**gerens** (part. B + Accusative) bearing, carrying  
**germen** (noun n. 3) ovary  
**germinalis** (adj. B) germ-e.g. *cellula germinalis*, germ cell  
**germinating** germinans (part. B); **germination** germinatio (noun f. 3)  
**gerontogeus** (adj. A) pertaining to the Old World  
**-geton** (noun m. 3, in Gk comp.) neighbour, dweller  
**gibbosus, gibbus** (both adj. A) gibbous; **gibberosus** (adj. A) prominently humped; **gibba** (noun f. 1) a hump  
**giganteus** (adj. A) giant, gigantic; **gigas** (noun m. 3) a giant; **giga-**, **gigant-** (in Gk comp.) giant  
**gignens** (part. B) bringing forth  
**gill** lamella (noun f. 1)  
**gilvus** (adj. A) dull yellow  
**girdle** cingulum (noun n. 2); **girdled** cinctus (part. A); **girdling** cingens (part. B)

- girdle band** [*in diatoms*] copula (noun f. 1)
- girdle scar** cicatrix cingens (noun f. 3, part. B)
- given** datus, donatus (both part. A); **giving** donans (part. B); **giving forth** edens, emittens (both part. B)
- glabrous** glaber, glabellus (both adj. A); **glabrate** glabratus (adj. A);  
**glabrescent** glabrescens (part. B); **become glabrous** decalvatus (adj. A); **glabrous state** glabritia (noun f. 1); **glabrous-** (in Lat. comp.) glabri-, (in Gk comp.) psilo-
- glacialis** (adj. B) frozen, glacial; **glaciers** (noun f. 5) ice
- gland** (secretory) glans (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; for a unicellular or very small gland use **glandula** (noun f. 1); **gland-bearing**, **glandular** glandifer, glandulifer, glandulosus (all adj. A); **gland-** (in Gk comp.) aden-; **non-glandular**, **without glands** eglandulosus, eglandulatus (both adj. A)
- glans** (noun f. 3) gland, acorn [see p. 00]
- glara** (noun f. 1) scree
- glearea** (noun f. 1) gravel, shingle; **glareosus** (adj. A) pertaining to gravel; **glareosum** (noun n. 2) gravelly place
- glass** vitrum (noun n. 2); **glassy** vitreus (adj. A)
- glasshouse** caldarium [*hot*], tepidarium [*warm*], frigidarium [*cold*], hibernaculum [*for winter*] (all noun n. 2)
- glaucous** glaucus (adj. A); **glaucouscent** glaucescens (part. B);  
**glaucouscence** glaucedo (noun f. 3); **glauc-** (in Lat. comp.) glauci-, (in Gk comp.) glauco-
- gleaming** fulgens, micans, nitens (all part. B), fulgidus, nitidus, lucidus (all adj. A)
- gleba** gleba (noun f. 1)
- glebosus** (adj. A) lumpy, full of clods
- glebula** glebula (noun f. 1); **glebulosus** (adj. A) glebulate
- gleocystidium** gloeocystidium (noun n. 2)
- glistening** lucens (part. B)
- globosus** (adj. A) globose; **globularis** (adj. B), **globulifer** (adj. A), **globulosus** (adj. A) globular, globule-bearing; **globuliformis** (adj. B) button-like;  
**glob-**, **globi-** (in Lat. comp.) globose; **globulus** (noun m. 2) globule;  
**globus** (noun m. 2) globe, sphere
- glochid** glochin (noun f. 3, decl. like *cotyledon*, p. 00);  
**glochidiate** glochideus, glochidiatus (both adj. A)



**gloeo-** (in Gk comp.) glue-, sticky; **gloeocarpus** (adj. A) having fruit covered in mucus; **gleocystidium** (noun n. 2) gleocystidium

**glome** glomus (noun n. 3)

**glomerulus** (noun m. 2) glomerule; **glomeratus** (part. A) gathered tightly together; **glomerulatus** (adj. A) having glomerules

**gloomy** tenebrosus (adj. A)

**glory** (in Gk comp.) -doxa, -doxus (adj. A)

**glosso-**, **-glossus** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) tongue-, -tongued

**glossy** nitidus, politus (both adj. A), inunctus (part. A); **glossiness** nitor (noun m. 3)

**glucose** glucosum (noun n. 2)

**glue** glutinium (noun n. 2); **glued to** agglutinated, adglutinated (both part. A); **glued together** conglutinated (part. A)

**glume** gluma (noun f. 1), tegmen (noun n. 3), tegmentum (noun n. 2);

**glumaceous** glumaceus (adj. A)

**glutinous** glutinosus, viscidus (both adj. A)

**glyco-** (in Gk comp.) sweet-tasting *or*-scented

**glypto-** (in Gk comp.) cut into

**going forth** exiens (part. B)

**gold** aurum (noun n. 2); **golden** aureus (adj. A); **flecked with gold** auratus (adj. A); **golden-** (in Gk comp.) chrys-, chryso-, (in Lat. comp.) aurei-, aureo-, auri-

**gomphus** (noun m. 2) peg; **gompho-** (in Gk comp.) nail-

**-gone**, **-gonium** (noun n. 2, in Gk comp.) reproductive organs

**gongylodes** (adj. C) knob-like

**goni**-, **gonia**-, **-gonus** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) angle-, angled

**gonidium** gonidium (noun n. 2)

**gonimoblast** gonimoblastus (noun m. 2)

**goniocyst** goniocysta (noun f. 1)

**goniosporous** goniosporus (adj. A)

**good** bonus (adj. A)

**gorge** [*throat and landform*] faux (noun f. 3, sing.) [*in botanical Lat.*]; fauces (noun f. 3, pl.) [*in classical Lat.*]

**gossypinus** (adj. A) cottony

**gourd-shaped** sicyoideus (adj. A)

- graceful** venustus (adj. A)  
**gracilis** (adj. B) slender, thin  
**gradatim** (adv.) gradually, progressively  
**gradually** gradatim, paulatim, sensim (all adv.)  
**graft** [*scion*] insitum (noun n. 2); **grafted** insiticius, insititius (both adj. A)  
**grain** granum (noun n. 2)  
**gralliformis** (adj. B) stilt-like  
**gramen** (noun n. 3) grass; **gramineus** (adj. A) grass-like; **graminifolius** (adj. A) grass-leaved; **gramini-** (in Lat. comp.) grass-  
**grammatus** (adj. A) striped with raised lines  
**grandis** (adj. B) big; **grandi-** (in Lat. comp.) large-  
**graniticus** (adj. A) granitic  
**granular, granulate, granulose** granularis (adj. B), granulatus (adj. A), granulosis (adj. A); **granule** granulum (noun n. 2)  
**granum** (noun n. 2) grain, kernel  
**grape** uva (noun f. 1); **grape-like** [*in a cluster*] botryoideus, uvarius (both adj. A), uviformis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) botry-, -botrys (noun m. 3); **grape-bearing** uvifer (adj. A)  
**grapevine, pertaining to** viti- (in Lat. comp.)  
**grasping** prehensens (part. B), prehensilis (adj. B)  
**grass** gramen (noun n. 3); **grass-like** gramineus (adj. A); **grass-leaved** graminifolius (adj. A); **grass-** (in Lat. comp.) grami-, (in Gk comp.) agrosti-  
**gratus** (adj. A) agreeable  
**gravel** glarea (noun f. 1); **gravelly place** glareosum (noun n. 2); **pertaining to gravel** glareosus (adj. A)  
**graveolens** (adj. B) strong-scented, smelling unpleasantly  
**graveyard** sepulcretum (noun n. 2)  
**gravis** (adj. B) heavy  
**greasy** sebosus (adj. A), unctus (part. A)  
**great** magnus, amplius (both adj. A); **greatly** magnopere, multum (both adv.) [see p. 00]; **as great as** tantus quantus (adj. A, decl. together)  
**green** viridis (adj. B); **bluish green** venetus (adj. A); **deep green** atrovirens, perviridis (both adj. B); **emerald-green** smaragdinus (adj. A); **grass green** herbidus (adj. A); **jade green** iadinus (adj. A); **leek green**

- porraceus, prasinus (both adj. A); **malachite green** malachiteus (adj. A); **olive green** olivaceus, pausiacus (both adj. A); **pea green** pisinus (adj. A); **sea green** glaucus (adj. A); **viridian** viridianus (adj. A); **yellow-green** flavovirens (adj. B), chlorinus (adj. A); **greenish** virellus, viridulus (both adj. A); **becoming green** virens (part. B); **green-** (in Lat. comp.) viridi-, (in Gk comp.) chlor-, chloro-
- greenhouse** caldarium [*hot*], tepidarium [*warm*], frigidarium [*cold*], hibernaculum [*for winter*] (all noun n. 2)
- gregarius** (adj. A) gregarious; **gregatim** (adv.) in clusters
- grex** (noun m. or f. 3) grex, group of species or hybrids
- grey** canus, cineraceus, griseus, schistaceus (all adj. A); **ash grey** cinereus (adj. A); **dull [bluish] grey** lividus (adj. A); **lead** **grey** molybdeus (adj. A); **mouse-grey** murinus (adj. A); **pearl grey** griseus (adj. A); **sky grey** caeruleo-griseus (adj. A); **slate-grey** schistaceus (adj. A); **smoke-grey** fumosus, fumeus (both adj. A); **steel grey** chalybeus (adj. A); **greyish** cinerascens (part. B), ravidus (adj. A); **greyish white** (usu. of hair) canus (adj. A); **greyish-yellow** fulvus, ravus (both adj. A); **becoming ash grey** cinerascens (part. B); **becoming grey** canescens (part. B); **grey-** (in Lat. comp.) cano-, cinereo-, (in Gk comp.) polio-, spod-, spodo-, tephro-
- griseus** (adj. A) pearl grey
- groove** canalis (noun m. 3), sulcus (noun m. 2); **grooved** canaliculatus (adj. A), exaratus (part. A), sulcatus (adj. A); **having fine, wavy grooves** rivulosus (adj. A)
- grossus** (adj. A) coarse; **grosse** (adv.) coarsely
- ground** terra (noun f. 1); **on the ground** humifusus (adj. A); **lying on the ground** incubaceus (adj. A)
- group** caterva (noun f. 1), turma (noun f. 1); **grouped** aggregatus, dispositus (both part. A); **in groups** catervatim (adv.)
- grow** crescere (verb); **it grows** crescit (verb 3rd pers. sing.); **growing** crescens (part. B); **growing out** [*usu. abnormally*] excrecens (part. B); **growing upon or to** adnascens (part. B); **fully grown** excretus, exoletus (both part. A); **grown together** accretus (part. A), coalescens (part. B), concretus (part. A); **growing first** [opposite of *serotinus*] primotinus (adj. A)
- growth** augmen (noun n. 3), augmentum (noun n. 2); **united by growth** coalitus (part. A)

**grumosus** (adj. A) grumose, grumous  
**grumulus** (noun m. 2) small hill  
**gullet** gula (noun f. 1)  
**gum** gummi (noun f. indecl.); **gummy** gummosus (adj. A)  
**gustus** (noun m. 4) taste, flavour  
**gutta** (noun f. 1) drop, speck; **guttatus** (adj. A) spotted; **guttula** (noun f. 1) droplet; **guttulatus** (adj. A) guttulate, having *or* appearing to have small droplets of oil or resin  
**gymno-** (in Gk comp.) naked; **gymnocarpus** (adj. A) having a naked fruit  
**gymnostomaticus** (adj. A) gymnostomous  
**gyn-, gyno-** (in Gk comp.) female, pertaining to female organs  
**gynandrium** (noun n. 2) gynandrium  
**gynobasic** gynobasicus (adj. A)  
**gynodioecius** (adj. A) gynodioecious  
**gynodynamous** gynodynamus, gynodynamicus (both adj. A)  
**gynoecium** gynoecium (noun n. 2); **gynophore** gynophorum (noun n. 2);  
**gynostegium** gynostegium (noun n. 2)  
**gynomonoecius** (adj. A) gynomonoecious  
**gypseus** (adj. A) gypsum-like; **gypsum** (noun n. 2) gypsum  
**gyroma** (noun n. 3) annulus [*of fern*]  
**gyrosus** (adj. A) curved backwards and forwards in turn, spiral  
**gyrus** (noun m. 2) circle, ring, annulus; [*in diatoms*] coil

## H

**habitat** (verb. sing. pres.) it lives; **habitans** (part. B) inhabiting; **habitatio** (noun f. 3) place of growth, abode  
**habitus** (noun m. 4) habit, appearance [see p. 00]; *also* **habitus** (part. A) well-conditioned  
**hac** (adv.) here, in this place  
**hactenus** (adv.) until now  
**haec** (dem. pron. f.) this, she, these [see p. 00]  
**haematicus** (adj. A), **haematinus** (adj. A), **haematochrous** (adj. A),  
**haematodes** (adj. B) all = blood-coloured; **haematiticus** (adj. A) brownish red; **haematochroma** (noun n. 3) haematochrome; **haem-**,  
**haemat-** (in Gk comp.) blood-red

**haerens** (part. B + Dative) adhering, clinging

**hair** pilus (noun m. 2), trichoma (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **hair's breadth** capillus (adj. A); **hair-like** capillaceus (adj. A), capillaris (adj. B), capilliformis (adj. B), piliformis (adj. B), trichodeus (adj. A); **long-hairy** caesariatus (adj. A); **hair covering** indumentum (noun n. 2), hirsuties (noun f. 5), crinis (noun m. 3), pubes (noun f. 3), pubescentia (noun f. 1); **bearing hairs** pilifer (adj. B); **hairy** hirtus (adj. A); (in Lat. comp.) pubi-, (in Gk comp.) lasi-, lasio-. [See also specific terms for hairy, e.g. **hirsutus**, **pubescens** etc.]

**half** dimidium (noun n. 2); **half** dimidius (adj. A); **by half** dimidio (adv.); **half-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) semi-, (pref. in Gk comp.) hemi-; **halved** dimidiatus (part. A)

**halo-** (in Gk comp.) salt

**halonatus** (adj. A) halonate

**halophilic** halophilus (adj. A)

**halved** dimidiatus (part. A)

**hama-** (pref. in Gk comp.) together with

**hamathecium** hamathecium (noun n. 2)

**hamatus** (adj. A) barbed, hooked at apex; **hamosus** (adj. A) hooked; **hamulatus**, **hamulosus** (both adj. A) having small hooks; **hamus** (noun m. 2) barb, hook; **hamulus** (noun m. 2) small barb or hook

**hanging** dependens, pendens (both part. B), pendulus, pendulinus, dependulus (all adj. A)

**hapalo-** (in Gk comp.) soft-

**hapaxanthus** (adj. A) having a single flowering period, monocarpic

**haplo-** (in Gk comp.) single-; **haplostephanus** (adj. A) [*in Charophyta*] having one circle of stipulodes at base of each whorl of branchlets; **haplostichus** (adj. A) with a single row

**haploid** haploideus (adj. A)

**haplolepidus** (adj. A) haplolepidous

**hapteron** hapteron (noun n. 2)

**haptonema** haptonema (noun n. 3)

**hard** durus (adj. A); **somewhat hard** duriusculus (adj. A); **hard as steel** adamantinus (adj. A); **hard but not brittle** corneus (adj. A); **hardness** duritia (noun f. 1); **hardened** concretus, induratus (both part. A); **hardening** indurescens (part. B); **hard** (in Gk comp.) scler-, sclero-

**hardly** vix, aegre (both adv.)

**harmful** noxius (adj. A); **harmless** innoxius (adj. A)

**harsh** (to touch) asper (adj. A)

**harundo** (noun f. 3) cane [*grass reed*]

**hastatus** (adj. A) hastate; **hastilis** (adj. B) spear-shaped; **hasti-** (in Lat. comp.) spear-

**hastula** (noun f. 1) [*in palmate leaf*] hastula

**haud, haudquaquam** (both adv.) not at all, by no means

**haustorium** haustorium (noun n. 2)

**hazel** (colour) avellaneus (adj. A)

**head** capitulum (noun n. 2), caput (noun n. 3) [see p. 00], [*in Asteraceae*]

anthodium (noun n. 2); **head-** (in Lat. comp.) capit-, capiti-, (in Gk comp.) cephal-, cephalo-; **-headed** (in Lat. comp.) -ceps (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) -cephalus (adj. A); **with a rounded head or tip** capitatus (adj. A)

**heap** acervus, cumulus (both noun m. 2); **small heap** acervulus (noun m. 2);

**heaped** acervatus, cumulatus (both part. A), acervatim (adv.); **in small heaps** acervulatus (part. A)

**heart** cor (noun n. 2); **heart-shaped** cordatus (adj. A), cordiformis (adj. B);

**heart-** (in Lat. comp.) cordi-, (in Gk comp.) cardia-, cardio-

**heath** ericetum (noun n. 2)

**heavy** gravis (adj. B), ponderosus (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) bary-

**hebdomalis** (adj. B) weekly; **hebdomas** (noun f. 3) week

**hebes** (adj. B) dull

**hebetatus** (part. A) dimmed, matt [*made dull*]

**hecat-, hecato-** (in Gk comp.) hundred-

**hedge** sepes, saepes (noun f. 3)

**hedy-** (in Gk comp.) sweet

**height** altum (noun n. 2), altitudo (noun f. 3)

**heleo-, helo-** (in Gk comp.) marsh

**helicospore** helicospora (noun f. 1)

**helicte** (adv.) clockwise

**helictoglossa** helictoglossa (noun f. 1)

**helicus** (adj. A), **helic-** (in Gk comp.) coiled, spirally twisted

**helio-** (in Gk comp.) sun-

**heliotrope** [*colour*] heliotropinus (adj. A)

- helladolith** helladolithus (noun m. 2)
- helmet** cassis (noun f. 3), galea (noun f. 1); **helmet-shaped** cassideus (adj. A), galeiformis (adj. B ); **having a helmet** galeatus (adj. A); **having a small helmet-like cap** galericulatus (adj. A)
- helvus** (adj. A) light bay, pale red
- hemi-** (pref. in Gk comp.) half-
- hemiangiocarpicus** (adj. A) of a sporocarp opening before quite mature
- hemiparasiticus** (adj. A) hemiparasitic
- hemisaprophyticus** (adj. A) hemisaprophytic
- hemisphere** hemisphaerium (noun n. 2)
- hence** hinc, igitur, quamobrem (all adv.)
- hepaticus** (adj. A) liver-coloured
- hepta-** (in Gk comp.) seven-
- herb** herba (noun f. 1); **herbaceous** herbaceus (adj. A)
- herbarium** herbarium (noun n. 2); **herbarium specimen** exsiccatum (noun n. 2)
- herbidus** (adj. A) grass green
- herbula** (noun f. 1) a small herb
- here** hic, hac (both adv.); **here and there** disperse, dispersim, passim, hic illic (all adv.)
- hermaphrodite** hermaphroditus, teleianthus, perfectus (all adj. A), bisexualis (adj. B)
- hetero-** (in Gk comp.) different, other
- heterobasidium** (noun n. 2) heterobasidium, basidium showing septation
- heterocyst** heterocysta (noun f. 1)
- heteroecious** heteroicus (adj. A)
- heterogeneous** heterogeneus (adj. A)
- heterolepidous** heterolepidus (adj. A)
- heteromerous** heteromerus (adj. A)
- heteromorphic** heteromorphus (adj. A)
- heterosporous** heterosporus (adj. A)
- heterostylous** heterostylus (adj. A)
- heterothallic** heterothallicus (adj. A)
- heterovalvate** heterovalvatus (adj. A)
- hexa-** (in Gk comp.) six

**hexagonal** hexagonus (adj. A), sexangularis (adj. B)

**hexapodium** (noun n. 2) fathom

**hians** (part. B) gaping

**hibernaculum** (noun n. 2) glasshouse, winter bud; **hibernus** (adj. A)  
pertaining to winter

**hic** (dem. pron. m.) this, he [see p. 00]

**hic** (adv.) here; **hic illic** (adv.) here and there

**hidden** absconditus, celatus, occultus, opertus (all part. A); (in Gk comp.)  
crypt-, crypto-

**hiding** celans, occultans (both part. B)

**hiems** (noun f. 3) winter; **hiemalis**, **hyemalis** (adj. B) wintry, of winter

**high** altus (adj. A), celsus (adj. A), elatus (part. A), excelsus (part. A), exaltatus  
(part. A); **highly** [*greatly*] maxime (adv.), [*in height*] alte (adv.); **high up**  
alte (adv.); **a very high place** excelsum (noun n. 2); **higher** superior  
(adj. compar.); **highest** summus, supremus (both adj. A)

**hilaris** (adj. B) of the hilum

**hill** collis (noun m. 3); **pertaining to hills** collinus (adj. A)

**hillock** grumulus (noun m. 2)

**hillside** clivus (noun m. 2)

**hilum** hilum (noun n. 2); **of the hilum** hilaris (adj. B)

**himanto-** (in Gk comp.) strap-shaped

**hinc** (adv.) from this place *or* time, hence

**hinnuleus** (adj. A) fawn [*colour*]

**hippocrepicus** (adj. A), **hippocrepiiformis** (adj. B) horseshoe-shaped

**hirsutus** (adj. A) hirsute [see p. 00]; **hirsuties** (noun f. 5) rough hair-covering

**hirtus** (adj. A) hairy; **hirti-** (in Lat. comp.) hairy

**hispidus** (adj. A) hispid, bristly

**histogenus** (adj. A) without conidiophores

**historia** (noun f. 1) history, narrative

**hitherto** ad huc (adv.)

**hoary** incanus (adj. A)

**hoc** (dem. pron. n.) it [see p. 00]

**hodie** (adv.) today, at present; **hodiernus** (adj. A) relating to the present time

**holdfast** hapteron (noun n. 2), tenaculum (noun n. 2); **holdfast cell** cellula  
(noun f. 1) hapteroidea (adj. A), tenaculum (noun n. 2)



- holding** tenens (part. B), [*keeping hold of*] retinens (part. B), [*containing*] continens (part. B), [*clinging*] haerens (part. B)
- hole** cavum (noun n. 2), foramen (noun n. 3); **holed** foratus, perforatus (both part. A), porosus (adj. A)
- hollow** cavitas (noun f. 3); cavus (adj. A); **hollowed out** excavatus, exaratus (both part. A); **hollowed** coelo- (in Gk comp.); **hollow with closed ends** fistulosus (adj. A); **hollow seeded** coelospermus (adj. A)
- holo-** (in Gk comp.) whole, entire
- holobasidium** holobasidium (noun n. 2)
- holocarpic** holocarpicus (adj. A)
- holococcolith** holococcolithus (noun m. 2)
- holosaprophytic** holosaprophyticus (adj. A)
- holotype** holotypus (noun m. 2)
- homo-**, **homoeo-**, **homoio-** (in Gk comp.) like, of the same kind
- homoeomorphus** (adj. A) [*in Charophyta*] having similar fertile and sterile whorls
- homogeneous** (adj. A) homogeneous
- homogonium** (noun n. 2) homogonium
- homoimerus** (adj. A) homoimerous
- homomallus** (adj. A) homomallus
- homonym** homonymum (noun n. 2)
- homosporous** homosporus (adj. A)
- homothallic** homothallicus (adj. A)
- homotropus** (adj. A) homotropical
- honey** mel (noun n. 3); **honeycombed** alveolatus (adj. B), favosus (adj. A); **finely honeycombed** faveolatus (adj. A); **honey-coloured** melleus (adj. A); **pertaining to honey** mellitus (adj. A)
- hood** cucullus (noun m. 2); **hooded** cucullatus (adj. A)
- hook** hamus, uncus (both noun m. 2); **small hook** hamulus (noun m. 2); **hook-shaped** unciformis (adj. B); **hooked** aduncus, hamatus, hamosus, uncatus (all adj. A); **barbed with small hooks** ancistrus, hamulatus, hamulosus (all adj. A)
- horizontal** horizontalis (adj. B); **horizontally** horizontaliter (adv.)
- hormogon** hormogonium (noun n. 2)
- horn** cornu (noun n. 4) [see p. 00]; **horned** cornutus (adj. A); **horn-shaped** cornuatus (adj. A); **having small horn-like appendage**

corniculatus (adj. A); **small horn-like appendage** corniculum (noun n. 2); **-horn** (in Gk comp.) -ceras,-ceros (both noun n. 3), (in Lat. comp.) -cornu,-cornis (both adj. B),-cornutus (adj. A); **horned**-(in Lat. comp.) corni-, (in Gk comp.) cerato-; **horny** corneus (adj. A)

**hornotinus** (adj. A) of the present year, this year's

**horricomis** (adj. B) bristly, shaggy; **horridus** (adj. A) prickly, very rough

**horse** equus (noun m. 2); **pertaining to horses** equinus (adj. A)

**horseshoe-shaped** hippocrepicus (adj. A), hippocrepiformis (adj. B)

**hortus** (noun m. 2) garden; **hortensis** (adj. B) pertaining to or raised in a garden; **hortulanus** (noun m. 2) gardener

**host** [*of parasite*] hospes (noun m. 2); **host plant** nutrix (noun f. 3)

**hot** calidus (adj. A); **hot-bed** pulvillum (noun n. 2); **hot-house** caldarium (noun n. 2); **hot springs** thermae (noun f. 1, pl.)

**however** autem (conj.)

**huc, ad** (adv.) hitherto

**huge** ingens (adj. B)

**humectus** (adj. A) moist; **humectatus, humefactus** (both part. A) moistened

**humerus** (noun m. 2) shoulder

**humidus** (adj. A) moist, damp

**humilis** (adj. B) low, low-growing

**hump** gibba (noun f. 1); **prominently humped** gibberosus (adj. A)

**humus** (noun f. 2) the earth, soil; **humi** (adv. formed from *humus*) on the ground; **humifusus** (adj. A) procumbent

**hundred** centum (num. indecl.); **hundredth** centensimus (adj. A); **hundred**-(in Lat. comp.) centi-, (in Gk comp.) hecat-, hecato-; **hundred-fold** centiens, centies (both adv.)

**husk** acus (noun f. 4)

**hyacinthinus** (adj. A) hyacinth blue, violet; **hyacinthoides** (adj. B) hyacinth-like

**hyalinus** (adj. A) clear, hyaline

**hyalocysta** (noun f. 1) hyalocyst

**hyaloderma** (noun n. 3) hyalodermis [see p. 00]

**hyalosporous** hyalosporus (adj. A)

**hybrid** [*noun*] hybrida (noun f. 1), [*adj.*] hybridus, hybridogenus (both adj. A)

- hydathode** hydathodus (noun f. 2)
- hydro-** (in Gk comp.) water
- hydrochloric** hydrochloricus, muriaticus (both adj. A)
- hydrome** hydroma (noun n. 3)
- hyemalis, hiemalis** (adj. B) wintry, of winter
- hygro-** (in Gk comp.) damp, moist; **hygrometricus, hygrosopicus** (both adj. A) hygroscopic; **hygrophanus** (adj. A) hygrophanous
- hymen-** (in Gk comp.) membrane, membranous
- hymenium** hymenium (noun n. 2)
- hymenophore** hymenophorum (noun n. 2)
- hyp-, hypo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) below, under
- hypanthium** hypanthium (noun n. 2)
- hyper-** (pref. in Gk comp.) above, beyond, over
- hyperboreus** (adj. A) of the far north
- hypha** hypha (noun f. 1); **full of hyphae** hyphosus (adj. A); **hyphal mass in pileus** contextus (noun m. 4)
- hyphidium** hyphidium (noun n. 2)
- hyphophore** hyphophorum (noun n. 2)
- hyphopodium** hyphopodium (noun n. 2)
- hyphosus** (adj. A) full of hyphae
- hypnospore** hypnospora (noun f. 1)
- hypnozygote** hypnozygota (noun f. 1)
- hypo-** (in Gk comp.) below, under
- hypocingulum** hypocingulum (noun n. 2)
- hypocotyl** hypocotylum, internodium (both noun n. 2), hypocotylus, (noun m. 2); **hypocotylary** hypocotylus (adj. A)
- hypocrateriformis** (adj. B), **hypocraterimorphus** (adj. A) hypocrateriform, salverform
- hypocyst** hypocysta (noun f. 1)
- hypoderm** hypoderma (noun n. 3)
- hypodermicus** (adj. A) beneath the epidermis [see p. 00]
- hypogaeus** (adj. A) hypogeal, below-ground, underground
- hypogonium** hypogonium (noun n. 2)
- hypogynus** (adj. A) hypogynous

**hypophloeodes** (adj. C), **hypophloeodicus** (adj. A) hypophloeodal, growing in the bark

**hypophyllus** (adj. A) hypophyllous

**hypophysis** (noun f. 3) hypophysis

**hypostomatic** hypostomaticus (adj. A)

**hypothallus** (noun m. 2) hypothallus; **hypothallinus** (adj. A) relating to the hypothallus

**hypotheca** hypotheca (noun f. 1)

**hypothecium** hypothecium (noun n. 2)

**hypovalve** hypovalva (noun f. 1)

**hyposophyllinus** (adj. A) hyposophyllary, bracteal; **hyposophyllum** (noun n. 2) hyposophyll

**hysteranthus** (adj. A) after *or* later than the flowers [*e.g. leaves*]

**hysterinus**, **hysterioideus** (both adj. A), **hysteriformis** (adj. B) hysterine

**hysterogenus** (adj. A) produced late [*e.g. after the flowers*]

**hysterothecioideus** (adj. A) hysterothecioid

**hysterothecium** (noun n. 2) hysterothecium

## I

**iadinus** (adj. A) jade green

**iam**, *more commonly jam* (adv.) now

**ibi** (adv.) there, then

**ibidem** (adv.) in the same place

**-ibilis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with verb as stem) indicates ability

**-icans** (Lat. suff., part. B, based on verb from noun) indicates process of resembling closely

**ice** glaciers (noun f. 5)

**-icius** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with verb as stem) indicates a completed action

**icon** (noun f. 3) illustration, plate

**icosandrus** (adj. A) having 20 stamens

**ictericus**, **icterinus** (adj. A) jaundice yellow

**-icus** (Gk suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates sense of belonging

**id** (determ. pron. n.) it [see p. 00]

**idem** (def. pron. m., n.) the same [see p. 00]

**ideo** (adv.) therefore

**-idus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with adj., noun or verb as stem) indicates something in progress

**-ies** (Lat. suff., noun f. 5, with verb as stem) indicates something formed or made

**if** *si* (conj.)

**igitur** (adv.) therefore

**ignescens** (adj. B) bright red; **igneus** (adj. A) fire-red; **ignivomus** (adj. A) volcanic

**ignotus** (adj. A) unknown

**il-** (pref. in Lat. comp. before *l*) in, into, contrary

**-ilis** (Lat. suff., adj. B, with verb as stem) indicates ability or quality

**illa** (adv.) in that direction

**illa** [dem. pron. f.] that, she [see p. 00]

**illaquens** (part. B) ensnaring

**ille** [dem. pron. m.] that, he [see p. 00]

**illecebrosus** (adj. A) attractive, alluring

**illegitimus** (adj. A) unlawful

**illic** (adv.) there, in that place

**illinc** (adv.) thence, from that place

**illinitus** (part. A) smeared

**illud** (dem. pron. n.) that, it [see p. 00]

**-illus** (Lat. suff., adj. A) indicates diminutive form, cf. **-cellus**

**illustrated** *illustratus* (part. A); **illustration** icon, *imago*, *illustratio* (all noun f. 3); *tabula* (noun f. 1)

**im-** (pref. in Lat. comp. before *b*, *m*, *p*) in, into, contrary

**imago** (noun f. 3) likeness, illustration

**imbecilis** (adj. B), **imbecillus** (adj. A) weak, feeble

**imbedded** *inclusus* (part. A with *in* + Ablative)

**imberbis** (adj. B) not bearded

**imbricate** *imbricatus* (part. A), *imbricans* (part. B)

**imbutus** (part. A) tinged, stained

**imitating** *mentiens*, *simulans* (both part. B)

**immaculatus** (adj. A) unspotted, unstained

- immarginatus** (adj. A) without a distinct margin, border *or* rim
- immature** immaturus, crudus (both adj. A)
- immediately** [*at once*] statim (adv.), [*quickly*] confestim (adv.), [*the nearest or next*] proxime (adv.)
- immensus** (adj. A) immense, vast
- immersio** (noun f. 3) immersion; **immersus** (part. A) submerged, imbedded, immersed
- imminens** (part. B) overhanging
- imminuens** (part. B) diminishing
- immixtus** (part. A) intermixed, mingled
- immo** (adv.) on the contrary, by no means
- immobile** immobilis (adj. B), fixus (part. A), immotus (adj. A)
- immutabilis** (adj. B), **immutatus** (adj. A) unaltered, unchanged
- impar** (adj. B) unequal, uneven; **impariter** (adv.) unequally
- imparipinnate** imparipinnatus (adj. A)
- impeditus** (part. A) hindered, *thus* not completely formed
- impellucidus** (adj. A) opaque
- impendens** (part. B) overhanging
- impenetrable** impenetrabilis (adj. A)
- imperfect** imperfectus, mancus, mendosus (all adj. A), inchoatus (part. A)
- imperforatus** (part. A) not perforated
- impervius** (adj. A) closed, impassable
- implens** (part. B) filling; **impletus** (part. A) filled
- implexus, implicatus, implicitus** (all part. A) entangled, interwoven, matted
- impolitus** (adj. A) matt, not polished
- impositus** (part. A) laid or placed upon
- impressus** (part. A) impressed, pressed into; **impressi-** (in Lat. comp.) impressed, sunken
- imprimis** (adv. ) chiefly, in the first place
- impunctatus** (part. A) not punctate
- impure** contaminatus (part. A)
- imum** (noun n. 2) lowest part; **imus** (adj. A) lowest
- in** (prep.) in, into, within, among, at, on, during; *used with acc.* when meaning motion *or* growth towards something, *used with abl.* when meaning rest; also **in-** (pref. in Lat. comp. before vowels, most consonants) in, contrary

**inactive** iners (adj. B) [see p. 00]

**-inae** (suff., adj. A, Nominative pl. f.) added to stem of name of type genus to form name of a subtribe

**inaequabilis**, **inaequalis** (both adj. B) unequal; **inaequaliter** (adv.) unequally; **inaequi-** (in Lat. comp.) unequal, uneven; **inaequilaterus** (adj. A) unequal-sided

**inamyloideus** (adj. A) not amyloid

**inanis** (adj. B) empty

**inapertus** (adj. A) closed

**inarticulatus** (adj. A) without divisions

**incanus** (adj. A) hoary

**incarnatus** (part. A) flesh-coloured

**incertus** (adj. A) doubtful

**inch** pollex (noun m. 3), uncia (noun f. 1); **inch long** pollicaris, uncialis (both adj. A)

**inchoatus** (part. A) incomplete, imperfect, rudimentary

**incidens** (part. B) meeting

**incisifolius** (adj. A) having deeply cut leaves

**incision** incisura (noun f. 1); **incised deeply** incisus (part. A)

**inclinatus** (part. A) leaning, bent down [*from the horizontal*]

**inclusus** (part. A) included, enclosed; *also* imbedded (with *in* + Ablative);

**inclusens** (part. B) enclosing, including

**incognitus** (adj. A) unknown

**incola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant; **incolens** (part. B) inhabiting

**incolor** (adj. B) [see p. 00], **incoloratus** (adj. A) colourless

**incomparabilis** (adj. B) incomparable, unequalled

**incomplete** incompletus, inchoatus, imperfectus (all adj. A)

**inconspicuous** inconspicuus (adj. A)

**inconstans** (adj. B) changeable, not constant

**incorrect** mendosus (adj. A); **incorrectly** errore, mendose, perperam (all adv.)

**incrassatus** (part. A) thickened

**increase** augmen (noun n. 3), augmentum (noun n. 2), incrementum (noun n. 2); **increasing** crescens (part. B); **increased** ampliatus, auctus (both part. A)

- increbre** (adv.) frequently  
**incrementum** (noun n. 2) increase, increment  
**increscens** (part. B) accrescent  
**incrusted** *incrustatus* (part. A); **incrusting** *incrustans* (part. B)  
**incubus** (adj. A) incubous  
**incudiformis** (adj. B) anvil-shaped  
**incultus** (adj. A) untilled, not cultivated, wild; **incultum** (noun n. 2) waste land  
**incumbens** (part. B) incumbent  
**incurrans** (part. B) over-running  
**incurved** *incurvatus, incurvus* (both adj. A), *infractus* (part. A)  
**incystatus** (adj. A) encysted  
**inde** (adv.) thence, after that  
**indefinite** *indefinitus* (adj. A)  
**indehicens** (adj. B) indehiscent  
**indented** *indentatus* (adj. A)  
**indescriptus** (adj. A) undescribed  
**indeterminate** *indeterminatus* (adj. A)  
**index** (noun m. 3) catalogue, list, index  
**indicatio** (noun f. 3) indication; **indicatus** (part. A) showed, pointed out, revealed  
**indigenous** *indigenus* (adj. A)  
**indigo** *indicum* (noun n. 2); **indigo-coloured** *indigoticus* (adj. A)  
**indirectly** *indirecte* (adv.)  
**indiscriminately** *promiscue, passim* (both adv.)  
**indistinctus** (adj. A) indistinct, unclear  
**indistinguishable** *haud distinctus* (part. A), *simillimus* (adj. A, sup.)  
*[i.e. very similar]*  
**individual** *individuum* (noun n. 2); *singulus* (adj. A);  
**individually** *singulatim, singulariter* (both adv.)  
**indivisus** (adj. A) undivided  
**indumentum** (noun n. 2) indumentum  
**induplicatus** (adj. A) induplicate  
**induratus** (part. A) hardened; **indurescens** (part. B) hardening  
**indusium** *indusium, tegumentum* (both noun n. 2); **indusiate** *indusiatus* (adj. A)



- indutus** (part. A + Ablative) clothed with
- induviae** (noun f. 1, pl.) persistent parts [*e.g. shrivelled corolla*]; **induviatus** (adj. A) clothed with withered parts
- ineae** (suff., adj. A, Nominative f. pl.) added to stem of name of type family to form name of a suborder
- inermis** (adj. B) unarmed, without spines *or* stings
- iners** (adj. B) inactive, inert, stagnant [see p. 00]
- ineus** (Gk suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates a material *or* colour
- infectus** (part. A) infected, spoiled
- infecundus** (adj. A) not fruitful
- inferior** (adj. compar.) lower; **inferne** (adv.) below, beneath; **infernus** (adj. A), **inferus** (adj. A) lower
- infestans** (part. B) infesting, attacking
- infestus** (adj. A) troublesome, becoming weedy
- infime** (adv.) at the base; **infimum** (noun n. 2) lowest part, bottom; **infimus** (adj. A) lowest
- inflatus** (part. A) blown out, inflated
- inflexus** (adj. A) bent inwards, inflexed
- inflorescence** *inflorescentia* (noun f. 1)
- infossus** (part. A) buried, sunken
- infra** (adv., *also* prep. + Accusative) below, on the underside; *also* pref. in Lat. comp.
- infractus** (part. A) incurved, sharply bent
- inframedianus** (adj. A) slightly below the middle
- infraterminalis** (adj. B) below the apex
- infrequent** *infrequens* (adj. B); **infrequently** *infrequenter*, *rarius*, *interdum*, sparse (all adv.)
- infrons** (adj. B) leafless
- infructescencia** (noun f. 1) *infructescence*, fruiting *inflorescence*
- infundibuliformis**, **infundibularis** (both adj. B) funnel-shaped
- infundibulum** *see helictoglossa*
- infuscatus** (adj. A) brownish
- ingens** (adj. B) huge
- ingratus** (adj. A) unpleasant
- ingrediens**, **iniens** (both part. B) entering

- inhabitant** incola (noun c., 1); **inhabiting** habitans, incolens, crescens, proveniens, vicens (all part. B), indigenus (adj. A); the following are all nouns of common gender, declined like *agricola* [see p. 00]  
**inhabitant of ... bark** corticola, ... **burned places** focola, ... **deserts** deserticola, ... **mountains** monticola, ... **plants** planticola, ... **plum trees** prunicola, ... **river banks** rivicola, ... **rocky places** rupicola, saxicola, ... **snow** nivicola, ... **woods** silvicola
- iniens** (part. B) entering
- initial** initium (noun n. 2); primus (adj. A)
- initium** (noun n. 2) beginning, initial
- injurious** noxius (adj. A); **injury** noxa (noun f. 1)
- inland** mediterraneus (adj. A)
- inluminans** (part. B) luminescent
- innatus** (part. A + Dative or with 'in' + Ablative) borne within; *in lichens*, sunken, immersed
- inner** interior (adj. compar.); **innermost** intimus (adj. A)
- innocuus, innoxius** (both adj. A) harmless
- innominatus** (adj. A) unnamed
- innovans** (part. B) renewing
- innovation** innovatio (noun f. 3)
- innoxius** (adj. A) harmless
- innumerus** (adj. A), **innumerabilis** (adj. B) countless
- inodorus** (adj. A) scentless
- inoperculatus** (adj. A) without a lid *or* operculum
- inordinatio** (noun f. 3) **Voigtii** (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *inordinatio* is declined) Voigt fault
- inordinatus** (adj. A) irregular, not ordered; **inordinate, inordinatim, inordinaliter** (all adv.) disorderly, irregularly
- inquinus** (adj. A) naturalised, introduced
- inquinatus** (part. A) fouled, polluted, stained
- insculptus** (part. A) engraved, cut into
- insect** insectum (noun n. 2); **insect-** (in Lat. comp.) insecti-, (in Gk comp.) entomo-
- inserted** insertus, intrusus (both part. A), affixus (adj. A); **insertion** insertio (noun f. 3)

**inside** [*noun*] pars (noun f. 3) interior (adj. B); *also* [*adj.*] internus, penitus (both adj. A); **on the inside**, **inwardly** intra, intus, intrinsecus, interius, introrsum, penitus (all adv.); **lying on the inside** intrarius (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) end-, endo-; **turned inside out** eversus (part. A)

**insidens** (part. B + Dative) sitting on, situated on

**insignis** (adj. B) outstanding, distinguished by; **insigniter** (adv.) remarkably, notably

**insimul** (adv.) at the same time

**insipidus** (adj. A) tasteless, insipid

**insitum** (noun n. 2) graft [*scion*]; **insiticius**, **insititius** (both adj. A) grafted

**inspersus** (part. A) sprinkled upon

**inspissatus** (part. A) thickened

**instead of** vice (adv. + Genitive), ad invicem (adv. phr.) ; pro- (pref. in Lat. comp.)

**instructus** (part. A + Ablative) bearing, furnished

**insuetus** (adj. A) unusual, strange

**insula** (noun f. 1) island; **insularis** (adj. B) insular

**insuper** (prep. + Accusative, rarely Ablative) above; *also* (adv.) from above

**integer** (adj. A) entire [see p. 00]; **integerrimus** (adj. A sup.) quite entire; **integri-** (in Lat. comp.) entire

**integument** integumentum (noun n. 2)

**intensely** intense, valde (both adv.)

**inter** (prep. + Accusative) among, between, during; also pref. in Lat. comp.; **interaneus** (adj. A) inward, internal

**intercalary** intercalaris (adj. B); **intercalary band** [*in diatoms*] copula (noun f. 1)

**interceptus** (part. A) intercepted, interrupted

**intercurrents** (part. B) running between

**interdum** (adv.) infrequently, sometimes

**interea** (adv.) meanwhile

**intergeniculum** (noun n. 2) intergeniculum

**interim**, **ad** (adv. phr.) meanwhile

**interior** (adj. compar.) inner; **interius** (adv.) on the inside, inwardly

**interjacens** (part. B) intervening

**interjectus** (part. A) placed between

**intermediate** intermedius (adj. A), [*passing from one to another*] transitorius (adj. A)

**intermingled** commixtus (part. A); **intermingling** commiscens (part. B)

**intermixed** immixtus (part. A)

**internal** interaneus, internus (both adj. A); **internally** interne (adv.)

**internodium** (noun n. 2) hypocotyl, internode

**internus** (adj. A) internal, inward; **interne** (adv.) inwardly, internally

**interordinatus** (adj. A) fitted together

**interpetiolar** interpetiolaris (adj. B)

**interpositus** (part. A) placed between, interposed

**interrupted** interruptus (part. A); **interruptedly** interrupte (adv.)

**interspersus** (adj. A) interspersed, strewn

**interstitium** (noun n. 2) interstice, space between

**interstria** interstria (noun f. 1)

**interthecial** interthecialis (adj. B)

**interval** intervallum, spatium (both noun n. 2)

**intervening** interjacens (part. B)

**interwoven** implexus, implicatus, implicitus (all part. A)

**intimus** (adj. A) innermost; **intime** (adv.) inwardly, internally

**intinium** (noun n. 2) intine, inner layer of spore

**into** in, intra (both prep. + Accusative)

**intonsus** (adj. A) shaggy, bristly

**intortus** (part. A) twisted, bent upon itself

**intra** (adv., pref. in Lat. comp.) on the inside, inwardly; *also* (prep. + Accusative) within, into, during

**intracalycinus** (adj. A) intracalycine, within the calyx

**intracellularis** (adj. B) within a cell

**intramarginalis** (adj. B) intramarginal, within and near the margin

**intrarius** (adj. A) lying on the inside, turned towards the axis

**intrastaminalis** (adj. B) intrastaminal, within the stamens

**intricate** contortuplicatus (adj. A), intricatus (part. A); **intricately** intricate (adv.)

**intrinsecus** (adv.) on the inside, inwardly

**intro** (adv.) inwardly [*indicates motion*]; *also* pref. in Lat. comp.

**introduced** inquilinus (adj. A), introductus (part. A); **introduced into** intromissus (part. A with *in* + Accusative)

- introflexus** (adj. A) bent inwards  
**intromissus** (part. A with *in* + Accusative) introduced into  
**introrsum** (adv.) on the inside, inwardly  
**introrsus** (adj. A) introrse  
**intrusus** (part. A) inserted  
**intumescens** (part. B) swelling up  
**intus** (adv.) on the inside, inwardly  
**inunctus** (adj. A) shining, glossy  
**inundatus** (part. A) flooded  
**-inus** (Gk or Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates possession *or* resemblance  
**invadens** (part. B) invading, attacking; **invasus** (part. A) invaded, attacked  
**inventus** (part. A) discovered, found  
**inverse, inversum** (both adv.) upside down; **inversus** (part. A) turned about *or* upside down  
**invicem** (adv.) in turn, alternately, one after another; **ad invicem** instead of  
**invisible** invisibilis (adj. B)  
**involucre** involucrum (noun n. 2); **involucral** involucralis (adj. B);  
**involucrate** involucratus (adj. A); **involucel** involucellum (noun n. 2);  
**involucral scale** tegula (noun f. 1)  
**involucrellum** involucrellum (noun n. 2)  
**involutus** (part. A) involute, rolled inwards, enveloped; **involvens** (part. B) enveloping  
**inward** internus (adj. A); **inwardly** interne, intime, intrinsecum, introrsum (all adv.); [*indicating motion*] intro (adv.)  
**-io** (Lat. suff., noun f. 3, with verb as stem) indicates a result, usually abstract  
**iodine** iodium (noun n. 2); **iodide** iodidum (noun n. 2); **iodate** iodas (noun m. 3); **iodised** iodatus, iodisatus (both adj. A)  
**ion-, iono-** (in Gk comp.) violet-coloured  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (pron.) himself, herself, itself [see p. 00]  
**iridescent** (part. B) iridescent  
**iron** ferrum (noun n. 2); *also* ferreus (adj. A)  
**irregular** asymmetricus, inordinatus, zygomorphicus (all adj. A), irregularis (adj. B); **irregularly** asymmetricice, inordinate, inordinatim, inordinaliter, irregulariter (all adv.)  
**irriguus** (adj. A) well-watered, soaked

- irritabilis** (adj. B) sensitive [*to a stimulus*]  
**is** (determ. pron. m.) it [see p. 00]  
**isabellinus** (adj. A) isabella, soiled tawny yellow  
**ischno-** (in Gk comp.) thin, slender  
**isidium** isidium (noun n. 2); **isidiatus** (adj. A) with isidia; **isidioideus** (adj. A) having the form of an isidium  
**island** insula (noun f. 1); **pertaining to islands** insularis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) neso-  
**iso-** (in Gk comp.) equal, like  
**isobilateralis** (adj. B) isobilateral  
**isodiametrus** (adj. A) isodiametrical  
**isogamete** isogameta (noun f. 1)  
**isolated** sejunctus, segregatus (both part. A)  
**isomerus** (adj. A) isomalous  
**isophyllus** (adj. A) isophyllous; [*in mosses and ferns*] stem and branch leaves all the same  
**isostichus** (adj. A) isostichous  
**isosyntype** isosyntypus (noun m. 2)  
**isotomic** isotomicus (adj. A)  
**isotomous** isotomus (adj. A)  
**isotype** isotypus (noun m. 2)  
**isovalvate** isovalvatus (adj. A)  
**issuing from** enatus (part. A)  
**isthmus** isthmus (noun m. 2); **isthmoid** isthmoideus (adj. A)  
**it** is [m.], ea [f.], id [n.] (pron.) [see p. 00]; ille [m.], illa [f.], illud [n.] (dem. pron.) [see p. 00]; when the subject of a verb, 'it' is part of that word and is not translated separately, e.g. *differt*, it differs  
**ita** (adv.) so, thus; **itaque** (adv.) consequently, therefore  
**iter** (noun n. 3) journey  
**iterum** (adv.) again, a second time; **iterum atque iterum** again and again  
**-iticus** (Gk suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates fitness for something  
**itidem** (adv.) likewise  
**itself, of** sui (pron., m., n.), suae (f.)  
**-itius** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with verb as stem) indicates a completed action

**-ius** (Gk or Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates resemblance *or* connection

**ivory** [*colour*] eburneus (adj. A)

**-ivus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun or verb as stem) indicates ability to do something

**-izans** (Lat. suff., part. B, with noun as stem) indicates forming *or* becoming like

## J

**jam, iam** (adv.) now

**jamdudum** (adv.) long ago

**jelly** gelatina (noun f. 1); **jelly-like** gelatinus, gelineus, tremelloideus, tremellosus (all adj. A)

**jodum** (noun n. 2) iodine *q.v.*

**join** [*union*] junctura (noun f. 1); **joined** colligatus, conflatus, connatus, conjunctus, conjugatus, consociatus, junctus (all part. A), sy-, syl-, sym-, syn-, sys- (all pref. in Gk comp.);

**joining** jungens (part. B); **joined together** colligatus (part. A)

**joint** articulus (noun m. 2), geniculum (noun n. 2), junctura (noun f.1);

**jointed** articulatus (part. A); **joint (segment)** articulus (noun m. 2); arthro- (in Gk comp.)

**jointly** conjuncte (adv.)

**journey** iter (noun n. 3)

**juba** (noun f. 1) [*in grasses*] a panicle

**jugatus** (part. A) yoked together in pairs

**jugum** (noun n. 2) yoke, collar

**juice** succus (noun m. 2); **juicy** succidus, succosus (both adj. A)

**juiceless** exsuccus (adj. A)

**julaceus** (adj. A) julaceous, catkin-like, bearing catkins

**junceus** (adj. A) rush-like; **juncetum** (noun n. 2) rushy place; **juncosus** (adj. A) full of rushes; **juncifolius** (adj. A) rush-leaved

**junctio** (noun f. 3) connection, union

**junctus** (part. A) joined, united; **junctura** (noun f. 1) join, joint, union

**jungens** (part. B) joining, linking

**just** admodum, modo (both adv.); **just as** sicut (adv.)

**juste** (adv.) rightly, justly; **justus** (adj. A) rightful, just

**jutting out** projectus (part. A), procurrens (part. B), extans (part. B)

**juvenilis, juvenis** (both adj. B) young, juvenile

**juventus** (noun f. 3) youth

**juxta** (adv., *also* prep. + Accusative) next to, near, beside

## K

**kalium** (noun n. 2) potassium

**keel** carina (noun f. 1); **belonging to the keel** carinalis (adj. B); **with a keel** carinatus (adj. A); **without a keel** ecarinatus (adj. A)

**keiki** [*in orchids*] corisca (noun f. 1)

**kept** asservatus, conservatus (both part. A)

**kermesinus** (adj. A) crimson

**kernel** nucleus (noun m. 2), granum (noun n. 2); **having a kernel** nucleatus (adj. A)

**key** [*to species etc.*] clavis (noun f. 3), [*fruit*] samara (noun f. 1)

**kidney-shaped** [*flat object*] reniformis (adj. B), [*solid object*] nephroideus (adj. A); **kidney-** (in Gk comp.) nephro-

**killing** enecans (part. B), funestus (adj. A); (in Lat. comp.) -cidus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -ctonus (adj. A)

**kind: what kind or sort?** qualis (pron. adj., decl. like *laevis*, *see* p. 00)

**kingdom** regnum (noun n. 2)

**kleptochloroplast** kleptochloroplastus (noun m. 2)

**knee, bent like** geniculatus, genuflexus (both adj. A)

**knife-like, knife-shaped** cultriformis (adj. B)

**knobbed** torulosus (adj. A); **knobby** nodosus (adj. A); **knob-like** gongylodes (adj. C)

**knot** [*swelling esp. on stem*] ganglion (noun n. 2); **knot-like** gangliiformis (adj. B); **with knot-like swellings** ganglioneus (adj. A)

**known** cognitus (part. A)

## L

**labellum** labellum (noun n. 2)

**labiatus** (adj. A) lipped

**labidus** (adj. A), **labilis** (adj. B) slippery



- labium** (noun n. 2) labium, lower lip of corolla; **labiosus** (adj. A) large-lipped; **labriformis** (adj. B) lip-shaped
- lac** (noun n. 3) milky juice
- laccatus** (adj. A) appearing varnished
- lacerate** lacerus (adj. A), laceratus (part. A)
- lachno-** (in Gk comp.) woolly
- lacinia** (noun f. 1) lacinia; **laciniatus** (adj. A) laciniate; **laciniifolius** (adj. A) laciniate-leaved; **laciniosus** (adj. A) very laciniate; **lacinula** (noun f. 1) small *or* fine lacinia
- lacking** carens, deficiens (both part. B), destitutus, demptus (both part. A), nullus (adj. A); **it is lacking** deest (verb, 1st pers. sing., pres.); **they are lacking** desunt (verb, 3rd pers. pl., pres.); **lacking** (in Gk comp. before a vowel) an-
- lacrimiformis** (adj. B) shaped like a tear drop
- lactaneus, lacteus, lactineus** (all adj. A) milky-white; **lactarius** (adj. A) milky; **lactifer** (adj. A) milk-producing; **lacti-** (in Lat. comp.) milk, milky [*refers to either colour or latex*]
- lactose** lactosum (noun n. 2)
- lacuna** (noun f. 1) lacuna, airspace [*in tissue*], depression [*in lichen thallus*], also a pond; **lacunosus** (adj. A) covered with depressions
- lacus** (noun m. 4) lake [see p. 00]; **lacuster** (adj. A), **lacustris** (adj. B) of lakes
- ladder-like** scalariformis, scalaris (both adj. B)
- laden** onustus (adj. A)
- laesio** (noun f. 3) damage, injury; **laesus** (adj. A) damaged
- laesura** (noun f. 1) [*in some ferns*] a ridge around the apertural slit
- laete** (adv.) brightly, lightly
- laevis, levis** (both adj. B) smooth [see p. 00]; **laevigatus, levigatus** (both adj. A) smooth, smoothed
- laevulosus** (adj. A) laevulose
- lageniformis** (adj. B) flask-shaped
- lake** lacus (noun m. 4) [see p. 00]; **of lakes** lacuster (adj. A), lacustris (adj. B)
- lamella** (noun f. 1) thin plate of tissue, gill; **lamellaris** (adj. B), **lamellatus** (adj. A), **lamellosus** (adj. A) lamellate; **lamellula** (noun f. 1) lamellule
- lamina** (noun f. 1) blade; **laminaris, laminiformis** (both adj. B) blade-like
- lampro-** (in Gk comp.) bright, shining

- lana** (noun f. 1) wool; **lanatus**, **lanosus** (both adj. A) woolly
- lanceolate** lanceolatus (adj. A), (in Lat. comp.) lanci-
- land** terra (noun f. 1); *also* terrestris (adj. B); **land, relating to** agrarius (adj. A)
- laneus** (adj. A) wool-like
- languescens** (part. B) wilting, withering
- lani-** (in Lat. comp.) woolly
- lanosus** (adj. A) woolly
- lanuginosus** (adj. A) woolly
- lapidolithus** (noun m. 2) lapidolith
- lapidosus** (adj. A) stony; **lapideus** (adj. A) stone-hard, made of stone; **lapidescens** (part. B) becoming stone-hard; **lapidulus** (noun m. 2) small stone, pebble. *See also* **saxum**
- lapis** (noun m. 3) stone
- lappa** (noun f. 1) burr; **lappaceus** (adj. A) burr-like
- lapsus** (noun m. 4) fall [*shedding*]
- laqueus** (noun m. 2) snare, noose
- large** grandis (adj. B), magnus (adj. A); (in Lat. comp.) grandi-, magni-; (in Gk comp.) macro-, mega-, megalo-; **very large** giganteus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) megisto-
- largus** (adj. A) abundant, plentiful
- lasi-**, **lasio-** (in Gk comp.) hairy, woolly
- last** extremus, postremus, ultimus (all adj. A); **at last** demum, denique, ad postremum (all adv.); **lastly** demum (adv.)
- late** (adv.) broadly, widely
- late** serotinus (adj. A); **produced late** [*e.g. after the flowers*] hysterogenus (adj. A)
- later** postea, posterius (both adv.), [*at last*] demum, tandem (both adv.), [*following after*] posterior (comp. adj.)
- lateral** lateralis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) pleur-, pleuro-; **laterally** lateraliter (adv.)
- lateri-** (in Lat. comp.) lateral to, at the side
- latericius**, **lateritius** (both adj. A) brick-red
- latex** latex (noun m. 3)
- lati-** (in Lat. comp.) broad, wide
- latinus** (adj. A) Latin

**latitudo** (noun f. 3) breadth, width

**latrorsus** (adj. A) latrorse

**latter** [*the*] hic (dem. pron. m)

**latticed** cancellatus, clathratus (both adj. A)

**latus** (adj. A) broad; **late** (adv.) broadly; **perlate** (adv.) very broad

**latus** (noun n. 3) side [see p. 00]

**lavandulaceus, lavandulus** (both adj. A) lavender-violet

**laxus** (adj. A) loose; **laxe** (adv.) loosely; **laxi-** (in Lat. comp.) loose

**layer** stratum (noun n. 2); **in distinct layers** stratosus (adj. A); **having layers** tabulatus (adj. A); **-layered** (in Lat. comp.) -stratus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -stromaticus (adj. A)

**lazulinus** (adj. A) blue

**lead** plumbum (noun n. 2); **leaden** plumbeus (adj. A); **leaden grey** molybdeus (adj. A)

**leaf** folium, phyllum (both noun n. 2); **leaf-like** foliaceus (adj. A); **relating to a leaf** foliaris (adj. B); **with leaves** foliatus (adj. A); **-leaved** (in Lat. comp.) -foliatus, -folius (both adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -phyllus (adj. A); **leaf-bearing** foliifer, foliatus (both adj. A); **leaf-like** foliiformis (adj. B); **leafy, full of leaves** foliosus, foliaceus, frondosus (all adj. A); **unfolding of leaves** frondescencia (noun f. 1); **with leaves clasping stem** amplexifolius (adj. A); **without leaves** aphyllus (adj. A); **having leaves fallen** defoliatus (adj. A); **relating to leaves** (in Gk comp.) phyll-; **taking the place of a leaf** folianeus (adj. A)

**leaf-fall** defoliatio (noun f. 3)

**leafless** aphyllus (adj. A), infrons (adj. B)

**leaflet** foliolum (noun n. 2); **-leafletted**-foliolatus (adj. A, in Lat. comp.)

**leaf-like** foliiformis (adj. B), frondosus (adj. A)

**leaf sheath** vagina (noun f. 1) folii (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *vagina* is declined)

**leaning** inclinatus (part. A)

**least** minimus (adj. A); **at least** minimum, saltem, quidem (all adv.), ut minimum (adv. phr.)

**leather-coloured** alutaceus (adj. A)

**leathery** coriaceus (adj. A)

**-leaved** (in Lat. comp.) -folius, -foliatus, (in Gk comp.) -phyllus (all adj. A)

**leaving** linquens (part. B); **leaving off** abiens (part. B)

- lebetiformis** (adj. B) basin-shaped
- lecanorinus** (adj. A) lecanorine
- lecideinus** (adj. A) lecidine, having apothecia
- lectotype** lectotypus (noun m. 2)
- lectus** (noun m. 2) bed
- lectus** (part. A) collected, chosen, gathered
- leek green** porraceus, prasinus (both adj. A)
- left, to the** in sinistrum (adv. phr.)
- left behind** relictus (part. A)
- legumen** (noun n. 3) legume, pod [see p. 00]; **leguminaceus** (adj. A) having the character of a legume; **leguminosus** (adj. A) legume-bearing
- lei-, leio-**, (in Gk comp.) smooth
- lemma** lemma (noun n. 3)
- lemon-scented** citriodorus (adj. A); **lemon-shaped** citriformis, limoniformis (both adj. B); **lemon yellow** citrinus (adj. A)
- length** longitudo (noun f. 3); **lengthened** protentus (part. A), elongatus (adj. A); **lengthwise, longitudinally** longitrorsum (adv.), longitudinaliter (adv.), in longitudinem (adv. phr.); **equal in length** aequilongus (adj. A)
- length, at** demum, denique (both adv.)
- lenis** (adj. B) soft; **leniter** (adv.) softly
- leniter** (adv.) gently, mildly
- lens** lens (noun f. 3); **lens-shaped** lenticularis, lentiformis (both adj. B); **under a lens** sub lente (adv. phr.)
- lenticularis** (adj. B) lens-shaped
- lentiginosus** (adj. A) freckled
- lentus** (adj. A) pliant, sluggish, viscous
- lepidotus** (adj. A) covered with small scales; **lepido-** (in Gk comp.) scale-, scaly-
- lepiotoid** lepiotoideus (adj. A)
- leprosus** (adj. A) scurfy on the surface
- lept-, lepto-** (in Gk comp.) slender, thin, narrow
- leptosporangiatu**s (adj. A) leptosporangiate
- lesiniformis** (adj. B) awl-shaped
- lesion** laesio (noun f. 3)

**less** minor (adj. B, compar. of *parvus*); *also* minus (adv.); (in Gk comp.) mei-, meio-

**lethalis** (adj. B) lethal, deadly

**leuc-, leuco-** (in Gk comp.) white-[*with colour terms indicates pale tone*]

**leucocysta** (noun f. 1) leucocyst

**leucosporous** leucosporus (adj. A)

**level** planus (adj. A); **levelled** aequatus, deplanatus (both part. A); **on the same level** complanus (adj. A)

**levis** *see* **laevis**

**leviter** (adv.) lightly

**liane** liana (noun f. 1)

**liber** (adj. A; Genitive sing. *liberi*) free [see p. 00]; **liberatus** (part. A) set free, released; **libere** (adv.) freely

**liber** (noun m. 2; Genitive sing. *libri*) book, inner bark of tree [see p. 00]

**lichen** lichen (noun m. 3)

**lid** operculum, pyxidium (both noun n. 2); **lidded** operculatus, pyxidatus (both adj. A)

**life** vita (noun f. 1)

**ligature** colligatio (noun f. 3)

**light** [*illumination*] lux (noun f. 3); **light-loving** photophilus (adj. A)

**light** [*pale*] dilutus (part. A), pallidus (adj. A); **lightly** laete, leviter, modice, tenuiter (all adv.)

**lignum** (noun n. 2) wood; **ligneus, lignosus** (both adj. A) woody; **lignescens** (adj. B) becoming woody; **lignatilis** (adj. B) growing on wood

**ligule** ligula (noun f. 1); **ligulate** ligulatus (adj. A), loratus (adj. A), loriformis (adj. B)

**liguliflorus** (adj. A) having a head of only ligulate florets

**like** [*similar*] similis (adj. B + Dative or Genitive), parilis (adj. B); (in Gk comp.) homo-, homoeo-, homoio-, iso-; **likeness** similitudo (noun f. 3); **-like** (in Lat. comp.) -formis (adj. A)

**likewise** item, itidem, similiter (all adv.), necnon, neque non (conj.)

**lilacinus** (adj. A) lilac [*colour*]

**liliaceus** (adj. A) lily-like

**limb** limbus (noun m. 2)

**limbidium** limbidium (noun n. 2)

- lime** calx (noun f. 3); **limy** calcareus (adj. A)
- limes** (noun m. 3) boundary
- limestone** saxum (noun n. 2) calcareum (adj. A)
- limi-** (in Lat. comp.) mud-
- limitatus** (part. A with ad + Accusative) bounded, bordered, confined to
- limoniformis** (adj. B) shaped like a lemon
- limosus** (adj. A) muddy, growing in muddy place
- limpidus** (adj. A) clear, transparent
- limus** (noun m. 2) mud
- line, in a single** unifariam (adv.), unifarius (adj. A)
- linea** (noun f. 1) line [*measurement*]
- linear** linearis (adj. B)
- linearifolius** (adj. A) linear-leaved
- lineatus, lineolatus** (both adj. A) marked by fine parallel lines
- lineola** (noun f. 1) [*in some diatoms*] a line on the surface of the valve
- lingua** (noun f. 1) tongue, *also* language; **linguiformis** (adj. B), **lingulatus** (adj. A) tongue-shaped
- linifolius** (adj. A) flax-leaved
- linked** concatenatus (part. A); **linking** jungens (part. B)
- linquens** (part. B) leaving, departing from
- lip** labium (noun n. 2); **lipped** labiatus (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) -chilus, -cheilus (both adj. A), cheil-, cheilo-; **large-lipped** labiosus (adj. A); **lip-shaped** labriformis (adj. B); **lower lip** [*of corolla*] labium (noun n. 2)
- liquidum** (noun n. 2) liquid; **liquescent** (part. B) becoming liquid, liquefying
- liquidus** (adj. A) clear
- lirella** (noun f. 1) lirella; **lirellatus** (adj. A) having lirella; **lirellinus** (adj. A) having long, narrow furrows
- lith-, litho-** (in Gk comp.) stone-; **-lithus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -stone
- lithophyticus** (adj. A) growing on rock
- litoral** *see littoralis*
- little** parvus, minutus (both adj. A), paulum (adv.); **very little** minimus, perpaucus (both adj. A); **extremely little** minutissimus (adj. A); **by a little** paulo, paullo (both adv.)
- littoralis, litoral** (both adj. B), **littoreus** (adj. A) pertaining to the seashore
- littus, litus** (noun n. 3) seashore, beach, bank [see p. 00]

- liver-coloured** hepaticus (adj. A)
- lividus** (adj. A) dull [*bluish*] grey
- living** vivens (part. B), vivus (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) -bius (adj. A); **in living state** in statu vivo; **it lives** habitat (verb 3rd pers. sing. pres.)
- lobe** lobus (noun m. 2); **lobed** lobatus (adj. A), (in Lat. comp.) -lobus (adj. A)
- lobule** lobulus (noun m. 2); **lobulatus** (adj. A) having small lobes
- localis** (adj. B) local
- locality** locus (noun m. 2)
- located** locatus (part. A)
- locellatus** (adj. A) chambered, locellate; **locellus** (noun m. 2) locellus
- loculus** (noun m. 2) loculus, locule; **locularis** (adj. B), **loculatus** (adj. A) having locules *or* cavities; **loculicide** (adv.) loculicidally; **loculicidus** (adj. A) loculicide; **loculosus** (adj. A) having locules *or* cavities
- locus** (noun m. 2) locality, place
- lodicule** lodicula [*in grasses*], squamula, squamella, squamellula (all noun f. 1)
- lofty** celsus, excelsus (both adj. A), exaltatus (part. A)
- lomato-** (in Gk comp.) fringed, bordered
- lomentum** (noun n. 2) loment; **lomentaceus** (adj. A) bearing *or* resembling a loment
- long** longus (adj. A); **moderately long** longiusculus (adj. A); **a long time** diu (adv.); **a very long time** diutius (adv.); **long-lasting** diutinus, diuturnus (both adj. A); **long-** (in Lat. comp.) longi-, (in Gk comp.) dolich-, dolicho-; **long ago** jamdudum (adv.); **long-lived** longaevus (adj. A)
- longaevus** (adj. A) of great age
- longe** (adv.) for a long time, far off, lengthwise
- longinquo** (adv.) far off
- longitrorsum** (adv.) lengthwise
- longitudo** (noun f. 3) length; **longitudinalis** (adj. B) longitudinal; **longitudinaliter** (adv.), **in longitudinem** (adv. phr.) lengthwise, longitudinally
- longiturnitas** (noun f. 3) duration
- longiusculus** (adj. A) moderately long
- loose** [*not crowded*] laxis (adj. A), [*free*] liber (adj. A) [see p. 00], [*not clinging together*] incohaerens (part. B); **loosely** (adv.) laxe
- lopadolithus** (noun m. 2) lopadolith

**loph-**, **lophio-**, **lopho-** (in Gk comp.) crest-, crested-  
**loratus** (adj. A), **loriformis** (adj. B) ligulate, strap-shaped  
**lorica** lorica (noun f. 1); **loricate** loricated (adj. A)  
**lovely** venustus (adj. A)  
**loving** amans (part. B), (in Gk comp.) -philus (adj. A); **it loves** amat  
 (1st pers. sing., verb *amo*)  
**low**, **low-growing** humilis (adj. B), demissus (part. A); **lowly** chaemae-  
 (in Gk comp.); **lower** infernus, inferus (both adj. A), inferior (adj.  
 compar.); **lowest** imus, infimus (both adj. A); **lowest part** imum,  
 infimum (both noun n. 2)  
**lubricus** (adj. A) smooth and slippery, lubricous  
**lucens** (part. B) glistening; **lucidus** (adj. A) shining, clear, transparent  
**lumbricalis**, **lumbriciformis** (both adj. B) worm-shaped  
**lumen** (noun n. 3) lumen  
**luminescent** inluminans (part. B)  
**lumpy** glebosus (adj. A)  
**lunaris** (adj. B), **lunatus** (adj. A), **lunulatus** (adj. A) lunate, crescent-shaped  
**luridus** (adj. A) dirty brown, drab yellow  
**lutarius** (adj. A), **lutensis** (adj. B) living on *or* in mud  
**luteus** (adj. A) deep *or* golden yellow; **luteolus** (adj. A) pale yellow,  
 yellowish; **lutescens** (adj. B) becoming yellow  
**lutum** (noun n. 2) mud  
**lux** (noun f. 3) light [*illumination*]  
**luxuriant** luxurians (part. B)  
**lying upon** *or* **close to** applicitus (part. A)  
**lyrate** lyratus (adj. A)

## M

**macer**, **macilentus** (adj. A) meagre  
**macr-**, **macro-** (in Gk comp.) large, long  
**macroconidium** macroconidium (noun n. 2)  
**macrocysta** (noun f. 1) macrocyst  
**macronema** (noun n. 3) macronema  
**macrospora** (noun f. 1) macrospore, megaspore; **macrosporangium**  
 (noun n. 2) macrosporangium, megasporangium



- macula** (noun f. 1) blotch, spot, mesh of a network [see p. 00]; **maculatus** (part. A) blotched, spotted; **maculiformis** (adj. B) spot-shaped; **maculosus** (adj. A) full of spots
- made** factus (part. A); **making** faciens (part. B); **made up of** constatus (part. A with *e* or *ex* + Ablative)
- madefactus** (part. A) moistened, soaked; **madidus** (adj. A) moist, wet
- mador** (noun m. 3) moisture
- magenteus** (adj. A) magenta
- magis** (adv.) more [*to a greater degree*]
- magni-** (in Lat. comp.) large
- magnification** magnificatio (noun f. 3); **magnified** amplificatus, auctus (both part. A); *to indicate how much*, use e.g.  $\times 10$ ,  $\times 50$
- magnitudo** (noun f. 3) size
- magnopere** (adv.) exceedingly, greatly [see p. 00]
- magnus** (adj. A) big, large; **magni-** (in Lat. comp.) large
- main** principalis (adj. B); **mainly** praecipue (adv.)
- major** (adj., comp. of magnus) greater
- making** efficiens, faciens, formans (all part. B)
- malachiteus** (adj. A) malachite green
- male** mas (adj. B), masculus (adj. A), masculinus (adj. A); *or* use symbol ♂; (in Gk comp.) andro-, -andrus (adj. A)
- malus** (adj. A) bad; **male** (adv.) badly [see p. 00]
- malvinus** (adj. A), **malvicolor** (adj. B) mauve [see p. 00]
- mamilla** (noun f. 1) nipple, teat, small protuberance; **mamillatus** (adj. A) mamillate; **mamilliformis**, **mammiformis** (both adj. B) nipple-shaped
- mancus** (adj. A) imperfect, defective
- mandarinus** (adj. A) mandarin-red
- manens** (part. B) remaining, staying
- manifestus** (adj. A) evident, obvious; **manifeste** (adv.) clearly, obviously
- manner** modus (noun m. 2)
- manocyst** manocystis (noun f. 3)
- manoxylic** manoxylon (adj. C)
- mantle** chlamys (noun f. 3); **mantled** (in Gk comp.) chlamyd-
- manubrium** (noun n. 2) manubrium

- many** multus, numerosus (both adj. A); **very many** perplurimus (adv.); **as many as** quot, tot quot (both adj. indecl.); **many-** (in Lat. comp.) mult-, multi-, plur-, (in Gk comp.) poly-
- marble** marmor (noun n. 3); **marbled** marmoratus (adj. A); **like marble, growing on marble** marmoreus (adj. A)
- marcescens** (part. B) withering but not falling off; **marcidus** (adj. A) withered
- mare** (noun n. 3) the sea [see p. 00]
- margaritaceus, margaritatus** (both adj. A) pearly, pearl-like
- margin** margo (noun m. or f. 3) [see p. 00]; **marginal** marginalis (adj. B); **margined** marginatus (adj. A); **-margined** (in Lat. comp.) -marginatus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -craspedus (adj. A); **margining** marginans (part. B); **without differentiated marginal cells** elimbatus (adj. A); **attached by the margin** palaceus (adj. A)
- marginicidalis** (adj. B) marginicidal
- marinus** (adj. A) marine, growing in the sea
- maritimus** (adj. A) growing by the sea; **maritima** (noun f. 1) coast
- mark** nota (noun f. 1), signum (noun n. 2); **marked** notatus, signatus (both part. A); **markedly** valde (adv.); **a small mark** notula (noun f. 1)
- marmor** (noun n. 3) marble; **marmoratus** (adj. A) marbled, irregularly striped *or* veined; **marmoreus** (adj. A) like marble, growing on marble
- marroninus** (adj. A) maroon
- marsh** palus (noun f. 3); (in Gk comp.) heleo-, helo-; **marshy** palustris (adj. B), uliginosus (adj. A); **pertaining to marshes** (in Lat. comp.) palud-
- marsupiat** (adj. A) pouched; **marsupiiiformis** (adj. B) pouch-shaped, pocket-like; **marsupium** (noun n. 2) pouch, pocket
- mas** (adj. B, *also* n. 3, both with stem *mar-*), **masculus** (adj. A), **masculus** (adj. A) male
- massa** (noun f. 1) a mass, lump
- massed** acervulatus (adj. A)
- massula** (noun f. 1) group of microspores enclosed in hardened mucilage
- mastigonema** (noun n. 3) mastigoneme, flimmer, tinsel
- mastoideus** (adj. A) nipple-like
- mat** teges (noun f. 3)
- maternalis** (adj. B) maternal, within the ovary
- matrix** matrix (noun f. 3)

- matt** [*made dull*] hebetatus (part. A), [*unpolished*] impolitus (adj. A), [*shaded*] opacus (adj. A)
- matted** implicitus, implexus (both adj. A)
- mattress, like a** xylostromatoideus (adj. A)
- maturatio** (noun f. 3) ripening; **maurescens** (part. B) ripening; **maturitas** (noun f. 3) ripeness, maturity; **in maturitate** at maturity; **maturus** (adj. A) ripe
- mature** (adv.) early
- mature** [*ripe, adult*] adultus (adj. A), exoletus (part. A), maturus (adj. A); **not yet mature**, adulescens (part. B)
- matutinus** (adj. A) of the morning
- mauve** malvinus (adj. A), malvicolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]
- maxime** (adv.) extremely, greatly; **maximus** (adj. A, superl. of *magnus*); **ut maximum** (adv. phr.) greatest [*at most*]
- maybe** fortasse (adv.)
- mazaedium** (noun n. 2) mazedium
- meadow** pratum (noun n. 2); **pertaining to meadows** pratensis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) nomo-
- meagre** macer, macilentus (both adj. A)
- mealy** farinosus (adj. A)
- means** [*ability*] ops (noun f. 3)
- meanwhile** interea (adv.), ad interim (adv. phr.)
- measured** mensus (part. A); **measuring** metiens (part. B)
- medianus** (adj. A) middle; **medianum** (noun n. 2) the middle; **medi-** (in Lat. comp.) middle-
- medicinal** medicinalis, officinalis (both adj. B), medicus (adj. A)
- medifixus** (adj. A) attached at *or* by the middle
- mediostratum** (noun n. 2) mediostratum
- mediterraneus** (adj. A) inland, *also* Mediterranean
- medium** (noun n. 2) the middle; **medius** (adj. A) central, mid
- medivalvis** (adj. B) attached to middle of valve
- medulla** (noun f. 1) medulla, pith; **medullosus** (adj. A) medullary, pithy
- meeting** conveniens, incidens (both part. B + Accusative)
- mega-, megalo-** (in Gk comp.) large
- megasporangium** megasporangium (noun n. 2)

- megaspore** megaspora, macrospora (both noun f. 1)  
**megasporocarpa** (noun f. 1), **megasporocarpus** (noun m. 2),  
**megasporocarpium** (noun n. 2) megasporocarp  
**megisto-** (in Gk comp.) very large  
**mei-, meio-** (in Gk comp.) less, smaller, fewer  
**meiosporangium** meiosporangium (noun n. 2)  
**mel** (noun n. 3) honey; **melleus** (adj. A) honey-coloured  
**mel-, melan-, melano-** (in Gk comp.) black, very dark  
**melior** (adj. compar.), **melius** (adv.) better  
**melleus** (adj. A) honey-coloured; **mellitus** (adj. A) pertaining to honey  
**melting** deliquescent (part. B)  
**membrane** membrana (noun f. 1), (in Gk comp.) hymen-;  
**membranous** membranaceus (adj. A); **membrane-bearing**  
 membranifer (adj. A)  
**membrum** (noun n. 2) member, element [*a part of something*]  
**meniscatus** (adj. A) crescent-shaped  
**meniscoideus** (adj. A) thin, convex  
**mensis** (noun m. 3) month; **menstruus** (adj. A) monthly, lasting a month  
**mensus** (part. A) measured  
**mentiens** (part. B) imitating  
**merging** transiens, commiscens (both part. B)  
**mericarp** mericarpium (noun n. 2)  
**meridionalis** (adj. B) south, southern  
**meristem** meristema (noun n. 3)  
**merosporangium** merosporangium (noun n. 2)  
**-merus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) refers to parts *or* their numbers  
**mesh** macula (noun f. 1) [see p. 00]  
**meso-** (in Gk comp.) middle-  
**mesocarp** mesocarpium (noun n. 2)  
**mesonervus** (noun m. 2) main vein of frond  
**mesoperidium** (noun n. 2) mesoperidium  
**mesospore** mesospora (noun f. 1)  
**met-, meta-** (pref. in Gk comp.) among, associated with, changed, substituted  
 for

- metallic** metallicus (adj. A)  
**metiens** (part. B) measuring  
**metre** metrum (noun n. 2), meter (noun m. 2); **a metre long** metralis (adj. B)  
**metula** metula (noun f. 1)  
**metuloid** metuloida (noun f. 1)  
**micaceus** (adj. A) covered with glistening particles, growing on mica  
**micans** (part. B) gleaming and slightly metallic  
**micro-** (in Gk comp.) small  
**microconidium** microconidium (noun n. 2)  
**microcyst** microcystis (noun f. 3)  
**microphylline** [*with minute leaflets or leafy scales*] microphyllinus (adj. A)  
**micropyle** micropyle (noun f. 1) [see p. 00]  
**microscope** microscopium (noun n. 2); **microscopic** microscopicus (adj. A)  
**microsporangium** microsporangium (noun n. 2)  
**microspore** microspora (noun f. 1)  
**microsporocarp** microsporocarpa (noun f. 1), microsporocarpus (noun m. 2), microsporocarpium (noun n. 2)  
**mid** medius (adj. A)  
**middle** medianus, medius (both adj. A); **the middle** medianum, medium (both noun n. 2); **attached at or by the middle** medifixus (adj. A); **middle-** (in Lat. comp.) medi-, (in Gk comp.) meso-  
**midrib** costa (noun f. 1); **relating to the midrib** costalis (adj. B)  
**mihi** (pron. Dative) to me [*indicates responsibility or authority*]  
**mild** mitis (adj. A); **mildly** leniter (adv.)  
**mildew** robigo (noun f. 3)  
**milk** [*juice*] lac (noun n. 3), latex (noun m. 3); **milky** [*juice*] lacteus, lactarius (both adj. A); **milk-white** [*colour*] lactaneus, lacteus, lactineus (all adj. A), lacticolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]; **milk-producing** lactifer (adj. A); **milk-, milky** [*refers to both colour and latex*] (in Lat. comp.) lacti-, (in Gk comp.) gal-, gala-, galacto-; **milk-like** [*in consistency*] emulsivus (adj. A)  
**mille** (num. adj. indecl.) thousand  
**mimosinus** (adj. A) mimosa-yellow  
**mingled** immixtus, mistus, mixtus (all part. A), miscellus, misturatus (both adj. A)

- miniatus** (adj. A) flame-scarlet
- minimus** (adj. A) least, very small; **minimum** (adv.), **ut minimum** (adv. phr.) at least; **minime** (adv.) very little, least; **minimopere** (adv.) not at all
- minor,-us** (comp. adj., from *parvus*) smaller, lesser
- minuens** (part. B) diminishing
- minus** (comp. adj. n., from *parvus*) smaller; *also* adv., less
- minutus** (adj. A) little; **minute** (adv.) minutely, finely; **minutissimus** (adj. A) extremely little
- miscellus** (adj. A) mixed
- mischoblastiomorpha** mischoblastiomorpha (noun f. 1)
- misshapen** deformis (adj. B)
- mistake** erratum (noun n. 2)
- mistus** (part. A), **misturatus** (adj. A) mingled, mixed
- mitis** (adj. A) mild, soft
- mitosporangium** mitosporangium (noun n. 2)
- mitratus** (adj. A) mitre-like, having a mitre
- mixed** *see* mingled
- mixomorpha** (noun f. 1) mixomorph
- mobile** mobilis (adj. B)
- moderately** moderate, modice, parce (all adv.), bono modo (adv. phr.)
- modo** (adv.) just
- modus** (noun m. 2) manner, way of happening
- moist** humectus, humidus, madidus, uvidus (all adj. A), (in Gk comp.) hygro-; **moistened** humectatus, humefactus, madefactus (all part. A); **moisture** mador (noun m. 3); **moisture-absorbing** bibulus (adj. A)
- molecule** molecula (noun f. 1); **molecular** molecularis (adj. B)
- mollis** (adj. B) soft; **molliusculus** (adj. A) somewhat soft; **molliter** (adv.) softly
- molybdeus** (adj. A) leaden grey
- mon-, mono-** (in Gk comp.) one-
- monas** (noun f. 3, stem *monad-*) unit
- moniliformis** (adj. B) moniliform
- monocarpic** monocarpus, monocarpicus, monocarpaeus, monotocus, hapaxanthus (all adj. A)

- monochasial** monochasialis (adj. A); **monochasium** monochasium (noun n. 2)
- monocotyledon** monocotyledon (noun m. 3)
- monoecious** monoecius, monoicus (both adj. A);  
**gynomonoecious** gynomonoecius (adj. A)
- monolete** monoletus (adj. A)
- monomitic** monomiticus (adj. A)
- monomorphic** monomorphus (adj. A)
- monophyllus** (adj. A) [*in lichens*] monophyllous
- monopodium** monopodium (noun n. 2); **monopodial** monopodialis (adj. B)
- monosiphonius** (adj. A) monosiphonous
- monotocus** (adj. A) producing offspring once
- mons** (noun m. 3) mountain
- monstruosus, monstrosus** (adj. A) monstrous, abnormal
- montanus** (adj. A) montane
- month** mensis (noun m. 3); **monthly, lasting a month** menstruus (adj. A)
- monti-** (in Lat. comp.) mountain-
- monticola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of mountains
- montosus** (adj. A) mountainous
- moor** ericetum (noun n. 2)
- morbidus, morbosus** (both adj. A) diseased; **morbus** (noun m. 2) disease
- morchelliformis** (adj. B) morel-shaped
- more** plus (adj., comp. of *multus*), [*in quantity*] plus (adv.), [*in degree*] magis (adv.); may also be expressed by comp. of adj. [see p. 00]; **more than** ultra (adv.), plus quam; **more or less** approximatus (part. A), plus minusve (adv. phr.); **little more than** quasi (adv.); **more than usual** (in Gk comp.) pleio-
- morning, of the** matutinus (adj. A)
- morphology** morphologia (noun f. 1)
- morphus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -shaped
- mosaic** mosaicus (adj. A)
- moschatus** (adj. A) musk-scented
- moss** muscus (noun m. 2); **mossy, moss-like** muscosus (adj. A); **moss-** (in Gk comp.) bryo-, -bryon-, bryum (noun n. 2)
- most** plurimus (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) pleisto-

- mostly** [*generally*] *plerumque* (adv.), [*commonly*] *vulgo* (adv.), [*at most*] *ut maximum* (adv. phr.), [*for the most part*] *pro parte maxima*
- motile** *mobilis* (adj. B), *movens* (part. B); **motus** (noun m. 4) movement
- mottled** *colubrinus* (adj. A)
- mouldy** *mucidus*, *mucedinosus* (both adj. A)
- mound** [*of earth*] *agger* (noun m. 3), *tumulus* (noun m. 2)
- mounded** *acervatus*, *cumulatus* (both adj. A)
- mountain** *mons* (noun m. 3); **montane** *montanus* (adj. A);  
**mountainous** *montosus* (adj. A); **mountain-** (in Lat. comp.) *monti-*,  
 (in Gk comp.) *oreo-*
- mouth** *os* (noun n. 3; stem *or-*), *ostium* (noun n. 2)
- movement** *motus* (noun m. 4)
- movens** (part. B) motile, moving
- mox** (adv.) soon
- much** *multus* (adj. A), also [*in comparisons*] *multum* [see p. 00], *multo*  
 (both adv.), also *za-* (pref. in Gk comp.); **much as** *tanquam* (adv.);  
**much more ... than** *multo magis* (adv.) ... *quam*; **not much** *vix*, *paulo*  
 (both adv.), *non nihil* (adv. phr.); **too much** *nimis* (adv.)
- mucidus**, **mucedinosus** (both adj. A) mouldy
- muciger** (adj. A) mucus-bearing *or*-producing
- mucilage** *mucus* (noun m. 2); **mucilaginous** *mucilaginus*, *mucosus* (both  
 adj. A); **mucus-** (in Gk comp.) *myx-*, *myxo-*
- mucocysta** (noun f. 1) vesicle secreting mucus-like material
- mucro** *mucro* (noun m. 3)
- mucronate** *mucronatus* (adj. A) [see p. 00]
- mucus** (noun m. 2) slime; **mucosus** (adj. A) slimy, mucilaginous
- mud** *limus* (noun m. 2), *lutum* (noun n. 2); **muddy**, **growing in muddy place**  
*limosus* (adj. A); **mud-** (in Lat. comp.) *limi-*; **living on or in mud**  
*lutarius* (adj. A), *lutensis* (adj. B)
- mult-**, **multi-** (in Lat. comp.) many-
- multifariam** (adv.) in many rows; **multifarius** (adj. A) many-rowed
- multiplex** (adj. B) having many parts of the same kind together, as a double  
 flower
- multiplication** *multiplicatio* (noun f. 3); **multiplied** *multiplicatus*, *auctus*  
 (both part. A)
- multiseptatus** (adj. A) with many septa



**multo** (adv.) by much, much; **multum** (adv.) greatly, much [see p. 00];  
**multus** (adj. A) many, much; **multo magis** (adv. phr.) ... **quam** much  
 more ... than; **mult-**, **multi-** (in Lat. comp.) many-; **multoties** (adv.)  
 many times

**munitus** (part. A) provided with [*fortified by*]

**muralis** (adj. B) of or on walls

**huriaticus** (adj. A) hydrochloric

**muricatus** (adj. A) muricate

**muriformis** (adj. B) muriform [*appearing wall-like*]

**murinus** (adj. A) mouse-grey

**murus** (noun m. 2) wall, low ridge

**muscosus** (adj. A) mossy, moss-like; **muscus** (noun m. 2) moss

**mushroom-shaped** fungiformis, fungilliformis (both adj. B)

**musk-scented** moschatus (adj. A)

**mutabilis** (adj. B) changeable, variable [*esp. of colour*]; **mutatus** (part. A)  
 altered, changed

**mutatio** (noun f. 3) mutation

**muticus** (adj. A) blunt, awnless

**mutilatus** (part. A) mutilated

**mutue**, **mutuo** (both adv.) mutually, reciprocally

**myc-**, **mycel-**, **myceto-**, **myco-**, **-myces** (in Gk comp.) fungal, fungus-, -fungus

**mycelial** mycelialis (adj. B); **mycelium** mycelium (noun n. 2), tela  
 (noun f. 1); **mycology** mycologia (noun f. 1)

**mycenoideus** (adj. A) *Mycena*-like

**mycobiont** mycobion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti-*)

**mycorrhiza** (noun f. 1) mycorrhiza; **mycorrhizalis** (adj. B) mycorrhizal

**myri-**, **myrio-** (pref. in Gk comp.) countless, very many

**myriosporous** myriosporus (adj. A)

**myrme-**, **myrmec-**, **myrmeco-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to ants

**myx-**, **myxo-** (in Gk comp.) slimy, slime-, mucus-

## N

**nail-** [*bolt*] (in Gk comp.) gompho-

**naked** nudus (adj. A); **somewhat naked** nudiusculus (adj. A); **having a  
 naked fruit** gymnocarpus (adj. A); **naked-** (in Gk comp.) gymno-

- name** nomen (noun n. 3); **named** nominatus (adj. A)  
**namely** nempe, scilicet (both adv.), id est [= i.e.]  
**nan-, nann-, nano-, nanno-** (in Gk comp.) dwarf  
**nanus** (adj. A) dwarf  
**napiformis** (adj. B) turnip-shaped  
**narcotic** narcoticus (adj. A)  
**narrow** angustus (adj. A); **narrowed** angustatus [see p. 00], contractus  
 (both part. A); **narrowing** descrescens (part. B); **narrowly** anguste  
 (adv.); **very narrow** perangustus (adj. A); **very narrowly**  
 peranguste (adv.); **narrow-** (in Lat. comp.) angusti-, (in Gk comp.)  
 lept-, lepto-  
**nascens** (part. B) arising, beginning  
**natalis** (adj. B) natal, pertaining to birth  
**natans** (part. B) floating  
**native** indigenus, natus (both adj. A)  
**natural** naturalis (adj. B); **naturally** naturaliter (adv.)  
**naturalised** inquilinus (adj. A)  
**natus** (part. A) born  
**naucorioideus** (adj. A) *Naucoria*-like  
**navel-like** umbilicatus (adj. A), umbiliciformis (adj. B)  
**navicula** (noun f. 1) boat; **navicularis, naviculiformis** (both adj. B)  
 boat-shaped  
**ne** (adv. & conj.) no, not  
**near** apud (prep. + Accusative), prope (adv. or prep. + Accusative)  
 [see p. 00], pros- (pref. in Gk comp.); **near to** ad (prep. + Accusative),  
 juxta (adv. or prep. + Accusative); **nearness** vicinia (noun f. 1), vicinitas  
 (noun f. 3)  
**neat** concinnus (adj. A)  
**nebulosus** (adj. A) clouded  
**nec, neque** (both adv. & conj.) not, and not; **nec ... nec, neque ...**  
**neque** neither ... nor; **nec ... et, neque ... et** not only ... but also;  
**necnon, neque non** (both conj.) and also, likewise  
**neck** collum (noun n. 2)  
**-necked** (in Lat. comp.) -collis (adj. B)  
**necridium** necridium (noun n. 2)

- necrosis** (noun f. 3) necrosis, death [*usu. of a specific part of a tissue*];  
**necro-** (in Gk comp.) dead; **necrotroph** necrotrophus  
 (noun m. 2)
- nectar** nectar (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **nectary** nectarium (noun n. 2);  
**nectar-bearing** nectarifer, nectarifluus, nectareus (all adj. A); **nectary**  
 (in Gk comp.) -stigma (noun n. 3)
- needle-like** acicularis, aciformis (both adj. B), acerosus (adj. A)
- neighbouring** vicinus, propinquus (both adj. A); **neighbour** (in Gk comp.) -  
 geton (noun m. 3); **neighbourhood** vicinia (noun f. 1), vicinitas  
 (noun f. 3)
- neither** *see* **nec**
- nema** (in Gk comp., noun n. 3) thread, staminal filament; **nemato-**  
 (in Gk comp.) thread-like
- nemathecium** nemathecium (noun n. 2)
- nematocyst** nematocysta (noun f. 1)
- nematodontous** nematodontus (adj. A)
- memoralis** (adj. B), **memorosus** (adj. A) pertaining to woods; **nemus**  
 (noun n. 3) woodland grove
- nempe** (adv.) certainly, namely
- neo-** (in Gk comp.) new-
- neotype** neotypus (noun m. 2)
- nephroideus** (adj. A) kidney-shaped [*solid object*]; **nephro-** (in Gk comp.)  
 kidney-
- neque** *see* **nec**
- nervatura** (noun f. 1) veining; **nervalis** (adj. B) situated on a nerve
- nerve** nervus (noun m. 2); **nerved** nervatus, nervosus (both adj. A);  
**without nerves** enervis (adj. B), enervius (adj. A), nullinervius (adj. A);  
**having nerves that disappear before reaching the margin**  
 evanidinervius (adj. A); **nerve-** (in Lat. comp.) nervi-, (in Gk comp.)  
 neuro-; **-nerved** (in Lat. comp.) -nervis (adj. B), -nervius (adj. A),  
 (in Gk comp.) -neurus (adj. A); **nervation** nervatio, venatio (both  
 noun f. 3)
- nervisequens** (adj. B) following the nerves
- neso-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to islands
- nestling, nesting in** nidulans (part. B)
- net** rete (noun n. 3), (in Lat. comp.) reti-, (in Gk comp.) dictyo-; **netlike**,  
**netted** reticulatus (adj. A)

**network** plexus (noun m. 4), reticulum (noun n. 2); **network of joined veins or hyphae** anastomosis (noun f. 3); **irregularly forming a network**, anastomosans (part. B);

**neuro-**, **-neurus** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) nerved

**neuter** neuter (adj. A)

**never** nunquam, haud (both adv.), nullo modo, nec unquam (both adv. phr.)

**nevertheless** attamen, nihilominus, tamen (all adv.)

**new** novus (adj. A); **new-** (in Lat. comp.) novi-, novo-, (in Gk comp.) neo-

**next** proximus (adj. A + Dative), secundus (adj. A); **next to** juxta (prep. + Accusative)

**nexus** (adj. A) tied together, entwined; *also* (noun m. 4) a fastening, synthesis

**nidulans** (part. B) lying in a cavity, embedded in pulp, nestling in

**niger** (adj. A) glossy black; **nigrescens** (part. B) becoming black; **nigrifactus** (part. A) blackened; **nigricans** (part. B) blackish

**night** nox (noun f. 3); **at night** nocte, noctu (both adv.); **belonging to night** nocturnus (adj. A); **pertaining to night** (in Gk comp.) nyct-

**nihil**, **nil** (both noun n. indecl.), **nihilum** (noun n. 2) nothing; **nihil** (adv.) by no means; **nihilominus** (adv.) nevertheless

**nimbospore** nimbospora (noun f. 1)

**nimirum** (adv.) certainly

**nimis** (adv.) excessively, too much

**nine** novem (num. adj. indecl.); **nine each** novenus (adv.), noveni (distr. num., adj. A, pl.); **nine times** novies, noviens (both adv.);

**ninth** nonus (ord. num., adj. A); **nine-** (in Lat. comp.) noven-, novem-, (in Gk comp.) ennea-

**nipple** mamilla, papilla (both noun f. 1); **nipple-shaped** mamilliformis, mammiformis (both adj. B); **nipple-like** mastoideus (adj. A); **having small nipple-like protuberances** mamillatus (adj. A); **nipple-** (in Gk comp.) thele-

**nisi** (adv.) unless; **nisi si** (adv. phr.) except if; **nisi ut** (adv. phr.) except that

**nitens** (part. B), **nitidus** (adj. A) shining, gleaming; **nitior** (noun m. 3) glossiness, sheen

**ivalis** (adj. B) snowy, snow-like; **niveus** (adj. A) snow-white; **nivescens** (part. B) becoming snow-white; **nivosus** (adj. A) full of snow

**nivicola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of snow

- nix** (noun f. 3) snow [see p. 00]  
**no** ne (adv. + conj.)  
**nobis** (pron. Dative) to us, to me [*indicates responsibility or authority*]  
**nocturnus** (adj. A) nocturnal; **noctiflorus** (adj. A) night-flowering  
**nodding** nutans (part. B)  
**node** geniculum (noun n. 2); **without nodes** enodis (adj. B)  
**nodosus** (adj. A) knobby, nodular  
**nodule** nodulosus (noun m. 3); **nodule-bearing** nodulifer (adj. A);  
**nodule-like** noduliformis (adj. B)  
**nodus** (noun m. 2) node  
**nomen** (noun n. 3) name; **nominatus** (adj. A) named; **nomenclatura**  
(noun f. 1) nomenclature  
**nomo-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to meadows  
**noncupatus** (part. A) enumerated  
**non** (adv.) not; also pref. in Lat. comp.; **nonnihil** (adv.) not much; **non**  
**vero** (adv. phr.) truly not; **nonnisi** (adv.) only; **non fere** (adv. phr.)  
scarcely  
**nondum** (adv.) not yet  
**none** nullus (adj. A)  
**nonnihil** (adv.) somewhat [*not much*]  
**nonnumquam** (adv.) sometimes  
**nonus** (ord. num., adj. A) ninth  
**nor** neque (conj.) *see* **nec**  
**normal** normalis (adj. B)  
**north** septentrio (noun m. 3); **northern** borealis, septentrionalis (both adj.  
B); **of the far north** hyperboreus (adj. A)  
**not** non, nihil (both adv.), nullo modo (adv. phr.), ne (adv. + conj.); **not at**  
**all** nihil (adv., *used only with a verb*), haud; **not, and not** nec, neque  
(both adv. & conj.); **not only ... but also** nec ... et, neque ... et;  
**not yet** nondum (adv.)  
**nota** (noun f. 1) feature, mark; **notatus** (part. A) marked  
**notable** insignis, notabilis (both adj. B); **notably** insigniter (adv.)  
**notch** incisura (noun f. 1); **notched** emarginatus (adj. A)  
**noth-, notho-** (in Gk comp.) false-  
**nothing** nihil, nil (both noun n. indecl.), nihilum (noun n. 2)

- nothomorpha** (noun f. 1) nothomorph
- nothospecies** (noun f. 5) nothospecies [see p. 00]
- nothus** (adj. A) false
- nōto-** (in Gk comp.) south-, southern; also **nōto-** (in Gk comp.) dorsal, back-
- notula** (noun f. 1) a small mark, note *or* article
- novellus** (adj. A) young
- novem** (num. adj. indecl.) nine; **noveni** (distr. num., adj. A pl.) nine each; **novies**, **noviens** (both adv.) nine times; **noven-**, **novem-** (in Lat. comp.) nine-
- novitates** (noun f. 3, pl.) new things
- novus** (adj. A) fresh, new
- now** dum, jam, iam, nunc (all adv.)
- nowhere** nullibi, nusquam (both adv.)
- noxa** (noun f. 1) injury; **noxius** (adj. A) injurious, harmful
- nubes** (noun f. 3) cloud; **nubilus** (adj. A) cloudy, greyish blue
- nubilis** (adj. B) ready for pollination
- nuciformis** (adj. B) nut-shaped; **nucifer** (adj. A) nut-bearing; **nucatus** (adj. A) nut brown
- nucleatus** (adj. A) having a nucleus, kernel *or* stone
- nucleomorpha** (noun f. 1) vestigial nucleus
- nucleus** nucleus (noun m. 2)
- nucula** (noun f. 1) nutlet
- nudus** (adj. A) bare, naked; **nudiusculus** (adj. A) somewhat naked
- nullibi** (adv.) nowhere
- nullinervius** (adj. A) nerveless
- nullo modo** (adv. phr.) never, by no means
- nullus** (adj. A) none, lacking
- number** numerus (noun m. 2)
- numerous** numerosus, multus, plurimus (all adj. A)
- nunc** (adv.) at present, now
- nunquam** (adv.) never
- nuper** (adv.) recently
- nusquam** (adv.) nowhere

**nut** nux (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **nut-shaped** nuciformis, pyreniformis  
(both adj. B); **nut-bearing** nucifer (adj. A); **nut-** (in Gk comp.)  
caryo-

**nutans** (part. B) nodding

**nutlet** nucula (noun f. 1)

**nutrimentum** (noun n. 2) food; **nutricius** (adj. A), **nutriens** (part. B),  
**nutritorius** (adj. A) nourishing

**nutrix** (noun f. 3) host plant

**nux** (noun f. 3) nut [see p. 00]

**nyct-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to night

## O

**ob** (prep. + Accusative) because of

**ob-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) inversed-, reversed-

**obductus** (part. A) covered; **obducens** (part. B) covering

**obese** obesus (adj. A)

**oblatus** (adj. A) oblate

**obligate** obligatus (part. A)

**oblique** obliquus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) plagio-; **obliquely** oblique (adv.)

**obliteratus** (part. A) effaced, cancelled

**oblitus** (part. A) smeared

**oblong** oblongus (adj. A); **broadly oblong** late oblongus (adv., adj. A);  
**narrowly oblong** anguste oblongus (adv., adj. A)

**obrutus** (part. A) buried

**obscurus** (adj. A) dull, dusky; **obscure** (adv.) dull

**observation** observatio (noun f. 3)

**observed** observatus (part. A); **observed through a lens** sub lente (adv. phr.)  
observatus (part. A). *See also magnification*

**obsitus** (part. A) covered over with

**obsoletus** (adj. A) rudimentary or absent

**obstructus** (part. A) obstructed, blocked

**obtectus** (part. A) covered; **obtegens** (part. B) covering

**obtritrus** (part. A) crushed

**obturamentum** (noun n. 2) bung, stopper

- obturatorus** (adj. A) blunt, obtuse  
**obtuse** (in Gk comp.) ambly-  
**obtusus** (adj. A) obtuse, blunt; **obtusatus** (part. A) blunted; **obtusiuscule** (adv.) obtusely; **obtusangulus** (adj. A) obtuse-angled  
**obvallatus** (part. A) surrounded with a wall *or* rampart  
**obversus** (part. A) turned towards *or* in opposite way  
**obvious** manifestus (adj. A); **obviously** manifeste, manifesto (both adv.)  
**obvolutus** (part. A) wrapped around [*e.g. overlapping margins*]  
**occasionally** subinde (adv.)  
**occidentalis** (adj. B) western  
**occlusus** (part. A) closed up  
**occultus** (part. A) concealed, hidden; **occultans** (part. B) hiding  
**occupied** occupatus (part. A); **occupying** occupans (part. B)  
**occurring** [*present*] occurrens (part. B), praesens (adj. B), [*sited here and there*] dispositus (part. A), [*found*] repertus (part. A)  
**occurs, it** occurrit (verb 3rd pers. sing. ind. act.)  
**oceanus** (noun m. 2) ocean; **oceanicus** (adj. A) pertaining to the ocean  
**ocellulus** (noun m. 2) minute ocellus  
**ocellus** (noun m. 2) eye [*also* used for a distinct zone at mouth *or* centre of a corolla, e.g. legumes]; *also, in diatoms, lichens, liverworts* ocellus; **ocellatus** (adj. A) having bi-coloured spots; **oculo nudo** (adv. phr.) with naked eye  
**ochraceus** (adj. A) ochre-yellow  
**ocrea** ocrea, ochrea (both noun f. 1)  
**octo** (num. adj. indecl.) eight; **octavus** (ord. num., adj. A) eighth; **octiens**, **octies** (both num. adv.) eight times; **octoni** (num. adj. distr. pl.) eight each; **octo-** (in Lat. & Gk comp.) eight-  
**oculus** (noun m. 2) eye  
**odd-pinnate** imparipinnatus (adj. A)  
**-odes** *see-oides*  
**odon-, odont-, onto-** (in Gk comp.) tooth-, toothed; *likewise* **-odon** (noun m. 3, stem *odont-*), **-odontus** (adj. A) -tooth, toothed  
**odor** (noun m. 3) odour, smell [see p. 00]; **odorus**, **odorifer** (both adj. A), **odoratus** (part. A) having a smell; **inodorus** (adj. A) without odour



- oecium** (noun n. 2, in Gk comp.) -house, -room
- oedo-** (in Gk comp.) swollen
- of** usu. expressed by genitive case
- officinalis** (adj. B) medicinal
- offset** propagulum (noun n. 2)
- often** saepe (adv.); **very often** persaepe, plerumque, saepissime (all adv.)
- oideae** (suff., adj. A, Nominative f. pl.) added to stem of name of type genus to form name of a subfamily
- oides** (adj. B), **-odes** (adj. B), **-oideus** (adj. A) (all Gk or Lat. suff., with noun as stem) like, resembling
- oidium** oidium (noun n. 2)
- oil** oleum (noun n. 2); **oily, with oil drops** oleosus, oleaceus (both adj. A)
- old** vetus (adj. B); **old age** senectus (noun f. 3); **growing old** senescens (part. B); see **age**
- oleaceus** (adj. A) oily
- oleagineus, oleaginosus** (both adj. A) fleshy and oily
- olens** (part. B) smelling, odorous
- olentus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates abundance or fulness
- oleraceus** (adj. A) pertaining to kitchen garden
- oleum** (noun n. 2) oil; **oleosus, oleaceus** (both adj. A) oily
- olidus** (adj. A) emitting a smell
- olig-, oligo-** (in Gk comp.) few-
- olim** (adv.) formerly
- olivaceus** (adj. A) olive green
- olliformis** (adj. A) pot-shaped
- omissus** (part. A) left out
- omma-** (in Gk comp.) eye
- omnis** (adj. B) all, every; **omnino** (adv.) altogether, entirely, everyway, exclusively; **omnifariam, omnilateraliter** (both adv.) on all sides
- on** [*to indicate position*] in (prep. + Ablative), [*to indicate position above or over*] super (prep. + Ablative)
- once** semel (num. adv.); **once more** iterum (adv.)
- onco-** (in Gk comp.) swollen
- one** unus (num. adj. A) [see p. 00], [*unique*] unicus (adj. A), [*solitary*] singularis (adj. B), [*one each*] singuli (num. distr. adj. pl.); **one-** (in Lat. comp.) uni-, (in Gk comp.) mon-, mono-; **one-sided** secundus (adj. A)

**onion** [-like] alliaceus (adj. A)

**only** modo, nonnisi, solum, tantum (all adv.); *also* unicus, unus, solus (all adj. A), singularis (adj. B)

**onustus** (adj. A) full, laden

**oogonium** oogonium (noun n. 2)

**oosphaera** (noun f. 1) oosphere

**oosporangium** oosporangium (noun n. 2)

**oospore** oospora (noun f. 1)

**opacum** (noun n. 2) shady place

**opacus** (adj. A) dull, darkened

**opaque** impellucidus (adj. A)

**open** apertus, reclusus (both adj. A); **opening** aperiens, dehiscens (both part. B); **an opening** [hole] apertura (noun f. 1), foramen (noun n. 3), orificium (noun n. 2); **-opening** (in Gk comp.) -pyle (noun f. 1); **opening** [unfolding] apertio (noun f. 3); **period of opening of flower** efflorescentia (noun f. 1)

**operculatus** (adj. A) having a lid, operculate; **operculum** (noun n. 2) cap, lid

**opertus** (part. A) hidden

**ophio-** (in Gk comp.) snake-like

**-ophthalmus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) eye

**opposite** oppositus (adj. A); **opposite to** adversum (adv. or prep. + Accusative), contra (adv. or prep. + Accusative); **in an opposite direction** contrarius (adj. A); **opposite** (in Gk comp.) enantio-

**ops** (noun f. 3) means, ability, support

**optime** (adv.) excellently

**opus** (noun n. 3) work [including published], labour; **opusculum** (noun n. 2) a little work [published]

**or** vel, aut, seu, sive (all conj.), an (conj., indicating doubt), -ve (conj. suff.)

**ora** (noun f. 1) coast

**orange** aurantiacus, armeniacus, calendulinus, croceus, tangerinus (all adj. A); **marigold orange** calendulinus (adj. A)

**orbicular** orbicularis (adj. B), orbiculatus (adj. A)

**orbis** (noun m. 3) circle, *also* the world

**orchideus** (adj. A) orchid-like

**orculiformis** (adj. B) cask-shaped, barrel-shaped

- order** ordo (noun m. 3); **to form name of an order** add suff. *-ales*  
(Nominative pl., adj. B) to stem of name of the type family
- ordinatio** (noun f. 3) arrangement, pattern
- ordinatus** (part. A) arranged; **ordinate**, **ordinatim** (both adv.) in good order,  
regularly
- oreo-**, **ores-** (in Gk comp.) mountain-
- organ** organum (noun n. 3)
- orgya** (noun f. 1) fathom [*measurement*]
- oriens** (noun m. 3) east; *also* **oriens** (part. B) arising; **orientalis** (adj. B)  
eastern
- orificium** (noun n. 2) an opening, orifice
- origin** origo (noun f. 3); **original** originalis (adj. B), originarius (adj. A),  
(pref. in Gk comp.) arche-, proto-
- oriundus** (ger. adj. A + *ab* or *ex*) derived *or* descended from
- orius** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with verb as stem) indicates capability *or* function
- ornatus** (part. A) decorated
- ornith-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to birds
- orth-**, **ortho-** (in Gk comp.) straight, erect
- orthostichus** (adj. A) orthostichous
- orthotropus** (adj. A) orthotropical
- ortus** (part. A) descended *or* arisen from
- os** (noun n. 3; Genitive sing. oris) mouth
- os** (noun. n. 3; Genitive sing. ossis) bone
- oscillating** aestuans, oscillans (both part. B)
- oscillatorius** (adj. A) able to swing
- osis** (Gk suff., noun f. 3) used in mycology to coin names of diseases
- osm-** (in Gk comp.) scented; **-osma** (noun f. 1) (in Gk comp.) scent
- osseus** (adj. A) bony; **ossiformis** (adj. B) bone-shaped
- ostendens** (part. B) displaying
- osteolithus** (noun m. 2) osteolith
- ostiole** ostiolum (noun n. 2); **ostiolar** ostiolaris (adj. B); **false ostiole**  
pseudo-ostiolum (noun n. 2)
- ostium** (noun n. 2) mouth, entrance
- osus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates abundance *or* marked  
development

- otarium** otarium (noun n. 2) [*in diatoms*] one of a pair of membranous costae
- other** [*of two*] alter (adj. A), [*among several*] alius, alia, aliud (adj. A), [*different*] diversus (adj. A), [*the rest*] ceterus (adj. A); **the one ... the other ...** alius ... alius ...; **other** (in Gk comp.) allo-, hetero-
- otherwise** aliter [*differently*], caeterum, ceterum, cetera, ceteroquin (all adv.)
- otus** (Gk suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates resemblance *or* possession
- outer** exterior (adj. compar.), externus (adj. A); **outermost** extimus (adj.)
- outline** adumbratio (noun f. 3); ambitus (noun m. 4); circumscriptio (noun f. 3)
- out of** a, ab (prep. + Ablative), ex (prep. + Ablative); (in Gk comp.) apo-
- outside** extra, extus (both adv.); **on the outside** exter (adj. A), extus (adv.); **outward, external** externus (adj. A); **from or on the outside** extrinsecus (adv.); **outermost** extremus (adj. A); **towards the outside** extrorsus (adv.)
- outspread** explanatus (part. A)
- outward, outside** (pref. in Gk comp.) ect-, ecto-, exo-
- outwardly** extrinsecus (adv.)
- outwards** de- (pref. in Lat. comp.)
- ovalis** (adj. B) oval
- ovary** ovarium (noun n. 2)
- ovate** ovatus (adj. A); **angular-ovate** trullatus (adj. A), trulliformis (adj. B)
- over** super, supra (both adv. or prep + Accusative); *also* [= **more than**] plus quam (adv. phr.); (in Gk comp.) hyper-
- overall** ubique (adv.)
- overhanging** imminens, impendens, superpendens (all part. B)
- overlapping** imbricatus, superpositus (both part. A)
- over-running** incurrens (part. B)
- overspread** obductus, obtectus (both part. A)
- over-topped** superatus (part. A); **over-topping** superans, excedens (both part. B)
- ovi-** (in Lat. comp.) egg-
- ovoid** ovoideus (adj. A)
- ovule** ovulum (noun n. 2), gemmula (noun f. 1); **ovulate** ovulatus (adj. A); **ovule-bearing** gemmulifer (adj. A)

**ovum** (noun n. 2) egg; **oviformis** (adj. B) egg-shaped  
**owing to** propter (prep. + Accusative)  
**own, its** suus, proprius (both adj. A)  
**oxy-** (in Gk comp.) sharp, pointed

## P

**pachy-** (in Gk comp.) thick-, stout-  
**pachycaulis** (adj. B) pachycaul  
**pachydermus, pachydermicus** (both adj. A) thick-skinned  
**packed** [*touching*] contiguus (adj. A), [*stuffed*] farctus (part. A), [*filled up*] impletus (part. A)  
**paene** (adv.) almost, nearly  
**pagina** (noun f. 1) surface; *also* page  
**painted** depictus, fucatus, pictus (all part. A)  
**pair** par (noun n. 3); **in pairs** binatim, (adv.), didymus (adj. A), [*yoked together*] jugatus (part. A); **paired** binatus, gemellus, geminus, geminatus (all adj. A), (in Lat. comp.) -jugus (adj. A)  
**palaceus** (adj. A) attached by the margin  
**palaemoneus** (adj. A) shrimp-red  
**palaeo-** (in Gk comp.) ancient  
**palate** palatum (noun n. 2)  
**pale** pallidus (adj. A), dilutus (part. A), pallens (part. B); **becoming pale** pallescens (part. B); **palely** pallide, dilute (both adv.)  
**palea** palea (noun f. 1)  
**paleaceus** (adj. A) chaffy, chaff-like in texture  
**paleatus** (adj. A) clothed in scales  
**palisade** vallum (noun n. 2); palisade-like **vallaris** (adj. B)  
**pallens** (part. B) pale; **pallescens** (part. B) becoming pale; **pallidus** (adj. A) light, pale; **pallide** (adv.) palely  
**palma** (noun f. 1) palm [tree], *also* palm of hand; **palmaris** (adj. B) width of palm of hand (c. 8 cm)  
**palmatum** (adj. A) palmate; **palmatim** (adv.) palmately  
**palus** (noun f. 3) bog, marsh, swamp; **palustris** (adj. B) marshy, swampy;  
**palud-** (in Lat. comp.) pertaining to marshes

**pan-** (in Gk comp.) all

**panduratus** (adj. A), **panduriformis** (adj. B) fiddle-shaped

**panicle** panícula (noun f. 1), [*in grasses*] juba (noun f. 1);

**paniculate** paniculatus (adj. A); **panicle-like** paniculiformis (adj. B);

**paniculately** paniculatum (adv.)

**panniformis** (adj. B), **pannosus** (adj. A) felted, appearing felt-like

**pantropicus** (adj. A) pantropical

**papaverinus** (adj. A) poppy-red

**papery** papyraceus, chartaceus (both adj. A)

**papilionaceus** (adj. A) papilionaceous, butterfly-like

**papilla** (noun f. 1) nipple; **papillatus** (adj. A) papillate; **papilliformis** (adj. B) nipple-like; **papillosus** (adj. A) papillose

**pappus** pappus (noun m. 2) [*tuft of hairs etc. on fruit of Asteraceae and Valerianaceae*]; coma (noun f. 1) [*tuft of hairs on a seed*]

**papula** (noun f. 1) pustule; **papulosus** (adj. A) pustular

**papulospora** (noun f. 1) papulospore

**papyraceus** (adj. A) papery

**par** (noun n. 3) pair [see p. 00]

**para-** (pref. in Gk comp.) beside, compared to

**parabolicus** (adj. A) parabolical

**paracapillitium** (noun n. 2) paracapillitium

**paracingulum** (noun n. 2) paracingulum

**parallel** parallelus (ad. A); **parallel-nerved** parallelinervius, paralleloneurus, parallelivenius (all adj. A); **in a parallel way** parallele (adv.)

**paramylon** paramylon (noun n. 2)

**paranema** paranema (noun n. 3)

**paraphyllum** paraphyllum (noun n. 2)

**paraphysis** paraphysis (noun f. 3); **paraphysoid network** reticulum (noun n. 2) paraphysium (noun f. 3 Genitive pl., remains unchanged if *reticulum* is declined)

**paraplectenchyma** (noun n. 3) tissue consisting of isodiametric cells

**parasite** parasitus (noun m. 2); **parasitic** parasiticus (adj. A)

**parasulcus** parasulcus (noun n. 2)

**parasymbiont** parasymbion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti-*)

**parathecium** parathecium (noun n. 2)

**paratype** paratypus (noun m. 2)  
**parce** (adv.) moderately; **parcus** (adj. A) sparing, moderate  
**parenchyma** parenchyma (noun n. 3); **parenchymatous** parenchymatus, parenchymaticus (both adj. A)  
**parent** parens (noun m. or f. 3); **parental** parentalis (adj. B)  
**pariens** (part. B) bringing forth  
**paries** (noun m. 3) wall [see p. 00]; **parietalis** (adj. B) parietal  
**parilis** (adj. B) equal, like  
**paripinnatus** (adj. A) paripinnate  
**pariter** (adv.) equally  
**paroecius, paroicus** (both adj. A) paroecious  
**part** pars (noun f. 3)  
**partectum** partectum (noun n. 2)  
**parthenocarpicus** (adj. A) parthenocarpic  
**partial** partialis (adj. B)  
**partibilis** (adj. B) divisible, easily separated  
**particle** particula (noun f. 1); **sprinkled with small particles** atomatus (adj. A); **covered with glistening particles** micaceus (adj. A)  
**particular** peculiaris (adj. B)  
**partim** (adv.) in part  
**partition** dissepimentum, disseptum, septum (all noun n. 2)  
**partitus** (part. A) cut more than half-way to midrib, partite  
**partly** partim (adv.)  
**parum** (adv.) too little, not enough  
**parumper** (adv.) for a short time  
**parvus** (adj. A) small; **parvulus** (adj. A) very small; **parvitas** (noun f. 3) smallness  
**passim** (adv.) everywhere, indiscriminately  
**passing into** transiens, confluens, decrescens (all part. B); **passing over** transitivus (adj. A)  
**patella** (adj. A) patella; **patelliformis** (adj. B) dish-shaped  
**patens** (part. B) spreading; **patenter** (adv.) patently  
**patерiformis** (adj. B) saucer-shaped  
**patho-** (in Gk comp.) relating to suffering and disease.

- pattern** ordinatio (noun f. 3)
- patulus** (part. A) spreading
- paucus** (adj. A) few; **pauci-** (in Lat. comp.) few-
- paulatim** (adv.) gradually
- paulisper** (adv.) for a short time
- paulo, paullo** (adv.) by a little, not much
- paulum** (adv.) a little [see p. 00]
- pausiacus** (adj. A) olive-green
- pea** pisum (noun n. 2); **pea-green** pisinus (adj. A); **pea-shaped** pisiformis (adj. B)
- peach-coloured** persicinus (adj. A)
- peak** cacumen (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]
- pear-shaped** pyriformis (adj. B), dacryoideus (adj. A)
- pearly, pearl-like** margaritaceus, margaritatus, perlarius (all adj. A)
- peaty** turfusus (adj. A); **peaty moor** turfosum (noun n. 2); **peat-bog** turbarium (noun n. 2)
- pebble** lapidulus (noun m. 2)
- pecten** (noun m. 3) comb; **pectinatus** (adj. A) comb-like; **pectinatim** (adv.) in the form of a comb; **pectini-** (in Lat. comp.) comb-
- peculiaris** (adj. B) special, particular
- pedalis** (adj. B) a foot long
- pedatus** (adj. A) pedate; **pedati-** (in Lat. comp.) pedately
- pedicellus** (noun m. 2) pedicel; **pedicellaris** (adj. B), **pedicellatus** (adj. A) pedicellate
- pedunculus** (noun m. 2) peduncle; **peduncularis** (adj. B), **pedunculatus** (adj. A) pedunculate
- peeled off** desquamatus (part. A)
- peg** clavus, gomphus (both noun m. 2)
- pel-, per-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) very, extra
- pelagicus** (adj. A) pertaining to the sea
- pellicle** pellicula (noun f. 1)
- pellis** (noun f. 3) skin
- pellucidus** (adj. A) clear, translucent but not hyaline
- peltate** peltatus (adj. A), peltiformis (adj. B)
- pelviformis** (adj. B) basin-shaped
- pelvis** (noun f. 3) basin, bowl



- pendens** (part. B), **pendulus**, **pendulinus** (both adj. A) hanging
- penetrans** (part. B), **penetralis** (adj. B) penetrating
- penicillatus** (adj. A), **penicilliformis** (adj. B) penicillate, *also* pencil-like;  
**penicillum** (noun n. 2) shaped like a tuft of hairs
- peninsula** peninsula (noun f. 1)
- penitus** (adj. A) inward, inner; *also* (adv.) deeply, inwardly
- penninervis** (adj. B), **pennivenius** (adj. A) pinnately nerved
- penta-** (in Gk comp.) five-
- pepo** (noun m. 3) fruit [*of Cucurbitaceae*]
- per** (prep. + Accusative) during, for, through; **per-** (in Lat. comp.) through, very, completely
- peragrans** (part. B) traversing
- perangustus** (adj. A) very narrow; **peranguste** (adv.) very narrowly
- perceptible** perceptibilis (adj. B)
- percurrens** (part. B) percurrent
- perdurans** (part. B) persistent
- peregrinus** (adj. A) foreign
- perennial** perennis (adj. B); **perennating** perennans (part. B)
- perfect** [*flowers*] hermaphroditus, perfectus, teleianthus (all adj. A), bisexualis (adj. B)
- perfecte** (adv.) fully, completely
- perfluens** (part. B) flowing
- perfoliate** perfoliatus (adj. A)
- perforated** perforatus, pertusus (both part. A); **much perforated** cribratus, cribrosus (both adj. A); **not perforated** imperforatus (part. A)
- perfume** *see* **scent**
- perhaps** fortasse, forte, forsan, fors (all adv.); *also* **perhaps** an (conj.)
- perhiemans** (part. B) persisting through winter
- peri-** (pref. in Gk comp.) about, around
- perianth** perianthium (noun n. 2)
- periaxial** periaxialis (adj. B)
- pericarp** pericarpium (noun n. 2)
- perichaetium** perichaetium (noun n. 2); **perichaetial** perichaetialis (adj. B)
- periclinal** periclinalis (adj. B)

- periderm** periderma (noun f. 1)  
**peridiole** peridiolum (noun n. 2)  
**peridium** peridium (noun n. 2)  
**perigon** perigonium (noun n. 2); **perigonal** perigonalis (adj. B)  
**perigynium** perigynium (noun n. 2); **perigynous** perigynus (adj. A)  
**perinium** (noun n. 2) outer spore wall  
**period** periodus (noun f. 2)  
**peripheria** (noun f. 1) circumference; **periphericus** (adj. A), **peripheralis** (adj. B) peripheral; **peripheraliter** (adv.) peripherally  
**periphragm** periphragma (noun n. 3)  
**periphysis** periphysis (noun f. 3)  
**periphysoid** periphysioideus (adj. A)  
**periplast** periplastus (noun m. 2)  
**periplekton** periplekton (noun n. 2)  
**perisporium** (noun n. 2) perispore  
**peristome** peristomium (noun n. 2)  
**perithecium** perithecium (noun n. 2); **perithecial** perithecialis (adj. B)  
**peritropus** (adj. A) peritropical  
**perlarius** (adj. A) pearly  
**perlate** (adv.) very broadly  
**permanens** (part. B) persistent, lasting  
**perpaucus** (adj. A) very few, very little  
**perpendicular** perpendicularis (adj. B) [*indicates downwards; for erect use erectus etc.*]  
**perplurimus** (adv.) very many  
**perruptus** (part. A) broken through  
**persaepe** (adv.) almost always  
**persicinus** (adj. A) peach-coloured  
**persistent** perdurans, persistens, permanens, remanens (all part. B)  
**personate** personatus (adj. A)  
**perspicuus** (adj. A) evident; **perspicue** (adv.) clearly, decidedly  
**pertenuis** (adj. B) very thin  
**pertinens** (part. B) belonging  
**pertusus** (part. A) perforated  
**perule, perular scale** perula (noun f. 1); **perulate** perulatus (adj. A)

- pervagatus** (part. A) widespread, common  
**pervalvaris** (adj. A) pervalvar, transapical  
**perviridis** (adj. B) deep green  
**pervulgatus** (part. A) very common  
**pes** (noun m. 3) foot  
**petal** petalum (noun n. 2); **petal-like** petalinus, petaloideus (both adj. A);  
**without petals** apetalus (adj. A)  
**petiole** petiolus (noun m. 2); **petiolate** petiolatus (adj. A); **borne on petiole**  
petiolaris (adj. B)  
**petiolule** petiolulus (noun m. 2); **petiolulate** petiolulatus (adj. A)  
**petra** (noun f. 1) rock; **petraeus** (adj. A) growing among rocks; **petrensis**  
(adj. B) found among rocks; **petrosa** (noun n. 2, pl.) rocky places;  
**petrosus** (adj. A) full of rocks  
**phae-, phaeo-** (in Gk comp.) dark-  
**phaeophorum** (noun n. 2) chromatophore  
**phalanx** (noun f. 3) bundle [*usu. stamens united by filaments*]  
**phanero-** (in Gk comp.) visible, easily seen  
**phaneropore** phaneroporus (noun m. 2); **phaneroporous** phaneroporus  
(adj. A)  
**phaseoliformis** (adj. B) bean-shaped  
**phialid** phialis (noun f. 3)  
**phialospore** phialospora (noun f. 1)  
**-philus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) loving  
**phlebo-** (in Gk comp.) vein-; **-phlebius** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -veined  
**-phloius** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -bark[ed]  
**phoeniceus** (adj. A) scarlet  
**-phorus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) bearing, carrying; **-phorum** (noun n. 2, in Gk  
comp.) carrier [*the support for another organ*]  
**photobiont** photobion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti-*)  
**photophilus** (adj. A) light-*or* sun-loving  
**-phragma** (noun n. 3, in Gk comp.) -partition  
**phragmospore** phragmospora (noun f. 1)  
**phyco-** (in Gk comp.) relating to algae  
**phycobiont** phycobion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti-*)  
**phycoma** (noun n. 3) plant body of an alga  
**phyll-** (in Gk comp.) relating to leaves

- phyllary** phyllarium (noun n. 2), tegula (noun f. 1)
- phyllidium** (noun n. 2) phyllidium
- phyloclade** phyllocladium (noun n. 2)
- phyllode** phyllodium (noun n. 2)
- phyllodioicus** (adj. A) phyllodioecious
- phyllopodium** phyllopodium (noun n. 2)
- phyllotaxis** phyllotaxis (noun f. 3)
- phyllum** (noun n. 2) leaf
- phyllus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -leaved
- phymatodeus** (adj. A) warty, verrucose
- physo-** (in Gk comp.) bladdery
- phyt-** (in Gk comp.) relating to plants
- phyton, -phytum** (both noun n. 2, in Gk comp.) -plant
- piceus** (adj. A) black as pitch
- picro-** (in Gk comp.) bitter
- pictus** (part. A) painted
- pigment-spot** stigma (noun n. 3)
- pigmentum** (noun n. 2) pigment; **pigmentifer** (adj. B) pigmented;  
**pigmentosus** (adj. A) well-coloured
- pile** acervus, cumulus (both noun m. 2); **small pile** acervulus (noun m. 2);  
**piled** acervatus, cumulatus (both part. A); **in small piles** acervulatus  
(part. A)
- pileipellis** (noun f. 3) pileipellis
- pileus** (noun m. 2) cap [*in mycology*]; **pileatus** (adj. A) cap-shaped, having a  
cap; **pileolus** (noun m. 2) a small pileus
- pilocystidium** pilocystidium (noun n. 2)
- pilus** (noun m. 2) hair; **pilosus** (adj. A) pilose; **pilifer** (adj. B) bearing hairs;  
**piliformis** (adj. B) hair-like
- pingue** (noun n. 3) fat; **pinguis** (adj. B) fat
- pink** roseus, persicinus, phloginus, pudorinus, rubellus, carneus (all adj. A),  
erubescens (adj. B); **fuchsia pink** fuchsinus (adj. A)
- pinna** (noun f. 1) pinna, primary division of a compound leaf;  
**pinnate** pinnatus (adj. A); **pinnately** pinnatim (adv.); **pinnately  
nerved** penninervis (adj. B), pennivenius (adj. B);  
**pinnatifid** pinnatifidus (adj. A); **pinnatilobed** pinnatilobatus (adj. A);  
**pinnatipartite** pinnatipartitus (adj. A); **pinnatisect** pinnatisectus (adj. A)

- pinnule** pinnula (noun f. 1)  
**piscina** (noun f. 1) fish-pond; **piscis** (noun m. 3) fish  
**pinus** (adj. A) pea green; **pisum** (noun n. 2) pea; **pisiformis** (adj. B) pea-shaped  
**pistil** pistillum (noun n. 2), gynoecium (noun n. 2); **pistillate** pistillatus (adj. A)  
**pit** fovea, lacuna (both noun f. 1); **pitted** alveolatus, foveatus (both adj. A), (in Gk comp.) bothr-; **minutely pitted** foveolatus (adj. A), scrobicularis (adj. B), scrobiculatus (adj. A); **pitted with small depressions** exsculptus (part. A)  
**pitcher** ascidium (noun n. 2)  
**pith** medulla (noun f. 1); **pithy** medullosus (adj. A)  
**place** locus (noun m. 2); **placed** positus, dispositus, locatus, collocatus (all part. A); **in the same place** ibidem (adv.); **placed between** interjectus, interpositus (both part. A); **placed upon** superpositus (part. A)  
**placenta** placenta (noun f. 1); **placentation** placentatio (noun f. 3)  
**placentiformis** (adj. B) round and flat  
**placodioidus** (adj. A) placodioid  
**placodiomorpha** (noun f. 1) placodiomorph  
**plagio-** (in Gk comp.) oblique  
**plagula** (noun f. 1) fungal colony  
**plain** campus (noun m. 2), planum (noun n. 2), planities (noun f. 5); **relating to plains, open fields** campestris, campester (both adj. B)  
**plane** (adv.) clearly, distinctly  
**planities** (noun f. 5) plain, flat surface  
**planiusculus** (adj. A) fairly flat  
**plankton** plancton (noun n. 2); **planktonic** planctonicus (adj. A)  
**plano-compressus** (adj. A) compressed, with opposite flat sides  
**planogameta** (noun f. 1) motile gamete, zoogamete  
**planospora** (noun f. 1) planospore, zoospore  
**planozygota** (noun f. 1) motile zygote  
**plant** planta (noun f. 1), vegetabile (noun n. 3) [see p. 00] ; **-plant** (in Gk comp.) -phyton, -phytum (both noun n. 2); **relating to plants** (in Gk comp.) phyt-  
**planted** sativus (adj. A)  
**planticola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of plants

- plantula** (noun f. 1) seedling
- planus** (adj. A) even, flat, level; **planum** (noun n. 2) level ground, plain
- plasmodiocarp** plasmodiocarpium (noun n. 2);  
**plasmodiocarpous** plasmodiocarpus (adj. A)
- plasmodium** plasmodium (noun n. 2)
- plate** [*illustration*] tabula (noun f. 1), icon (noun f. 3)
- plate** [*platter*] catillus (noun m. 2)
- platy-** (in Gk comp.) broad
- pleasant** dulcis (adj. B); **pleasing** amabilis (adj. B)
- pleated** plicatus (adj. A); *see fold*
- plectenchyma** plectenchyma (noun n. 3)
- pleio-** (in Gk comp.) more than usual
- pleiosporous** pleisporus (adj. A)
- pleisto-** (in Gk comp.) most
- plentiful** dives (adj. B), largus (adj. A)
- plenus** (adj. A) full
- plerumque** (adv.) commonly, frequently
- pleur-, pleuro-** (in Gk comp.) lateral *or* ribbed
- pleura** (noun f. 1) [*in diatoms*] pleura
- pleuridium** pleuridium (noun n. 2)
- pleurocarpus** (adj. A) pleurocarpous
- pleurotoideus** (adj. A) *Pleurotus*-like
- plexus** (noun m. 4) network
- pliant** flexibilis (adj. B), lentus (adj. A)
- plica** (noun f. 1) fold; **plicatus** (adj. A) folded, pleated
- plucked out** avulsus, excussus (both part. A)
- plum-coloured** prunicolor (adj. B) [see p. 00], pruninus (adj. A)
- plumbeus** (adj. A) leaden-grey
- plumosus** (adj. A) plumose, feathery
- plumule** corculum (noun n. 2), plumula (noun f. 1)
- plur-** (in Lat. comp.) several-, many-
- pluries** (adv.) often
- plurilocularis** (adj. B) plurilocular
- plurimum** (adv.) very much

- plurimus** (adj. A) most
- plurivorous** plurivorus (adj. A)
- plus** (adj., comp. of *multus*, with *quam* or Ablative) more, *also* (adv.) more [*in quantity*]; **plusminusve** (adv.) approximately, roughly, more or less
- pluteoideus** (adj. A) *Pluteus*-like
- pneumathodium** (noun n. 2) air pore
- pneumaticus** (adj. A) relating to air
- pneumatophorum** (noun n. 2) pneumatophore
- pocket** marsupium (noun n. 2); **pocketed** marsupiatu (adj. A); **pocket-shaped** marsupiiiformis (adj. B)
- poculiformis** (adj. B) cup-shaped
- pod** [*in Fabaceae*] legumen (noun n. 3) [see p. 00], [*in Brassicaceae*] siliqua (noun f. 1)
- pod-**, **podo-**, **-podus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) foot
- podetium** podetium (noun n. 2)
- poecil-**, **poecilo-** (in Gk comp.) many-coloured, variegated
- pogon** (noun m. 3) beard
- point** punctum (noun n. 2); **pointed** acutus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) oxy-;
- pointless** [*blunt*] muticus (adj. A); **covered with fine points** spiculatus (adj. A)
- pointed out** indicatus (part. A)
- poisonous** venenatus, venenosus, toxicarius, virosus (all adj. A)
- polar** polaris (adj. B)
- polarilocular** polarilocularis (adj. B)
- polio-** (in Gk comp.) grey-
- polished** nitidus, laevigatus (both adj. A), rasilis (adj. B); **not polished** impolitus (adj. A)
- politus** (adj. A) shining, glossy
- pollen** pollen (noun n. 3); **pollen grain** granum or granulum (both noun n. 2) pollinis (noun n. 3 Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *granum*/*granulum* is declined); **pertaining to pollen** pollinaris (adj. B), pollinicus (adj. A); **pollen-bearing** pollinifer (adj. A); **ready for pollination** nubilis (adj. B)
- pollen presenter** [*e.g. in Proteaceae*] praebitor (noun m. 3) pollinis (noun n. 3 Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *praebitor* is declined)

- pollex** (noun m. 3) inch; **pollicaris** (adj. A) an inch long
- pollinium** pollinium (noun n. 2)
- polluted** contaminatus, inquinatus (both part. A)
- poly-** (in Gk comp.) many-
- polyarthrodactylus** (adj. A) [*in Charaphyta*] polyarthrodactyl
- polycarpic** polycarpicus (adj. A)
- polygamous** polygamus (adj. A)
- polygynus** (adj. A) having many pistils
- polymorphus** (adj. A) polymorphic, of variable form
- polyphyllous** polyphyllus (adj. A)
- polyploid** polyploideus (adj. A)
- polysetose** polysetosus (adj. A)
- polysiphonous** polysiphonius (adj. A)
- polystichus** (adj. A) in many rows *or* series
- polytomic** polytomicus (adj. A)
- pomaceo-viridis** (adj. B) apple-green
- pome** pomum (noun n. 2)
- pond** stagnum (noun n. 2), lacuna (noun f. 1); **belonging to ponds** stagnalis, stagnatalis (both adj. B)
- ponderosus** (adj. A) heavy
- pons** (noun m. 3) bridge; **ponticulus** (noun m. 2) little bridge
- porandrus** (adj. A) having anthers opening by pores
- porca** (noun f. 1) ridge [*as between furrows*]; **porcatus** (adj. B) ridged
- pore** alveola (noun f. 1), porus (noun m. 2), spiramentum (noun n. 2);  
**opening by pores** poricidalis (adj. B); **having pores** porosus (adj. A);  
**porate** poratus (adj. A)
- porellus** porellus (noun m. 2)
- porosus** (adj. A) having pores *or* small holes
- porphyreus** (adj. A) purple; **porphyr-**, **porphyro-** (in Gk comp.) purple
- porraceus** (adj. A) leek green
- porrectus** (adj. A) stretched outwards and forwards
- portula** portula (noun f. 1)
- portatus** (part. A) borne, carried
- porus** (noun m. 2) air pore



- position** positio (noun f. 3), situs (noun m. 4); **positioned** [*placed*] positus (part. A)
- possibly** [*by chance*] forte (adv.), [*perhaps*] fortasse (adv.)
- post** (adv., *also* prep. + Accusative, pref. in Lat. comp.), **postea** (adv.) after, behind, following
- posterior** (comp. adj.) later
- posterior** [*at the back*] posticus (adj. A); **posteriorly** postice (adv.)
- posterius** (adv.) later, afterwards
- postice** (adv.) at the back; **posticus** (adj. A) at the back, posterior
- postmeridianus** (adj. A) opening in the afternoon
- postremus** (adj. A) last; **postremo** (adv.) finally, at last; **ad postremum** (adv.) at last
- potassium** kalium (noun n. 2)
- potius** (adv.) rather, preferably
- pot-shaped** olliformis (adj. A)
- pouch** marsupium (noun n. 2), saccus (noun m. 2); **pouched** marsupiat, saccatus (both adj. A); **pouch-shaped** marsupiiiformis, scrotiformis (both adj. B)
- powder** pulvis (noun f. 3), farina (noun f. 1); **powdery** farinaceus, pulveraceus, pulvereus (all adj. A); **powdery covering** farina (noun f. 1); **covered in powder** farinosus, pulveratus, pulverulentus (all adj. A)
- prae-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) before, in front
- praebens** (part. B) displaying, showing
- praebitor** (noun m. 3) **pollinis** (noun n. 3 Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *praebitor* is declined) pollen presenter [*e.g. in Proteaceae*]
- praecedens** (part. B) preceding
- praecipue** (adv.) especially, mainly
- praecclusus** (part. A) closed
- praecox** (adj. A) early, precocious
- praeditus** (part. A. + Ablative) bearing, possessed of
- prae floratio** (noun f. 3) aestivation
- prae foliatio** (noun f. 3) vernal
- praegnans** (adj. B) pregnant, swollen with, full of
- praelongus** (adj. A) tall

- praemorsus** (adj. A) praemorse, as though bitten off  
**praeruptum** (noun n. 2) cliff  
**praesens** (adj. B) present; **praesentia** (noun f. 1) presence  
**praesertim** (adv.) especially  
**praeter** (prep. + Accusative) but for, except for  
**praeteritus** (part. A) past and gone  
**praetextus** (part. A) bordered, fringed  
**prasinus** (adj. A) leek green  
**pratium** (noun n. 2) meadow; **pratensis** (adj. B) pertaining to meadows  
**preceding** antecedens (part. B), *in space* with Accusative, *in time* with Dative;  
 praecedens (part. B)  
**precisely** accurate, definite (both adv.)  
**prehendens** (part. B), **prehensilis** (adj. B) grasping  
**present** praesens, suppetens (both adj. B); **presence** praesentia, presentia  
 (both noun f. 1)  
**presenter, pollen** [*e.g. in Proteaceae*] praebitor (noun m. 3) pollinis  
 (noun n. 3 Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *praebitor* is declined)  
**present time, at the** hodie, jam, nunc (all adv.); **relating to the present**  
**time** hodiernus (adj. A)  
**preserved** asservatus, conservatus, servatus (all part. A)  
**pressed together** conglobatus (part. A)  
**previously** antea (adv.)  
**prickle** aculeus (noun m. 2); **prickly** aculeatus (adj. A), horricomis (adj. B);  
**with copious prickles** senticosus (adj. A)  
**pridem** (adv.) formerly, long ago  
**primarius** (adj. A) chief, primary  
**primitive** arche- (pref. in Gk comp.)  
**primo** (adv.), **primum** (adv.), **primus** (ord. num., adj. A) first; **primitus**  
 (adv.) firstly  
**primordialis** (adj. B) primordial, first-formed  
**primordium** primordium (noun n. 2)  
**primotinus** (adj. A) growing first [*opposite of serotinus*]  
**primum** (adv.) firstly; **primus** (adj. A) first, initial  
**principalis** (adj. B) main  
**prion-** (in Gk comp.) saw-

- prior, prius** (adj. compar.) previous
- pro** (prep. + Ablative) before, just as; **pro-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) for, instead of, (pref. in Gk comp.) before, in front of
- probably** fortasse, probabiliter, verosimiliter (all adv.)
- probatus** (part. A) approved
- proboscideus** (adj. A) with snout-like projection
- proboscis** (noun f. 3) [*in diatoms*] proboscis
- procarp** procarpium (noun n. 2); **procarpic** procarpicus (adj. A)
- procerus** (adj. A) very tall
- process** processus (noun m. 4)
- procreans** (part. B) bringing forth, producing
- procul** (adv.) far off
- procumbent** humifusus (adj. A), procumbens (part. B)
- procurrans** (part. B) jutting out, projecting, extending
- prodiens** (part. B) coming forth
- producing** efferens, faciens, procreans, producens, pariens (all part. B)
- productus** (part. A) drawn out, extended
- profluens** (part. B) flowing
- profundus** (adj. A) deep; **profunde** (adv.) deeply; **profunditas** (noun f. 3) depth
- profuse** (adv.) profusely; **profusus** (adj. A) profuse, extended
- progressively** gradatim (adv.)
- projecting** exstans, procurrans, eminens (all part. B), projectus (part. A);  
**projection** eminentia, projectura (both noun f. 1)
- projectus** (part. A) jutting out
- prolatus** (part. A) elongated, drawn out [*hence also*, dredged]
- proles** (noun f. 3) group of related taxa, progeny, race
- prolifer, prolificus** (both adj. A), **prolificans** (part. B) proliferating,  
 producing offsets as progeny
- prolongatus** (part. A) extended
- prominens** (part. B) standing out
- prominent** expressus (part. A), prominens (part. B); **prominently** manifeste (adv.)
- prominulus** (adj. A) slightly raised
- promiscue** (adv.) promiscuously, indiscriminately; **promiscuus** (adj. A) promiscuous, indiscriminate

- promycelium** promycelium (noun n. 2)
- prong** dens (noun m. 3); **three-pronged** trinacriiformis (adj. B)
- prop root** radix (noun f. 3) gralliformis (adj. B) (decl. together)
- propagatio** (noun f. 3) propagation
- propagulum** (noun n. 2) offset, propagule
- prope** (adv. or prep. + Accusative) near [see p. 00]; **propemodo** (adv.) almost
- prophyll** prophyllum (noun n. 2)
- propinquus** (adj. A) neighbouring, near
- proportion** proportio (noun f. 3); **proportionally** proportione (adv.)
- proprie** (adv.) specially, characteristically; **proprius** (adj. A) special, one's own, characteristic
- proprietas** (noun f. 3) feature
- proprius** (adj. A) distinct, characteristic
- propter** (prep. + Accusative) because of, owing to
- propullulans** (adj. B) budding, shooting
- prora** (noun f. 1) prora, mammilose projection; **proratus** (adj. A) prorate; **prorulatus** (adj. A) prorulate
- prorsum** (adv.) forwards, directly; **prorsus** (adv.) exactly, *also* (adj. A) straightforward
- prorumpens** (part. B) breaking forth, bursting through
- pros-** (pref. in Gk comp.) near, in addition
- prosenchyma** prosenchyma (noun n. 3); **prosenchymatous** prosenchymatus (adj. A)
- proso-, prostho-** (pref. in Gk comp.) to the front, before
- prosoplectenchyma** prosoplectenchyma (noun n. 3)
- prostrate** prostratus, pronus, supinus (all adj. A)
- protandrus** (adj. A) protandrous
- protected** servatus (part. A)
- protentus** (part. A) lengthened
- proteranthus** (adj. A) before the flowers
- proterogynus** (adj. A) protogynous
- prothallus** prothallus (noun m. 2)
- protinus** (adv.) [*in position*] forwards, [*in time*] from the start
- proto-** (in Gk comp.) first, original

- protogynous** protogynus (adj. A)  
**protonema** protonema (noun n. 3)  
**protoplasm** protoplasma (noun f. 1); **protoplasmic** protoplasmicus (adj. A)  
**protoplast** protoplastus (noun m. 2)  
**protostele** protostela (noun f. 1)  
**protractus** (part. A) drawn out, lengthened  
**protrudens** (part. B), **protrusus** (adj. A) exerted  
**protuberance** eminentia (noun f. 1), protuberatio (noun f. 3)  
**protuberatio** (noun f. 3) bulge, protuberance; **protuberans** (part. B) bulging  
**provectus** (part. A) extended  
**proveniens** (part. B) coming forth, inhabiting  
**proximalis** (adj. B) proximal, nearest the axis  
**proximus** (adj. A + Dative) nearest, next; **proxime** (adv.) immediately, very near  
**pruina** (noun f. 1) waxy whitish powdery bloom; **pruinus**, **pruinatus** (both adj. A) pruinose  
**prunicola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of plum trees  
**prunicolor** (adj. B) [see p. 00], **pruninus** (adj. A) plum-coloured  
**pruriens** (part. B) causing itching or stinging  
**psammo-** (in Gk comp.) sand-  
**pseudo-** (in Gk comp.) false-[*resembling but not the same*]  
**pseudoautoicus** (adj. A) pseudoautoicous  
**pseudobulb** pseudobulbus (noun m. 2)  
**pseudocarpium** (noun n. 2) pseudocarp  
**pseudocellus** pseudocellus (noun m. 2)  
**pseudocilium** pseudocilium (noun n. 2)  
**pseudocyphella** pseudocyphella (noun f. 1)  
**pseudoelater** pseudoelater (noun m. 3)  
**pseudolateralis** (adj. B) terminal but appearing lateral  
**pseudolobate** pseudolobatus (adj. A)  
**pseudonodulus** pseudonodulus (noun m. 2)  
**pseudoparenchyma** pseudoparenchyma (noun n. 3);  
**pseudoparenchymatous** pseudoparenchymatus,  
pseudoparenchymaticus (both adj. A)  
**pseudoperianth** pseudoperianthium (noun n. 2)

- pseudopodium** pseudopodium (noun n. 2)  
**pseudoraphe** pseudoraphe (noun f. 3)  
**pseudoseptum** pseudoseptum (noun n. 2)  
**pseudospore** pseudospora (noun f. 1)  
**pseudostroma** pseudostroma (noun n. 3)  
**pseudosulcus** pseudosulcus (noun m. 2)  
**pseudothalline** pseudothallinus (adj. A)  
**psil-**, **psilo-** (in Gk comp.) glabrous, smooth  
**pter-**, **pterygo-** (in Gk comp.) wing-, winged  
**ptycho-** (in Gk comp.) having folds, pleats, deep grooves  
**pubescens** (part. B), **pubens** (adj. B) downy; **puberulus** (adj. A) minutely pubescent; **pubes** (noun f. 3), **pubescentia** (noun f. 1) hairiness; **pubi-** (in Lat. comp.) softly hairy  
**published** evulgatus (part. A)  
**pudorinus** (adj. A) pink  
**pugioniformis** (adj. B) dagger-shaped  
**pulchellus** (adj. A) beautiful and small  
**pulcher** (adj. A) beautiful; **pulchre** (adv.) beautifully  
**pullatus** (adj. A) dark brown  
**pululans** (part. B) budding off  
**pulp** pulpa (noun f. 1); **pulpy** pulposus (adj. A)  
**pulveraceus**, **pulvereus** (both adj. A) powdery; **pulveratus**, **pulverulentus** (both adj. A) covered in powder  
**pulvillum** (noun n. 2) hot-bed  
**pulvinus** (noun m. 2) cushion; **pulvinatus** (adj. A), **pulviniformis** (adj. B) cushion-shaped  
**pulvis** (noun f. 3) powder  
**pumilus** (adj. A) dwarf  
**punctum** (noun n. 2) dot, point; **punctatus** (adj. A) dotted; **punctiformis** (adj. B) dot-like; **punctatio** (noun f. 3) dotting; **puncticulatus**, **puncticulosus** (both adj. A) minutely dotted; **punctulum** (noun n. 2) a minute dot; **punctulatus** (adj. A) minutely dotted  
**pungens** (part. B) pungent, sharply pointed  
**puniceus** (adj. A) crimson  
**pure** purus, laetus (both adj. A)

**purple** purpureus (adj. A); **dark purple** atropurpureus (adj. A); **campanula violet** campanulinus (adj. A); **lavender purple** lavandulaceus, lavandulus (both adj. A); **lilac purple** lilacinus (adj. A); **livid purple** livido-purpureus (adj. A); **mauve** malvinus (adj. A), malvicolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]; **tyrian purple** tyrius (adj. A); **violet purple** amethysteus, amethystinus, hyacinthinus, ianthinus, violaceus (all adj. A); **wine-coloured** vinosus (adj. A); **purplish** purpurascens (part. B); **purple-** (in Lat. comp.) purpureo-, (in Gk comp.) porphy-, porphyro-

**purus** (adj. A) pure, clean

**-pus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -footed

**pushed down or into** detrusus (part. A); **pushed out** extrusus (part. A)

**pusillus** (adj. A) very small

**pustule** papula, pustula (both noun f. 1); **pustular, pustulate** papulosus, pustulatus (both adj. A)

**pustuliformis** (adj. B) blister-shaped

**putamen** (noun n. 3) stone of a drupe

**putidus** (adj. A) smelling unpleasantly

**putrefactus** (part. A), **putridus** (adj. A) decayed, rotten; **putrescens** (part. B) decaying

**putting forth** edens (part. B)

**pycn-, pycno-** (in Gk comp.) close, dense

**pycnidiospore** pycnidiospora (noun f. 1)

**pycnidium** pycnidium (noun n. 2)

**pycniospore** pycniospora (noun f. 1)

**pycnium** pycnium (noun n. 2)

**pycnoconidium** pycnoconidium (noun n. 2)

**pygmaeus** (adj. A) dwarf

**-pyle** (noun f. 1, in Gk comp.) -opening

**pyr-, pyro-** (in Gk comp.) fire-, fiery [*red or yellow*]

**pyramidalis** (adj. B) pyramidal

**pyrene** pyrena (noun f. 1)

**pyrenocarpous** pyrenocarpus (adj. A)

**pyrenoid** pyrenoides (noun f. 3)

**pyriformis** (adj. B) pear-shaped

**pyrrh-, pyrrho-** (in Gk comp.) fire-red, ruddy

**pythmen** pythmen (noun m. 3); **bearing pythmen** pythmenophorus (adj. A)  
**pyxidatus** (adj. A) having a lid *or* pixidium; **pyxidium** (noun n. 2) covering,  
 lid, cap  
**pyxis** pyxis (noun f. 3)

## Q

**quadr-**, **quadri-** (in Lat. comp.) four-  
**quadrans** (noun m. 3) a quarter, a fourth  
**quadratim** (adv.) four-fold  
**quadratus** (part. A) squared  
**quadriflagellatus** (adj. A) having 4 flagella  
**quadruplo** (adv.) four-fold; **quadruplus** (adj. A) four-fold  
**quae** (rel. pron. f.) who, which [see p. 00]  
**quaedam** (indef. pron. f.) a certain (sing.), some (pl.) [see p. 00]  
**qualis** (pron. adj. B) what kind of?, such as  
**quam** (adv.) as, than [*in comparison of size*, see p. 00]  
**quamobrem** (adv.) hence  
**quamquam** (conj.) although, though  
**quandoque** (adv.) sometimes  
**quaqueversum** (adv.) on all sides, in all directions  
**quarciticus** (adj. A) quartz *or* quartz-like  
**quarter** quadrans (noun m. 3)  
**quartus** (ord. num. adj. A) a fourth, fourth  
**quartz, quartz-like** quarciticus (adj. A)  
**quasi** (adv.) as if, about, almost, little more than  
**quattuor, quatuor** (num. adj. indecl.) four; **quaterni** (num. adj.  
 distr. pl.) four each; **quartus** (adj. A) a fourth; **quater** (num. adv.) four  
 times; **quaternatim** (adv.) in fours  
**-que** (conj. suff.) and  
**qui** (rel. pron. m) who, which [see p. 00]  
**quickly** celeriter, cito, prompte (all adv.)  
**quidam** (indef. pron. m.) a certain (sing.), some (pl.) [see p. 00]  
**quidem** (adv.) at least  
**quiescens** (part. B), **quietus** (adj. A) resting



**quietus** (adj. A) quiet

**quincuncialis** (adj. B) quincuncial

**quinqu-**, **quinque-**, **quinqui-** (in Lat. comp.) five-

**quinque** (num. adj. indecl.) five; **quini** (num. adj. distr. pl.) five each;

**quinquiens**, **quinquies** (num. adv.), five times; **quintuplex**

(adj. B) five-fold; **quintus** (ord. num., adj. A) fifth; **quinarius**, **quinatus**

(both adj. A) consisting of five

**quisque** (pron. m.), **quaeque** (f.), **quodque** (n.) each, everyone

**quite** admodum, omnino, plane, sat, satis (all adv.)

**quoad** (adv.) as to

**quod** (rel. pron. n) which [see p. 00]

**quoddam** (indef. pron. n.) a certain (sing.), some (pl.) [see p. 00]

**quondam** (adv.) formerly

**quoquoversus** (adv.) everyway

**quot** (adj. indecl.) as many as, every

**quotannis** (adv.) annually

**quotidianus** (adj. A) daily

**quum** (conj.) when

## R

**race** [*strain, form*] proles (noun f. 3)

**racemus** (noun m. 2) raceme; **racemosus** (adj. A) racemose; **racemifer**,

**racemiger** (adj. B) bearing a raceme; **racemi-** (in Lat. comp.)

raceme-like

**rach-**, **rhach-** (in Gk comp.) referring to a main axis

**rachilla** rhachilla, rhacheola (both noun f. 1)

**rachis** rhachis (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]

**radial** radialis (adj. B)

**radians** (part. B) radiating

**radiatifomis** (adj. B) [*in Asteraceae*] having outer florets larger than inner  
but not ligulate

**radiatim** (adv.) in a radiating manner

**radiatus** (part. A) radiate

**radicalis** (adj. B) radical, basal

- radicans** (part. B) rooting; **radicatus** (part. A) having roots  
**radicella** (noun f. 1) rootlet; **radicellosus** (adj. A) covered in rootlets  
**radicle** radícula (noun f. 1)  
**radicosus** (adj. A) having many roots  
**radiospermus** (adj. A) of radially symmetrical seeds  
**radius** (noun m. 2) ray, [*in Asteraceae*] an outer ligulate floret  
**radix** (noun f. 3) root [see p. 00]; **radix gralliformis** (adj. B) (decl. together)  
prop root  
**radula** radula (noun f. 1)  
**radulans** (adj. B) rasping, scabrous  
**ragged** laceratus (adj. A)  
**raised** elevatus (part. A), prominens (part. B); **slightly raised** prominulus  
(adj. A)  
**ramealis** (adj. B), **rameus** (adj. A) belonging to a branch; **rameanus** (adj. A)  
taking the place of a branch, e.g. a thorn *or* tendril  
**ramentum** (noun n. 2) a thin membranous or chaffy scale; **ramentaceus**  
(adj. A) covered with ramenta  
**rami-** (in Lat. comp.) branched-  
**ramoconidium** ramoconidium (noun n. 2)  
**ramulus** (noun m. 2) branchlet; **ramulosus** (adj. A) bearing branchlets;  
**ramulinus** (adj. A) belonging to a branch; **ramunculus** (noun m. 2)  
twig  
**ramus** (noun m. 2) branch [see p. 00]; **ramifer** (adj. A) bearing branches;  
**ramosus** (adj. A) branched; **ramosissimus** (adj. A sup.) very branched;  
**ramificatio** (noun f. 3) branching; **ramificans** (part. B) branching  
**random, at** fortuito, temere, temeriter (all adv.)  
**ranging** [*spread over*] extensus (part. A), [*varying*] varians (part. B)  
**-ranked** (in Lat. comp.) -farius, -seriatus, -ordinatus (all adj. A); (in Gk comp.)  
-stichus (adj. A)  
**ranunculinus** (adj. A) buttercup yellow  
**raphe** raphe (noun f. 3); **raphe valve** raphovalva (noun f. 1)  
**rapheid** furunculus (noun m. 2)  
**raphid** raphis (noun f. 3)  
**rapiformis** (adj. B) turnip-shaped  
**rarus** (adj. A) scattered, rare; **rare** (adv.) far apart, sparsely; **rarenter**, **rarius**,  
**raro** (all adv.) rarely, infrequently; **rarior** (comp. adj.) rarer, rather rare

- rasilis** (adj. B) polished, smoothed, scraped  
**rasp-like** radulans (adj. B), radulifer (adj. A)  
**rather** [*preferable*] potius, [*sooner*] citius, [*a little*] paulo, [*considerably*] aliquantum (all adv.)  
**ratio** (noun f. 3) reckoning, calculation, relation, condition  
**ravidus** (adj. A) greyish; **ravus** (adj. A) tawny, greyish-yellow  
**ray** radius (noun m. 2); **ray floret** flosculus (noun m. 2) radii (noun m. 2)  
 Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *flosculus* is declined)  
**re-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) back, against, again  
**reaching** attingens (part. B)  
**rear** posterior (comp. adj.), posticus (adj. A)  
**recavus** (adj. A) arched inward, concave  
**receding** recedens (part. B)  
**recens** (adj. B) young, fresh, recent  
**recensio** (noun f. 3) enumeration  
**recently** nuper (adv.)  
**receptacle** receptaculum (noun n. 2), thalamus (noun m. 2)  
**recessim** (adv.) back, backwards  
**reciprocally** mutue, mutuo (both adv.)  
**reckoning** ratio (noun f. 3)  
**reclinatus** (part. A) turned *or* bent down on another part  
**reclusus** (adj. A) open  
**reconditus** (part. A) concealed, hidden  
**rectangle** rectangulum (noun n. 2); **rectangular** rectangularis, oblongus  
 (both adj. A)  
**rectangulatus, rectangulus** (both adj. A) right-angled  
**recte** (adv.) correctly  
**rectus** (adj. A) straight, upright; **rectiusculus** (adj. A) fairly straight;  
**rectinervis** (adj. B), **rectinervius** (adj. A) straight-nerved; **recti-** (in Lat.  
 comp.) straight, upright  
**recurvatus, recurvus** (both part. A) recurved  
**red** ruber, erythrinus (both adj. A); **blood red** sanguineus (adj. A),  
 sanguinolentus (adj. A), haematicus (adj. A), haematinus (adj. A),  
 haematochrous (adj. A), haematodes (adj. B); (in Lat. comp.)  
 sanguineo-; (in Gk comp.) haem-, haemat-; **brick red** latericius,

- lateritius, testaceus (all adj. A); **bright red** ignescens (adj. B), phoenixus (adj. A); **capsicum red** capsicinus (adj. A); **cardinal red** cardinalis (adj. B); **carmine** carminus, carmineus, coccineus (all adj. A); **carrot red** daucus (adj. A); **cherry red** cerasinus (adj. A); **coral red** corallinus (adj. A); **crimson** carmesinus, kermesinus, puniceus (all adj. A); **fiery red** flammeus (adj. A); **fire red** igneus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) pyrrh-, pyrrho-; **flame-scarlet** miniatus (adj. A); **nasturtium red** capucinus, tropaeolinus (both adj. A); **pale red** helvus (adj. A); **poppy red** papaverinus (adj. A); **dark reddish-brown** hepaticus (adj. A); **reddish-orange** rutilans (part. B), rutilus (adj. A); **ruby-red** rubineus (adj. A); **ruddy** rubicundus (adj. A); **rusty-red** ferrugineus (adj. A); **becoming rusty-red** ferruginescens (part. B); **scarlet** phoenixus (adj. A); **shrimp-red** palaemoneus (adj. A); **vermilion** cinnabarinus (adj. A); **reddening** erubescens (part. B); **reddish** rubellus, rufus (both adj. A), rubens (part. B); **red-** (in Lat. comp.) rubri-, rubro-, (in Gk comp.) erythro-
- redactus** (part. A) reduced, diminished
- redivivus** (adj. A) revived from a dried state
- redolens** (part. B) producing scent
- reduced** deminutus (part. A), depauperatus (adj. A), redactus (part. A), reductus (part. A)
- reduncus** (adj. A) curved *or* bent backwards
- refertus** (part. A) filled up
- reflexus** (part. A) reflexed
- refractive** refractivus (adj. A)
- refractus** (part. A) bent *or* curved back abruptly and strongly
- refringens** (part. B) breaking open
- regma** (noun n. 1) regma
- regnum** (noun n. 2) kingdom
- regular** actinomorphus (adj. A); **regularly** ordinate, ordinatim, regulariter, regulatim (all adv.)
- rejectus** (part. A) cast off; **rejiendus** (ger. of verb *reicio*, adj. A) to be *or* that must be rejected
- related** affinis (adj. B), cognatus (adj. A); **related to** affinis (adj. B); **in relation to** de (prep. + Ablative), erga (prep. + Accusative); **relationship** affinitas (noun f. 3)
- relatively** compare, relative (both adv.)

- released** liberatus (part. A)  
**relictus** (part. A) left behind  
**reliquus** (adj. A) remaining  
**remaining** manens (part. B)  
**remanens** (part. B) persisting  
**remarkable** insignis, notabilis (both adj. B); **remarkably** insigniter (adv.)  
**remnant** vestigium (noun n. 2)  
**remotus** (adj. A) scattered, remote; **remotiusculus** (adj. A) somewhat scattered  
**removed** amotus, demotus, divulsus, excussus, repurgatus, detursus (all part. A); **easily removed** detergendus (ger. adj. A)  
**renewing** innovans (part. B)  
**reniformis** (adj. B) kidney-shaped [*flat object*]  
**renovatio** (noun f. 3) renewal shoot  
**repandus** (adj. A) repand  
**repeatedly** crebiter, crebro, repetite (all adv.)  
**repens** (part. B) creeping [see p. 00]  
**repertus** (part. A) found  
**repletus** (part. A) full, filled out  
**replicatus** (adj. A) turned *or* folded back upon itself with the parts coming together; *in Algae*, with annular ingrowth of transverse walls of filaments  
**replum** replum (noun n. 2)  
**reports** acta (noun n. 2, pl.)  
**representing** fingens (part. B)  
**reproduction** reproductio (noun f. 3); **reproductive** reproductivus (adj. A)  
**reptans** (part. B) creeping  
**repullulans** (part. B) sprouting again  
**repurgatus** (part. A) cleaned, removed  
**resembling** accedens (part. B + Dative, *or* with *ad* + Accusative), simulans (part. B); -aceus, -inus (both Lat. suff., adj. A); **resemblance** similitudo (noun f. 3)  
**reservoir** cisterna (noun f. 1)  
**residuus** (adj. A) left behind, residual  
**resiliens** (part. B) springing back

- resine** resina (noun f. 1); **resine-producing** resinifer (adj. A);  
**resinous** resinosus (adj. A)
- resorptus** (part. A) absorbing again
- resting** dormiens, quiescens (both part. B), quietus (adj. A)
- restricted** restrictus (part. A)
- resupinatus** (part. A) resupinate; **resupinus** (adj. A) bent back *or* backwards
- retaining** retinens (part. B); **retained** retentus (part. A)
- rete** (noun n. 3) net, network; **reti-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) net-
- retentus** (part. A) retained
- reticulatus** (adj. A) reticulate; **reticulum** (noun n. 2) network; **retiformis** (adj. B) net-like; **reticulate**, **reticulatim** (both adv.) reticulately
- retinaculum** retinaculum (noun n. 2)
- retinens** (part. B) retaining, holding
- retinervis** (adj. B), **retinervius** (adj. A) reticulately nerved
- retort cell** cellula (noun f. 1) lageniformis (adj. B) poro apicali [these remain unchanged when first two words are declined]
- retortus** (part. A) twisted *or* bent back
- retractus** (part. A) drawn back
- retro** (adv.) back, backwards; *also* **retro-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) back, behind
- retrorsum**, **retrorsus** (both adv.) retrorse, turned backwards
- retusus** (part. A) retuse
- revealed** detectus, indicatus (both part. A), manifestus (adj. A)
- revera** (adv.) essentially, in fact
- reversed** conversus, reversus (both part. A)
- revived** [*from a dried state*] redivivus (adj. A)
- revolubilis** (adj. B) able to be rolled back; **revolutivus** (adj. A) [*in vernation*] having the edges of facing leaves rolled back
- revolutus** (adj. A) revolute, rolled back
- rhachilla**, **rhacheola** *see* **rachilla**
- rhachis** *see* rachis
- rhaphe** *see* raphe
- rhaphid** *see* raphid
- rheo-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to running water
- rhipidium** rhipidium (noun n. 2)

- rhiz-**, **rhizi-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to roots *or* root-like organs
- rhizina** (noun f. 1) rhizine
- rhizoautoicus** (adj. A) rhizoautoicous
- rhizohypha** rhizohypha (noun f. 1)
- rhizoid** rhizoideum (noun n. 2)
- rhizoma** (noun n. 3) rhizome [see p. 00]; **rhizomatosus** (adj. A) having a well-developed rhizome
- rhizomorph** rhizomorpha (noun f. 1)
- rhizophore** rhizophorum (noun n. 2)
- rhodo-** (in Gk comp.) rose-, rosy red
- rhombic** rhombeus, rhombicus (both adj. A), rhombiformis (adj. B)
- rhopalo-** (in Gk comp.) club-
- rhynch-**, **rhyncho-** (in Gk comp.) having a beak
- rhyti-**, **rhytido-** (in Gk comp.) wrinkled
- rib** costa [*usu. midrib*], stria (both noun f. 1); **ribbed** costatus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) pleur-, pleuro-
- ribbon** taenia (noun f. 1)
- rica** rica (noun f. 1)
- rich** dives (adj. B); **richly** ample, copiose (both adv.)
- ridge** [*crest*] crista (noun f. 1), [*back*] dorsum (noun n. 2), [*yoke*] jugum (noun n. 2), [*between furrows*] porca (noun f. 1); **ridged** porcatus (adj. A)
- rigens** (part. B) stiff; **rigescens** (part. B) becoming stiff
- right** [*straight, correct*] rectus (part. A), [*on the right-hand side*] dexter (adj. A); **rightly** juste (adv.), recte (adv.); **to the right** dextrorsum (adv.); **rightful** justus (adj. A)
- rigid** rigidus (adj. A), rigens (part. B); **rigidly** rigide (adv.); **somewhat rigid** rigidulus, rigidiusculus (both adj. A)
- rima** (noun f. 1) crack, crevice, slit; **rimosus** (adj. A) cracked; **rimulosus** (adj. A) minutely cracked; **rimiformis** (adj. B) shaped like a cleft *or* crack
- rimoportula** (noun f. 1) *in diatoms*, labiate process
- rind** corium (noun n. 2)
- ring** annulus, gyrus (both noun m. 2); **ring-shaped** annularis, annuliformis (both adj. B); **arranged in a ring** annulatum (adv.); **ringed, marked with or bordered by raised rings** annulatus (adj. A)

**ringens** (part. B) gaping

**ripa** (noun f. 1) bank [*of stream, river*]; **riparius** (adj. B) inhabiting river banks, riparian

**ripe** maturus (adj. A); **ripening** maturatio (noun f. 3); **ripening** maturescens (part. B); **ripeness** maturitas (noun f. 3)

**rising above** excedens (part. B); **rising out of** exurgens (part. B); **rising upwards** assurgens (part. B); **rising, raising itself** erigens (part. B)

**rite** (adv.) correctly

**rivalis** (adj. B) pertaining to brooks, small streams

**rivalling** aemulans (part. B), aemulus (adj. A)

**river** flumen (noun n. 3), fluvius (noun m. 2) [*rarely used*]; **pertaining to rivers** fluviaticus (adj. A), fluviatilis (adj. B); **river bank** ripa (noun f. 1)

**rivericola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of river banks

**rivularis** (adj. B) pertaining to brooks

**rivulosus** (adj. A) having fine, wavy grooves

**rivulus** (noun m. 2) brooklet; **rivus** (noun m. 2) brook, small stream

**robigo** (noun f. 3) canker, rust, mildew

**robust** robustus, validus (both adj. A)

**rock** petra (noun f. 1), rupes (noun f. 3), cautes (noun f. 3), saxum (noun n. 2), scopulus (noun m. 2); **rocky** petrosus (adj. A), rupestris (adj. B), saxosus (adj. A), scopulosus (adj. A); **growing among rocks** petraeus (adj. A); **found among rocks** petrensis (adj. B); **full of rocks** petrosus (adj. A); **rocky places** petrosa (noun n. 2, pl.); **rock-** (in Lat. comp.) rupi-, saxi-; (in Gk comp.) litho-, petro-. *See also stone*

**rod** virga (noun f. 1); **rod-shaped, rod-like** bacillaris, bacilliformis, baculiformis (all adj. B)

**rolled back** revolutus (part. A); **rolled inwards** involutus (part. A); **rolled together** convolutus (part. A); **rolled up** volutus (part. A)

**roof** tectum (noun n. 2)

**root** radix (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **rooting** radicans (part. B); **having roots** radicans (part. A); **having many roots** radicosus (adj. A); **without roots** arrhizus (adj. A); **pertaining to roots** (in Gk comp.) rhiz-, rhizi-; **root, stilt or prop** radix gralliformis (adj. B) (decl. together)

**rootlet** radicella (noun f. 1); **covered in rootlets** radicellosus (adj. A)

**rootstock** caudex (noun m. 3), caulorhiza (noun f. 1)



**rope** funis (noun m. 3); **rope-like** funalis, funicularis, funiformis (all adj. B);  
**in rope-like bundles** funiculosus (adj. A); **slender rope, cord** funiculus  
 (noun m. 2)

**roridus** (adj. A) dewy

**rosaceus** (adj. A) like the flower of a single [*i.e. not double*] rose

**rose** erubescens (part. B), roseus (adj. A); **rose-** (in Lat. comp.) rosei-, roseo-,  
 (in Gk comp.) rhod-, rhodo-

**rosette** rosula (noun f. 1); **rosetted** rosularis (adj. B), rosulatus (adj. A),  
 rosulans (adj. B)

**rostellatus** (adj. A) slightly beaked; **rostellum** (noun n. 2) rostellum

**rostratus** (adj. A) beaked; **rostrum** (noun n. 2) beak [see p. 00];  
**rostriformis** (adj. B) beak-like; **rostri-, -rostrus** (adj. A) (in Lat. comp.)  
 beak-, -beaked

**rosula** (noun f. 1) rosette; **rosulans** (adj. B), **rosulatus** (adj. A) rosetted

**rotatus** (adj. A) rotate, wheel-shaped

**rotten** cariosus, putrefactus, putridus (all adj. A), putrescens (part. B)

**rotundatus** (part. A) rounded; **rotundus** (adj. A) almost circular

**rough** [*to touch*] asper, scaber (both adj. A), [*unused, wild*] rudis (adj. B);  
**rough** [*with points or short stiff hairs*] asperatus (adj. A); **slightly rough**  
 asperulus (adj. A); **very rough** horridus (adj. A); **roughness** asperitas  
 (noun f. 3); **rough** (in Gk comp.) trachy-

**roughly** [*more or less*] plusminusve (adv.)

**round** [*in outline*] rotundus, orbiculatus (both adj. A), circularis (adj. B);  
**rounded** rotundatus (part. A); **rounded off** tornatus (part. A); **with**  
**rounded head** capitatus (adj. A)

**row** series (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]; **in rows** serialis (adj. B), seriatus (adj. A),  
 seriatim (adv.); **with a single row** haplostichus (adj. A); **in a single row**  
 unifariam (adv.), unifarius (adj. A); **having equal rows** isostichus (adj.  
 A); **in many rows** multifariam (adv.); **many-rowed** multifarius (adj.  
 A); **in two opposite rows** distichus (adj. A); **in three rows** tristichus,  
 triplostichus (both adj. A)

**rubbed** [*bruised*] tritus (part. A)

**ruber** (adj. B) red; **rubellus, rubidus** (both adj. A), **rubens** (part. B) reddish;  
**rubescens** (part. B) becoming red; **rubicundus** (adj. A) red, ruddy;  
**rubiginosus** (adj. A) rusty-red; **rubineus** (adj. A) ruby-red; **rubr-**,  
**rubro-** (in Lat. comp.) red-

**ruderalis** (adj. B) growing among rubbish

**rudiment** rudimentum (noun n. 2); **rudimentary** rudimentalis (adj. B), rudimentarius (adj. A), inchoatus (part. A), obsoletus (adj. A)  
**rudis** (adj. B) wild, unused, rough  
**rufus** (adj. A) reddish  
**ruga** (noun f. 1) wrinkle, fold; **rugosus**, **rugatus** (both adj. A) rugose, wrinkled; **rugulosus** (adj. A) somewhat wrinkled; **rugiformis** (adj. B) wrinkle-like  
**ruminatus** (adj. A) ruminant  
**rumpens** (part. B) breaking apart, bursting  
**runcinatus** (adj. A) runcinate  
**runner** [*stolon*] stolo (noun m. 3), [*long, with terminal leaves*] sarmentum (noun n. 2), flagellum (noun n. 2)  
**running** [*over something*] currens (part. B), [*water*] profluens (part. B); **running between** intercurrents (part. B); **running together** confluent (part. B)  
**rupes** (noun f. 3) rock; **rupestris** (adj. B) rocky; **rupi-** (in Lat. comp.) rock-  
**rupicola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of rocky places  
**ruptilis** (adj. B) dehiscing irregularly  
**rupturing** rumpens (part. B)  
**ruptus** (part. A) broken  
**ruralis** (adj. B) rural, of the country  
**rush-like** juncus (adj. A); **rush-leaved** juncifolius (adj. A); **rushy place** juncetum (noun n. 2); **full of rushes** juncosus (adj. A)  
**russet** russus (adj. A)  
**rust** robigo (noun f. 3)  
**rusticanus** (adj. A) rural, of the country  
**rusty-red** ferrugineus, rubiginosus (both adj. A); **becoming rusty-red** ferruginescens (part. B)  
**rutilans** (part. B), **rutilus** (adj. A) reddish-orange

## S

**sabulo** (noun m. 3) coarse sand; **sabulosum** (noun n. 2) a sandy place; **sabulosus** (adj. A) sandy, growing in sandy place  
**saccharum** (noun n. 2) sugar; **saccharatus** (adj. A) sugary, appearing sugar-coated; **saccharinus** (adj. A) sugary; **saccharifer** (adj. B) sugar-bearing; **saccharosum** (noun n. 2) saccharose

- sacculus** (noun m. 2) a small sac, locule of anther; **sacculifer** (adj. B) having a sacculus
- saccus** (noun m. 2) pouch; **saccatus** (adj. A) saccate, pouched; **sacciformis** (adj. B) bag-*or* sac-shaped
- saddle** ephippium (noun n. 2), sella (noun f. 1); **saddle-shaped** ephippioideus, ephippiomorphus (both adj. A), selliformis (adj. B)
- saepe** (adv.) often, frequently; **saepiuscule** (adv.) rather often; **saepissime** (adv.) very often
- saffron yellow** croceus, crocatus (both adj. A)
- sagittatus** (adj. A), **sagittalis** (adj. B), **saggitiformis** (adj. B) saggitate, arrow-headed
- salignus** (adj. A) willowy; **salicinus** (adj. A) relating to willows
- saline** salsus, salinus (both adj. A)
- salmoneus** (adj. A) salmon-pink
- salsugineus** (adj. A), **salsuginosus** (adj. A) brackish place
- salt** sal (noun m. 3); **salty, salted** salinus (adj. A), salsus (part. A); **salt-** (in Gk comp.) hal-, hali-, halo-
- saltem** (adv.) at least
- salverform** hypocrateriformis (adj. B), hypocraterimorphus (adj. A)
- samara** samara (noun f. 1)
- same** idem (pron.) [m., n.], eadem [f.] [see p. 00]
- same time, at the** simul
- sample** exemplum (noun n. 2)
- sand** arena (noun f. 1), sabulo (noun m. 3); **sandy place** arenosum, sabulosum (both noun n. 2); **sandy** arenarius, arenaceus, sabulosus (all adj. A); **very sandy** arenosus (adj. A); **growing in sand** arenarius (adj. A); **sand-** (in Lat. comp.) areni-, (in Gk comp.) ammo-, psammo-
- sandal-shaped** soleiformis (adj. B)
- sandstone** arenosaxum (noun n. 2)
- sanguineus, sanguinolentus** (both adj. A), **sanguineo-** (in Lat. comp.) blood-red
- sap** succus (noun m. 2); **without sap** exsuccus (adj. A)
- saponaceus, saponarius** (both adj. A) soapy
- sapor** (noun m. 3) taste
- saprophytic** saprophyticus (adj. A)

- sarc-**, **sarco-** (in Gk comp.) flesh-, fleshy-
- sarcocarp** sarcocarpium (noun n. 2)
- sarcotesta** (noun f. 1) sarcotesta
- sarmentum** (noun n. 2) long runner; **sarmentosus** (adj. A) producing long runners
- sat** (adv.), **satis** (adv.) enough, fairly, quite
- sativus** (adj. A) sown, planted
- saturate** (adv.) deeply [*of colours*]
- saucer** catillus (noun m. 2); **saucer-shaped** acetabuliformis, catilliformis, patelliformis, pateriformis (all adj. B)
- sausage-shaped** allantoideus (adj. A), botuliformis (adj. B), farciminiformis (adj. B)
- savannah** savanna (noun f. 1)
- saw-** (in Gk comp.) prion-
- sawdust** scobis (noun f. 3)
- saw-edged** serratus (adj. A)
- saxatilis** (adj. B), **saxicola** (noun c. 1) growing among rocks
- saxum** (noun n. 2) rock, stone; **saxosa** (noun n. 2, pl.) rocky places; **saxi-** (in Lat. comp.) rock-. *See also lapis, rock, stone*
- scaber** (adj. A) scabrous, rough; **scaberulus**, **scabrellus** (both adj. A) minutely scabrous; **scabridus** (adj. A) somewhat scabrous; **scabridiusculus** (adj. A) minutely scabrous; **scabrosus** (adj. A) distinctly scabrous; **scabri-** (in Lat. comp.) scabrous, rough
- scalariformis**, **scalaris** (both adj. B) ladder-like
- scale** squama (noun f. 1); **scaly** squamatus, squamosus, lepidotus (all adj. A); **clothed in scales** paleatus, scutellatus (both adj. A); **scale-**, **scaly-** (in Gk comp.) lepido-
- scalloped** crenatus (adj. A)
- scalpelliformis** (adj. B) shaped like a scalpel
- scalpratus** (adj. A) having a sharp *or* cutting edge
- scalpturatus** (adj. A) scratched
- scaly** *see scale*
- scandens** (part. B) climbing
- scanty** parcus, rarus (both adj. A)
- scap-**, **scapi-** (in Lat. comp.) relating to a scape

- scape** scapus (noun m. 2); **without a scape** exscapus (adj. A)
- scar** cicatrix (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **scarred** cicatricatus (adj. A); **covered in scars** cicatricosus (adj. A)
- scarcely** aegre, vix (both adv.); **scarce** (in Gk comp.) span-, spano-
- scarious** scariosus (adj. A)
- scarlet** scarlatinus (adj. A); *cf.* cinnabarinus, coccineus, miniatus (all adj. A)
- scarred** cicatricatus (adj. A)
- scatens** (part. B + Ablative) teeming with, abounding with
- scattered** adpersus, aspersus, dispersus, displicatus, sparsus (all part. A),  
dissitus, remotus (both adj. A), distans (part. B); **somewhat scattered**  
remotiusculus (adj. A); **scattering** spargens (part. B); **a scattering**  
dispersio (noun f. 3)
- scaturiginus** (adj. A) relating to springs of water; **scaturigo** (noun f. 3) spring  
[*of water*]
- sceletus** (noun m. 2) skeleton
- scent** odor, olor, fetor (all noun m. 3) [see p. 00], (in Gk comp.) -osma;  
**scented** odoros, odorifer (both adj. A), odoratus (part. A), olens (part.  
B), (in Gk comp.) osm-; **producing scent** redolens (part. B); **strong-**  
**scented** graveolens (adj. B); **sweetly scented** fragrans, suaveolens (both  
adj. B); **scentless** inodorus (adj. A). *See also* **smell**
- schist-**, **schisto-** (in Gk comp.) split, cleft
- schistaceus** (adj. A) relating to schistaceous rock, slate-grey
- schiz-**, **schizo-** (in Gk comp.) split, cleft
- schizidium** (noun n. 2) schizidium
- schizocarp** schizocarpium (noun n. 2)
- sciaphilus** (adj. A) shade-loving
- scilicet** (adv.) namely, evidently
- scintillans** (part. B) sparkling
- scissus** (part. A) cut, torn; **scissura** (noun f. 1) a split, cleft
- scler-**, **sclero-** (in Gk comp.) hard
- scleranthium** scleranthium (noun n. 2)
- sclereid** furunculus (noun m. 2)
- sclerenchyma** sclerenchyma (noun n. 3)
- scleroideus**, **scleroticus** (both adj. A) sclerotic, hard *or* stony in texture
- sclerotium** sclerotium (noun n. 2)

- scobis** (noun f. 3) sawdust; **scobiculatus** (adj. A), **scobiformis** (adj. B)  
appearing like sawdust
- scolecospore** scolecospora (noun f. 1)
- scoparie** (adv.) fastigiately, broom-like
- scopatus** (adj. A) densely covered with bristly hairs; **scopiformis** (adj. B),  
**scopulatus** (adj. A) like a broom *or* brush
- scopulus** (noun m. 2) cliff
- scorpioid** scorpiodeus (adj. A), scorpioides (adj. B)
- scraped** rasilis (adj. B); **scraped off** erasus (part. A)
- scratched** scalpturatus (adj. A)
- scree** glara (noun f. 1)
- scrobis** (noun m. 3) ditch; **scrobiculus** (noun m. 2) pit, depression;  
**scrobicularis** (adj. B), **scrobiculatus** (adj. A) minutely pitted
- scroiformis** (adj. B) pouch-shaped
- scrupose** scruposus (adj. A)
- sculptus**, **sculpturatus** (both part. A) engraved
- scum** spuma (noun f. 1)
- scurfy** furfuraceus, leprosus (both adj. A)
- scutatus** (adj. A), **scutiformis** (adj. B) shield-shaped
- scutellatus** (adj. A) covered in small plates *or* scales
- scutellum** scutellum (noun n. 2)
- scutula** scutula (noun f. 1)
- scyph-**, **scyphi-**, **scypho-** (in Gk comp.) cup-
- scyphiifer** (adj. A) bearing scyphi (cups)
- scyphulus** (noun m. 2) gemma cup
- scyphus** scyphus (noun m. 2), scypha (noun f. 1)
- sea** mare (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **growing in the sea** marinus (adj. A);  
**growing by the sea** maritimus (adj. A); **pertaining to the sea** pelagicus  
(adj. A)
- sea-green** thalassicus (adj. A)
- seashore** littus, litus (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **pertaining to the seashore**  
littoralis, litoralis (both adj. B), littoreus (adj. A)
- season** tempus (noun n. 4)
- seated upon** insidens (part. B + Dative)

**seaweed** alga (noun f. 1); **pertaining to a seaweed** algaceus (adj. A), algensis (adj. B)

**sebaceous** (adj. A) tallowy; **sebosus** (adj. A) greasy; **sebum** (noun n. 2) fat; **sebifer** (adj. A) bearing wax

**secedens** (part. B) splitting apart

**secernens** (part. B) secreting, separating off

**second** secundus (ord. num., adj. A), alter (adj. A)

**secondary** secundarius (adj. A), partialis (adj. B)

**secreting** secernens (part. B); **secretion** secretio (noun f. 3); **secretory** secretorius (adj. A)

**sectilis** (adj. B) cut into small pieces

**section** sectio (noun f. 3)

**sectus** (part. A) cut to base *or* midrib

**secundum** (prep. + Accusative) according to, depending on, following

**secundus** (adj. A) following, next; *also* second, second

**secus** (prep. + Accusative) along, on; **-secus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -side

**sed** (conj.) but

**sedentarius** (adj. A) sedentary, stationary

**sedes** (noun f. 3) abode

**sediment** sedimentation (noun n. 2)

**seed** semen (noun n. 3); **seed-bearing** seminifer, seminiger (both adj. A); **-seeded** (in Lat. comp.) -seminalis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) -spermus (adj. A)

**seed coat** [*outer*] testa (noun f. 1), [*inner*] tegmen, tegumen (noun n. 3)

**seedling** plantula (noun f. 1)

**seen** visus, spectatus (both part. A)

**segment** segmentum (noun n. 2); **segmented** segmentatus (adj. A)

**segregatus** (part. A) isolated, separated

**sejunctus** (part. A) isolated; **sejunctim** (adv.) separately

**seldom** raro (adv.)

**selected** lectus, selectus (both part. A); **selection** delectus (noun m. 4)

**self** aut, auto- (in Gk comp.)

**sella** (noun f. 1) saddle; **sellaeformis**, **selliformis** (both adj. B) saddle-shaped

**semel** (num. adv.) once

- semen** (noun n. 3) seed; **seminifer**, **seminiger** (both adj. A) seed-bearing;  
**-seminalis** (adj. B) (in Lat. comp.) -seeded
- semi-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) half-
- semotus** (part. A) distant, far removed
- semper** (adv.) always
- sempervirens** (part. B) evergreen
- senatus** (adj. A) sienna
- senectus** (noun f. 3) old age; **senescens** (part. B) growing old
- seni** (num. adj. distrib. pl) six each
- sense** *sensus q.v.*
- sensim** (adv.) gradually
- sensitive** [*to a stimulus*] irritabilis (adj. B), sensitivus (adj. A); **sensitive glandular hair** tentaculum (noun n. 2)
- sensus** (noun m. 4) opinion, view, sense; **sensu** (Ablative sing.) in the sense *or* opinion of [*person*]; **sensu lato** (Ablative sing.) in a broad sense; **sensu stricto** (Ablative sing.) in a narrow sense
- senticosus** (adj. A) with copious thorns *or* prickles
- seorsus** (adj. A) separate; **seorsim**, **seorsum** (adv. + Ablative) apart, separately
- sepal** sepalum (noun n. 2); **sepaline** sepalinus (adj. A); **sepaloid** sepaloideus (adj. A); **-sepalled** (in Gk & Lat. comp.) -sepalus (adj. A.)
- separabilis** (adj. B) separable
- separate**, **separated** discretus, disjunctus, disparatus, divulsus, segregatus, sejunctus (all part. A), seorsus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) chori-, dialy-; **easily separated** partibilis (adj. B); **separating** discedens, secedens (both part. B); **separately** discretim, disjuncte, disjunctim, sejunctim, seorsum (all adv.); **separation** separatio (noun f. 3)
- separatus** (part. A) detached
- sepes**, **saepes** (noun f. 3) hedge; **sepiarius** (adj. A) growing in *or* used for hedges
- sepiaceus** (adj. A) bistre, sepia
- sepimentum** (noun n. 2) partition
- sept-**, **septem-**, **septen-** (in Lat. comp.) seven
- septatus** (adj. A) septate; **septalis** (adj. B) belonging to a septum; **septatio** (noun f. 3) septation



- septem** (num. adj. indecl.) seven
- septeni** (num. adj. distrib. pl.) seven each
- septentrio** (noun m. 3) north; **septentrionalis** (adj. B) northern
- septicidal** septicidalis (adj. B); **septifragal** septifragus (adj. A)
- septies, septiens** (num. adv.) seven times
- septimus** (ord. num., adj. A) seventh [see p. 00]
- septum** (noun n. 2) cross-wall, septum; **having transverse septa** tabulatus (adj. A); **without septa, non-septate** aseptatus, eseptatus, continuus (all adj. A)
- sepulcretum** (noun n. 2) graveyard; **sepulcralis** (adj. B) of a tomb
- sequens** (part. B) following
- serialis** (adj. B), **seriatus** (adj. A) arranged in rows; **seriatim** (adv.) in rows, serially
- sericeus** (adj. A) silky
- series** series (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]
- sero** (adv.) late; **serotinus** (adj. A) late in coming
- serpens** (part. B) creeping
- serpentinus** (adj. A) serpentine, snake-like, *or* growing in serpentine rock
- serpent-like** colubrinus (adj. A)
- serratus** (adj. A) serrate, saw-edged; **serratura** (noun f. 1) serration, toothing
- serus** (adj. A) late
- servatus** (part. A) preserved, protected
- sesqui-** (in Lat. comp.) one and a half
- sessile** sessilis (adj. B), apodus (adj. A); (in Lat. comp.) sessil-, sessili-
- seta** (noun f. 1) bristle; **setaceus** (adj. A) bristle-like; **setifer** (adj. A) bristle-bearing; **setiformis** (adj. B) bristle-shaped; **setosus** (adj. A) bristly; **setulosus** (adj. A) minutely setose
- setula** (noun f. 1) a cystidium, hair-like appendage
- seu** (conj.) or
- seven** septem (num. adj., indecl.); **seventh** septimus (ord. num., adj. A) [see p. 00]; **seven each** septeni (num. adj. distrib. pl); **seven times** septies, septiens (both num. adv.); **seven-** (in Lat. comp.) sept-, septem-, septen-, (in Gk comp.) hepta-
- several** aliquot (indecl. number), plures (adj. B, pl.); **several-** (in Lat. comp.) plur-; **several times** aliquoties (adv.)

- sex** [*male, female*] *sexus* (noun m. 4)
- sex** (num. adj. indecl.) six; **sexies, sexiens** (both num. adv.) six times
- sex-** (in Lat. comp.) six-
- sexangularis** (adj. B) hexagonal
- sextus** (num. ord., adj. A) sixth
- sexualis** (adj. B) sexual; **sexualiter** (adv.) sexually; **sexual organs** genitalia (noun n. 2, pl.)
- shade** *umbra* (noun f. 1); **shady** *umbrosus* (adj. A); **shady place** *opacum* (noun n. 2); **shade-loving** *sciaphilus* (adj. A)
- shaggy** *horricomis* (adj. B), *intonsus* (adj. A)
- shaken off** *excussus* (part. A)
- shallow** *vadum* (noun n. 2), *vadosus* (adj. A) *or* non altus, non profundus (both adj. A)
- shape** *figura, forma* (both noun f. 1), *conformatio* (noun f. 3); **of definite shape** *figuratus* (part. A); **same shape as** *conformis* (adj. B); **of different shapes** *versiformis* (adj. B); **shaped** *factus* (part. A); **-shaped** (in Lat. comp.) *-formis* (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) *-morphus* (adj. A)
- sharp** [*pointed*] *acutus* (adj. A), [*bitter*] *acer* (adj. B), [*sour*] *amarus* (adj. A), [*distinct*] *argutus* (adj. A); **sharply** *acute*, [*distinctly*] *argute* (both adv.); **sharp-toothed** *argutus* (adj. A); **sharp** (in Gk comp.) *oxy-*
- shattered** *diffRACTus* (part. A)
- sheath** *vagina* (noun f. 1); **sheathed** *vaginatus* (adj. A); **sheathing** *vaginans* (part. B); **sheath, leaf** *vagina* (noun f. 1) *folii* (noun n. 2, Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *vagina* is declined)
- shed** *exutus* (part. A), *exuviatus* (adj. A)
- sheen** *nitor* (noun m. 3)
- shell-bearing** *conchifer* (adj. A); **shell-shaped** *conchatus* (adj. A), *conchiformis* (adj. B)
- shield-shaped** [*circular*] *clypeatus, scutatus* (both adj. A), *scutiformis* (adj. B)
- shingle** [*pebbles*] *glarea* (noun f. 1); **seashore shingle** *glarea maritima* (noun f. 1, adj. A); **river shingle** *glarea fluviatilis* (noun f. 1, adj. A)
- shining, shiny** *fulgens, nitens* (both part. B), *fulgidus* (part. A), *lucidus* (adj. A), *nitidus* (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) *lampro-*
- shoot** *surculus* (noun m. 2); **shooting** *propullulans* (adj. B); **vigorous shoot** [*after pruning*] *apoblastus* (noun m. 2); **renewal shoot** *renovatio*

- (noun f. 3); **short shoot** brachyblastus (noun m. 2); **shoot-** (in Gk comp.) blast-, blasto-, clad-; **-shoot** (in Gk comp.) -cladus (adj. A)
- shore** litus, littus (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **of the shore** litoralis, littoralis (adj. B)
- short** brevis (adj. B), curtus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) brachy-, (in Lat. comp.) brevi-; **very short** brevissimus (adj. A sup.); **shortly** breviter (adv.); **shortness** brevitās (noun f. 3); **shortened** abbreviatus (adj. A); **short-footed** brevipes (adj. B)
- shoulder** humerus (noun m. 2); **shouldered** humeratus (adj. A)
- showed** indicatus (part. A); **showing** praebens (part. B)
- shrimp-red** palaemoneus (adj. A)
- shrub** arbustum (noun n. 2), frutex (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]; **becoming shrubby** frutescens, fruticans (both part. B); **shrubby** fruticosus (adj. A); **shrublet** fruticulus (noun m. 2)
- sic** (adv.) thus
- siccus** (adj. A) dry [*state*]; **siccatus** (part. A) dried up; **siccatus** (noun f. 3) dryness, dried state
- sick** aeger (adj. A)
- sickle-shaped** falcatus (adj. A), falciformis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) drepan-
- sicut** (adv.) just as
- sicyoideus** (adj. A) gourd-shaped
- side** latus (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]; **on this side** cis (prep. + Accusative), *also* in geographical compounds e.g. cisalpinus; **side by side with** appositus (part. A); **being side by side** collateralis (adj. B); **on all sides** undique, omnifariam, omnilateraliter, quaquaversum (all adv.)
- sienna** senatus (adj. A)
- sieve-like** cribratus, cribrosus (both adj. A)
- sight, at first** primo aspectu (adv. phr.)
- sigillatim** (adv.) markedly; **sigillatus** (adj. A) sigillate, marked with small impressions
- sigmoideus** (adj. A) sigmoid
- signum** (noun n. 2) mark; **signatus** (part. A) marked
- siliceus** (adj. A) siliceous
- silicule** silicula (noun f. 1)
- siliqua** siliqua (noun f. 1)

**silky** sericeus, bombycinus (both adj. A)

**silva** *see* **sylva**

**silvery** argenteus (adj. A); **silver-** (in Gk comp.) argyr-

**silvicola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of woods

**similar in all respects** consimilis (adj. B + Dative or Genitive)

**similaris** (adj. B) alike, similar

**similis** (adj. B + Dative or Genitive) similar to, like; **similitudo** (noun f. 3) likeness, resemblance; **similiter** (adv.) in like manner

**simplex** (adj. B) simple, single [*as in single flower*], undivided [see p. 00];

**simplici-** (in Lat. comp.) simple-; **simpliciter** (adv.) simply, plainly

**simul** (adv.) at the same time

**simulans** (part. B) imitating, resembling

**simultaneus** (adj. A) at the same time

**sine** (prep. + Ablative) without

**single** solus (adj. A), [*as in single flower*] simplex (adj. B); **single-** (in Gk comp.) haplo-, (in Lat. comp.) uni-

**singulus** (adj. A) individual; **singulatim**, **singulariter** (both adv.)

individually, separately; **singularis** (adj. B) single [*solitary*]; **singuli** (num. distr. adj. pl.) one each

**sinister** (adj. A) on the left; **sinistrorsum** (adv.) towards the left; **in**

**sinistrum** (adv. phr.) to the left

**sinker** *see* **dropper**

**sinuate** sinuatus (adj. A); **faintly sinuate** sinuolatus (adj. A);

**sinuous** anfractuosus (adj. A); **very sinuous** sinuosus (adj. A)

**sinus** (noun m. 4) sinus, bay

**sipho** (noun m. 3) siphon [*of alga*]; **siphoneus** (adj. A) having elongated

tubes or non-septate filaments; **siphon-**, **siphono-**, **siphonius** (adj. A) (in Gk comp.) relating to tube or pipe

**sistens** (part. B) standing, appearing, supporting

**sitting on**, **situated on** insidens (part. B + Dative)

**situated** situs, positus (both part. A)

**situation** [*place*] locus (noun m. 2), [*position*] situs (noun m. 4)

**situs** (noun m. 4) position

**situs** (part. A) placed, left

**sive** (conj.) or

- six** sex (num. adj. indecl.); **six each** seni (num. adj. distrib. pl.); **six times** sexies, sexiens (both num. adv.), (in Lat. comp.) sex-, (in Gk comp.) hexa-
- sixth** sextus (ord. num., adj. A)
- size** amplitudo, magnitudo (both noun f. 3), statura (noun f. 1)
- skeleton** sceletus (noun m. 2)
- sketch** adumbratio, delineatio (both noun f. 3)
- skin** pellis (noun f. 3); **skinned** exutus (part. A), exuviatus (adj. A), recutitus (adj. A)
- sky** caelum (noun n. 2); **sky blue** caelestis (adj. B)
- slanting** obliquus (adj. A)
- slate-coloured** ardesiacus (adj. A); **slate-blue** lazulino-ardesiacus (adj. A)
- slaty** schistaceus
- slender** gracilis, exilis, tenuis (all adj. B); (in Gk comp.) ischno-, lept-, lepto-
- slight** exiguus (adj. A); **slightly** [*lightly*] leviter (adv.), [*a little*] parum (adv.), [*mildly*] leniter (adv.), [*weakly*] dilute (adv.)
- slime** mucus (noun m. 2); **slimy** mucosus (adj. A); **slimy, slime-** (in Gk comp.) myx-, myxo-
- slipper-shaped** calceiformis (adj. B), calceolatus (adj. A)
- slippery** labidus (adj. A), labilis (adj. B); **smooth and slippery** lubricus (adj. A)
- slit** rima (noun f. 1)
- slope** [*of a hill*] clivus (noun m. 2), declivitas (noun f. 3); **sloping** devexus (adj. A); **sloping downwards** declivis (adj. B); **sloping upwards** acclivis (adj. B)
- slow** tardus (adj. A); **slowly** tarde, lente (both adv.)
- sluggish** lentus (adj. A)
- small** parvus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) tytto-; **smaller** minus (comp. adj. n.), (in Gk comp.) mei-, meio-; **very small** pusillus, parvulus, perparvus (all adj. A); **smallness** parvitas (noun f. 3)
- smaragdinus** (adj. A) emerald-green
- smear** illinitus, oblitus (both part. A)
- smell** odor, olor, fetor (all noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **having a smell** odor, odorifer (both adj. A), odoratus (part. A); **emitting a smell** olens (part. B), olidus (adj. A); **smelling pleasantly** suaveolens (adj. B), fragrans (part. B), aromaticus (adj. A); **smelling unpleasantly** foetidus, putidus,

- stercoreus (all adj. A), graveolens (adj. B); **without smell** inodorus (adj. A)
- smoky** fumeus, fumidus, fumosus (all adj. A); **smoke-grey** fumosus, fumeus (both adj. A)
- smooth** laevis, levis (both adj. B) [see p. 00]; **smooth, smoothed** laevigatus, levigatus (both adj. A); **smoothed off** derasus (part. A), rasilis (adj. B); **smooth** (in Gk comp.) lei-, leio-, psil-, psilo-; **smooth and slippery** lubricus (adj. A)
- snail's shell**, coiled like cochleatus (adj. A)
- snake-like** serpentinus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) ophio-
- snout** rostrum (noun n. 2) [see p. 00]
- snow** nix (noun f. 3); **snowy, snow-like** nivalis (adj. B); **snow-white** candidus, niveus (both adj. A), nivalis (adj. B); **becoming snow-white** nivescens (part. B); **full of snow** nivusus (adj. A); **snowy** (in Gk comp.) chion-, chiono-
- so** [thus, with adj.] ita (adv.), [thus, with verb] sic (adv.), [therefore] ergo
- soaked** irriguus, madidus (both adj. A), madefactus (part. A)
- soapy** saponaceus, saponarius (both adj. A)
- sobol** soboles (noun f. 3); **sobolifer** (adj. A) sobol-bearing
- sodium** sodium (noun n. 2)
- soft** [to touch] mollis, mitis, lenis (all adj. B), [in colour] lenis (adj. B), [in taste] mitis (adj. B); **softly** molliter, leniter (both adv.); **somewhat soft** molliusculus (adj. A); **soft-** (in Gk comp.) hapalo-
- soil** humus (noun f. 2), solum (noun n. 2); **lumpy soil** glebosus (adj. A)
- soleiformis, solaeformis** (both adj. B) sandal-shaped
- solely** solum, tantum (both adv.)
- solenostela** (noun f. 1) solenosteale
- solid** solidus (adj. A)
- solide** (adv.) firmly
- solidinervis** (adj. B), **solidinervius** (adj. A) having undivided nerves running from base to apex
- solitarius** (adj. A) alone, solitary
- solitus** (adj. A) usual, customary
- sollemniter** (adv.) customarily
- solstitialis** (adj. B) pertaining to summer

- solubilis** (adj. B) separating into parts  
**solum** (noun n. 2) soil, floor  
**solum** (adv.) exclusively, only  
**solus** (adj. A) alone, single  
**solution** solutio (noun f. 3)  
**solutus** (part. A) set free, not adhering  
**soma** (noun m. 3, in Gk comp.) body  
**somatic** somaticus (adj. A)  
**some** aliqui, aliqua, aliquod (adj., decl. like *qui*, see p. 00); **somewhat** [*with numbers*] aliquot (adv.); **some, several** aliquot [indecl. num.]  
**somehow** aliquam (adv.); **sometimes** aliquando, interdum, nonnumquam, quandoque (all adv.); **somewhat** aliquanto, aliquantum, nonnihil (all adv.)  
**son** filius (noun m. 2)  
**soon** cito, mox, jam (all adv.)  
**soot** fuligo (noun f. 3); **sooty** fuliginous (adj. A); **sooty, full of soot** fuliginosus (adj. A)  
**soralium** soralium (noun n. 2)  
**sordidus** (adj. A) dingy, soiled  
**soredium** (noun n. 2) sorede, soredium; **sorediatus** (adj. A) with soredia; **esorediatus** (adj. A) lacking soredia  
**sorocarp** sorocarpium (noun n. 2)  
**sorophore** sorophorum (noun n. 2)  
**sort: what sort?** qualis (pron. adj., decl. like *laevis*, see p. 00)  
**sorus** sorus (noun m. 2); **sorus-bearing** sorifer (adj. A)  
**-sorus** (adj. A, in Lat. & Gk comp.) pertaining to a sorus  
**sour** see **bitter**  
**source** origo (noun f. 3)  
**south** meridies (noun m. 5); **southern** australis, meridionalis (both adj. B), (in Lat. comp.) austro-, (in Gk comp.) nōto-  
**sown** sativus (adj. A), seminatus (part. A)  
**space** spatium (noun n. 2); **spaced** [*arranged*] dispositus (part. A), [*scattered*] dispersus (part. A); **well-spaced** dissitus (adj. A); **spacious** spatiosus (adj. A)  
**spadiceus** (adj. A) brown, date-coloured

- spadix** spadix (noun m. or f. 3) [see p. 00]  
**span-**, **spano-** (in Gk comp.) few, scarce  
**spargens** (part. B) dispersing  
**sparing** parcus (adj. A); **sparingly** parce (adv.)  
**sparkling** scintillans (part. B)  
**sparse** (English) sparsus (adj. A); **sparsely** sparsim (adv.)  
**sparse** (adv.) infrequently; **sparsim** (adv.) sparsely; **sparsus** (part. A) scattered, sparse  
**spatha** (noun f. 1) spathe; **spathaceus** (adj. A) spathe-like, having a spathe; **spathiformis** (adj. B) spathe-like; **woody spathe** cymba (noun f. 1)  
**spathilla** spathilla (noun f. 1)  
**spathulatus**, **spatulatus** (adj. A) spathulate; **spathuli-**, **spatuli-** (in Lat. comp.) spathulate  
**spatium** (noun n. 2) interval, space; **spatiosus** (adj. A) of great extent  
**spear-shaped** hastilis (adj. B); **spear-** (in Lat. comp.) hasti-  
**special** peculiaris, specialis (both adj. B), proprius (adj. A)  
**species** species (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]; **specific** specificus (adj. A); **specifically** specifice (adv.)  
**specified** certus (adj. A)  
**specimen** specimen (noun n. 3), exemplum (noun n. 2)  
**speciosus** (adj. A) showy  
**speck** gutta (noun f. 1); **speckled** *see* **macula**, **sphacelatus**  
**spectans** (part. B) facing  
**spectatus** (part. A) seen  
**speedily** [*quickly*] cito (adv.), [*immediately*] confestim  
**spelunca** (noun f. 1) cave  
**-sperma** (noun n. 3, in Gk comp.) seed; **-spermus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -seeded  
**spermagonium** spermogonium (noun n. 2)  
**spermatangium** (noun n. 2) spermatangium; **spermatangialis** (adj. B) spermatangial  
**spermatium** (noun n. 2) spermatium  
**spermatozoideus** (noun m. 2) motile gamete  
**spermogonium** (noun n. 2) spermagonium, structure producing spermatia



- sphacelatus** (adj. A) having brown *or* blackish speckling
- sphaericus** (adj. A) globose, spherical; **sphaero-** (in Gk comp.) globose, spherical
- sphaerocysta** (noun f. 1) sphaerocyst, globose cell
- sphaeroideus** (adj. A) globose but somewhat flattened at poles
- sphaeropedunculatus** (adj. A) with cystidium swollen spherically at the tip and narrowing into an elongated stalk
- sphalma** (noun n. 3) error, mistake
- spen-**, **speno-** (in Gk comp.) wedge-
- sphere** globus (noun m. 2)
- spica** (noun f. 1) spike; **spicatus** (adj. A) spicate; **spicifer** (adj. A) spike-bearing; **spiciformis** (adj. B) resembling a spike
- spicula** (noun f. 1) spikelet
- spiculatus** (adj. A) covered with fine points
- spiculum** (noun n. 2) spicule
- spike** spica (noun f. 1) *q.v.*; **relating to a spike** (in Gk comp.) stachy-, stachyo-, -stachys (noun f. 3, stem *stachyd-*), -stachyus (adj. A)
- spikelet** spicula (noun f. 1)
- spindle-shaped** fusiformis (adj. B)
- spine** spina (noun f. 1); **spiny** spineus, spinosus (both adj. A); **spine-bearing** spinifer (adj. A); **spine-cell** spinula (noun f. 1); **spine-like** spiniformis (adj. B); **spinescent** spinescens (part. B); **spinule** spinula (noun f. 1); **spinulose** spinulosus (adj. A); **without spines** inermis (adj. B)
- spira** (noun f. 1) coil
- spiral** gyrosus (adj. A), spiralis (adj. B); **spiralling** terebrans (part. B); **spirally** spiratim, spiraliter (both adv.); **spirally twisted** torsivus, helicus (both adj. A), (in Gk comp.) helic-
- spissus** (adj. A) dense, close together; **spisse** (adv.) compactly, densely; **spissescens** (part. B) becoming thick
- splash-cup** scyphulus (noun m. 2)
- splendens** (part. B) shining, brilliant; **splendide** (adv.) brightly
- splendour** (in Gk comp.) -doxa (noun f. 1), -doxus (adj. A)
- splitting** findens (part. B); **splitting apart** findens, secedens (both part. B); **a split** fissura, scissura (both noun f. 1); **split** fissus (adj. A), fissilis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) schist-, schisto-, schiz-, schizo-
- spod-**, **spodo-** (in Gk comp.) grey-

- spongy** fungosus, spongiosus (both adj. A)  
**spontaneus** (adj. A) growing wild naturally  
**spoon-shaped** cochleariformis, cochlearis (both adj. B)  
**sporadic** sporadicus (adj. A)  
**sporangiatus** (adj. A) producing spores  
**sporangium** (noun n. 2) sporangium; **sporangiospora** (noun f. 1) sporangiospore; **sporangifer** (adj. A) sporangium-bearing;  
**sporangiolum** (noun n. 2) small sporangium; **sporangiophorum** (noun n. 2) stalk of a sporangium  
**spore** spora (noun f. 1); **spore-bearing** sporifer, sporophorus (both adj. A); **producing spores** sporogenus (adj. A); **-spored** (in comp.) -sporus (adj. A); **spore, non-motile** akinetum (noun n. 2)  
**sporidiole** sporidiolum (noun n. 2)  
**sporidium** sporidium (noun n. 2)  
**sporocarp** sporocarpium (noun n. 2)  
**sporoclade** sporocladium (noun n. 2)  
**sporocyst** sporocysta (noun f. 1)  
**sporodochidium** sporodochidium (noun n. 2)  
**sporodochium** sporodochium (noun n. 2)  
**sporogenus** (adj. A) producing spores  
**sporophore** sporophorum (noun n. 2)  
**sporophydium** sporophydium (noun n. 2)  
**sporophyll** sporophyllum (noun n. 2)  
**sporophyte** sporophytum (noun n. 2)  
**sporostegium** sporostegium (noun n. 2)  
**sporotheceum** sporothecium (noun n. 2)  
**sporulation** sporulatio (noun f. 3); **sporulating** sporulatus (part. A)  
**spot** [*blotch*] macula (noun f. 1) [see p. 00], [*prick*] punctum (noun n. 2), [*drop*] gutta (noun f. 1); **spotted** maculatus, punctatus, guttatus (all adj. A); (in Gk comp.) balio-, sticto-; **full of spots** maculosus (adj. A); **without spots** astictus (adj. A), immaculatus (part. A); **spot-shaped** maculiformis (adj. B)  
**spreading** [*outstretched*] effusus, expansus (all part. A), patens (part. B), patulus (adj. A), [*extending*] extendens, procurrens (both part. B); **widely spreading** [*in habit*] effusus (part. A); **outspread** explanatus (part. A)

- spring** [*season*] ver (noun n. 3); **of springtime** vernalis (adj. B), vernus (adj. A)
- spring** [*water*] fons (noun m. 3), scaturigo (noun f. 3); **growing by or in springs** fontanus (adj. A), fontinalis (adj. B), scaturiginus (adj. A)
- springing out** exiliens (part. B); **springing up** exiens (part. B); **springing back** resiliens (part. B)
- sprinkled** conspersus, adpersus (both part. A); **sprinkled upon** inspersus (part. A)
- sprout** [*a shoot*] surculus (noun m. 2); **sprouting again** repullulans (part. B)
- spuma** (noun f. 1) froth, scum; **spumeus, spumous** (both adj. A) foaming, frothy
- spur** brachyblastus (noun m. 2), calcar (noun n. 3) [see p. 00], cornu (noun n. 4) [see p. 00]; **spurred** calcaratus (adj. A); **spur-like** calcariformis (adj. B)
- squama** (noun f. 1) scale; **squamatus, squamosus** (both adj. A) scaly; **squamiformis** (adj. B) shaped like a scale; **squamulosus** (adj. A) minutely scaly; **squamula** (noun f. 1) *in grasses* lodicule, *in lichens* small lobe of thallus; **squamella, squamellula** (both noun f. 1) *in grasses* lodicule, *in daisies* subdivision of pappus
- square** quadratus (adj. A), *also* (part. A) = **squared**
- squarrosus** (adj. A) squarrose
- stachy-, stachyo-, -stachys** (noun f. 3, stem *stachyd-*), **-stachyus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) relating to a spike
- stagma** (noun n. 3, in Gk comp.) nectary
- stagnant** stagnans (part. B), iners (adj. B) [see p. 00]
- stagnum** (noun n. 2) pond; **stagnalis, stagnatalis** (both adj. B) belonging to ponds, growing in standing water
- stain** labes (noun f. 3); **stained** [*by dyeing*] coloratus (adj. A), fucatus, imbutus, tinctus (all part. A), [*by soiling*] foedatus, inquinatus (both part. A)
- stalagmospore** stalagmospora (noun f. 1)
- stalk** [*of leaf*] petiolus (noun m. 2), [*of frond or agaric*] stipes (noun m. 3) [see p. 00], [*of inflorescence*] pedunculus (noun m. 2), [*of flower*] pedicellus (noun m. 2), [*of moss capsule*] seta (noun f. 1); **stalkless** sessilis (adj. B), apodus (adj. A)
- stamen** stamen (noun n. 3); **stamens** [*as a group*] androecium (noun n. 2); **without stamens** anandrus (adj. A); **stamens and pistil together**

- genitalia (noun n. 2, pl.); **within the stamens** intrastaminalis (adj. B); **relating to filament** (in Gk comp.) -nema (noun n. 3); **-stamened** (in Lat. comp.) -stamineus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -andrus (adj. A), -stemon (noun n. 3, stem *stemon-*)
- staminalis, staminaris, staminealis** (all adj. B), **stamineus** (adj. A) staminal; **staminatus** (adj. A) having stamens, staminate; **staminifer** (adj. A) stamen-bearing
- staminode** staminodium (noun n. 2)
- staminosus** (adj. A) having very prominent stamens
- standard (petal)** vexillum (noun n. 2)
- standing** sistens (part. B); **standing out** extans, prominens (both part. B)
- stans** (part. B) standing upright
- star** astrum (noun n. 2), stella (noun f. 1)
- starch** amyllum (noun n. 2); **starch-like** amyloideus (adj. A); **starchy** amylaceus (adj. A), farinaceus (adj. A); **not starchy** inamyloideus (adj. A)
- starry** stellatus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) astero-, astro-
- starwort** aster (noun m. 3)
- state** [*position, condition*] status (noun m. 4)
- statim** (adv.) immediately, at once
- stationary** sedentarius (adj. A)
- statura** (noun f. 1) stature, size
- status** (noun m. 4) condition; **in statu vivo** in a living state
- stauros** stauros (noun m. 2)
- staying** [*remaining*] manens (part. B)
- steel grey** chalybeus (adj. A)
- steep** abscissus (part. A), devexus (adj. A)
- steg-, stegan-** (in Gk comp.) roof-, roofed
- stela, -stele** (noun f. 1, in Gk comp.) column
- stella** (noun f. 1) star; **stellaris** (adj. B), **stellatus** (adj. A) stellate; **stellatim** (adv.) stellately; **stellinervis** (adj. B) stellately nerved
- stellate** astero-, astro- (in Gk comp.)
- stem** caulis (noun m. 3); **pertaining to the stem** caulinus (adj. A); **stem-clasping** amplexicaulis (adj. B); **stemless** acaulescens, acaulis (both adj. B); **-stemmed** (in Gk & Lat. comp.) -caulis (adj. B)

- stemma** (noun n. 3, in Gk comp.) garland, wreath
- stemon** (noun n. 3, in Gk comp., stem *stemon-*) -stamen
- steppe** *steppa* (noun f. 1)
- stercus** (noun n. 3) dung; **stercorarius** (adj. A) pertaining to dung; **sterc-**, **sterc-** (in Lat. comp.) pertaining to dung; **stercoreus** (adj. A) stinking like dung
- stereid** *stereida* (noun f. 1)
- sterigma** *sterigma* (noun n. 3)
- sterile** *sterilis* (adj. B); **sterility** *sterilitas* (noun f. 3); **sterilised** *sterilifactus*, *sterilisatus* (both adj. A)
- sternum** (noun n. 2) *in diatoms*, central area of raphe
- stichid** *stichidium* (noun n. 2)
- stichobasidium** *stichobasidium* (noun n. 2)
- stichus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) in a row *or* line
- sticky** *glutinosus*, *viscidus* (both adj. A)
- stictus** (adj. A) dotted; **stict-**, **sticto-** (in Gk comp.) spotted, dotted
- stiff** *rigidus* (adj. A), *rigens* (part. B); **becoming stiff** *rigescens* (part. B)
- stigma** (noun n. 3) stigma, eye-spot [see p. 00]; **stigmaticus** (adj. A) stigmatic; **stigmatifer** (adj. A) stigma-bearing; **stigmatiformis** (adj. B), **stigmatoideus** (adj. A) shaped *or* appearing like a stigma; **stigmatosus** (adj. A) having a well-developed *or* conspicuous stigma
- stigmatocyst** *stigmatocysta* (noun f. 1)
- stigmatopod** *stigmatopodium* (noun n. 2)
- stilbeus** (adj. A), **stilbiformis** (adj. B), **stilboideus** (adj. A) stilboid
- still** *quietus*, *tranquillus* (both adj. A)
- stilt-like** *gralliformis* (adj. B)
- stilt root** *radix* (noun f. 3) *gralliformis* (adj. B) (decl. together)
- stimulus** (noun m. 2) sting; **stimulans** (part. B) stinging; **stimulosus** (adj. A) having many stings
- sting** *stimulus* (noun m. 2); **stinging** *stimulans*, *urens* (both part. B); **without stings** *inermis* (adj. B)
- stinking** *foetens* (adj. B), *foetidus* (adj. A), [*rotten*] *putidus* (adj. A), [*like dung*] *stercoreus* (adj. A)
- stipatus** (part. A) crowded [*surrounded*]
- stipe** *stipes* (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **stipitatus** (adj. A) stipitate

- stipella** (noun f. 1) stipel; **stipellatus** (adj. A) having stipels
- stipitipellis** (noun f. 3) stipitipellis
- stipule** stipula (noun f. 1); **stipularis** (adj. A), **stipulaceus** (adj. A) stipulaceous *or* of the stipules; **stipulaneus** (adj. A) taking the place of stipules; **stipulifer** (adj. A) stipule-bearing; **stipuliformis** (adj. B) shaped like a stipule
- stipulode** stipulodium (noun n. 2)
- stirps** (noun f. 3) plant, stock, race
- stolo** (noun m. 3) runner, stolon; **stoloniformis** (adj. B) resembling a stolon; **stoloniformiter** (adv.) like a stolon
- stoma, stomate** stoma (noun n. 3); **stomata-bearing** stomatophorus (adj. A)
- stomatopodium** (noun n. 2) stomatopodium
- stomium** (noun n. 2) stomium
- stone** [*of a drupe*] putamen (noun n. 3)
- stone** [*rock*] lapis (noun m. 3), saxum (noun n. 2); **stony** lapidosus, saxosus (both adj. A); **stone-hard, made of stone** lapideus (adj. A); **becoming stone-hard** lapidescens (part. B); **small stone** lapidulus (noun m. 2); **stony ground** saxa (noun n. 2, pl.) **stone-** (in Gk comp.) lith-, litho-. *See also rock*
- stopper** obturamentum (noun n. 2)
- stopping** desinens (part. B)
- stored** conditus (part. A)
- stout** [*thick*] crassus (adj. A), [*strong*] validus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) pachy-
- straggling** effusus (part. A)
- straight** rectus, strictus (both adj. A); **fairly straight** rectiusculus (adj. A); **going straight** directus (part. A); **straight-nerved** rectinervis (adj. B), rectinervius (adj. A); **straight** (in Lat. comp.) recti-, (in Gk comp.) orth-, ortho-
- straightforward** prorsus (adj. A)
- strait** fretum (noun n. 2), fretus (noun m. 4)
- stramineus** (adj. A) straw-coloured
- strand** [*shoreline*] littus (noun n. 3), [*thread*] filum (noun n. 2)
- strange** [*unusual*] insuetus (adj. A), [*wonderful*] mirus (adj. A), [*foreign*] peregrinus (adj. A)
- strap-shaped** ligulatus, loratus (both adj. A), loriformis (adj. B); (in Gk comp.) himanto-

- stratum** (noun n. 2) layer; **stratosus** (adj. A) in distinct layers; **-stratus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -layered
- straw-coloured** stramineus (adj. A)
- streak** [*e.g. of colour*] virga (noun f. 1); **streaked** virgatus (adj. A); **having very fine, irregular streaks** aciculatus (adj. A)
- stream** flumen (noun n. 3), rivulus (noun m. 2); **referring to streams** fluminalis (adj. B), flumineus (adj. A)
- stretched out** porrectus (part. A)
- stria** (noun f. 1) streak, groove, line, *in cryptogams* rib; **striatus** (adj. A) striate, fluted; **not striate** estriatus (adj. A)
- strictura** (noun f. 1) constriction
- strictus** (adj. A) straight, upright
- striga** (noun f. 1) striga [*a short, stiff hair*]; **strigosus** (adj. A) strigose
- striking** conspicuus (adj. A)
- striola** (noun f. 1) fine linear marking; **striolatus** (adj. A) striolate
- stripe** [*of colour*] virga (noun f. 1); **striped** [*with longitudinal lines, banded*] vittatus (adj. A), [*fasciated*] fasciatus (adj. A), [*with raised lines*] grammatus (adj. A); **irregularly striped** marmoratus (adj. A)
- stripped** denudatus (part. A)
- strobilus** (noun m. 2) cone; **strobiliformis** (adj. B), **strobilaceus** (adj. A), **strobilinus** (adj. A) cone-like, strobilaceous
- stroma** (noun n. 3) stroma; **-stromaticus** (adj. A, in Gk comp.) -layered
- strobuliformis** (adj. B) twisted in a long cone
- strong** fortis (adj. B), validus (adj. A); **strongly** fortiter, valde (both adv.)
- strophiole** strophiolium (noun n. 2)
- structure** structura (noun f. 1)
- struma** (noun f. 1) a swelling, tumour; **strumosus** (adj. A) having a swelling; **strumulosus** (adj. A) having a small swelling
- strut** tigillum (noun n. 2)
- stuffed** farctus (part. A), fertilis (adj. B)
- stuppeus, stupposus** (both adj. A) tow-like, covered with tow-like hairs
- style** stylus (noun m. 2) *q.v.*
- styliductus** (noun m. 3) styler canal
- stylodium** (noun n. 2) stylodium
- stylogonidium** (noun n. 2) stylogonidium

**stylopodium** (noun n. 2) stylopod

**stylospore** stylospora (noun f. 1)

**stylostegium** (noun n. 2) stylostegium

**stylus** (noun m. 2) style; **stylatus** (adj. A) having a style; **stylaris** (adj. B) relating to a style; **stylifer** (adj. A) bearing a style; **styliformis** (adj. B) shaped like a style; **stylinus** (adj. A) belonging to a style; **systylus** (adj. A) having several styles united into one organ; **astylus** (adj. A) without a style

**suaveolens** (adj. B) fragrant, sweetly scented; **suavis** (adj. B) pleasant, sweet

**sub** (prep.) under, below: with Ablative to indicate *position* below, beneath, or time *at which* something happens; with Accusative to indicate *action* below or towards something or *approaching* the time when something happens

**sub-** (pref. in Lat. comp. before vowels, most consonants) almost, somewhat; before *c* use **suc-**, before *f* use **suf-**, before *g* use **sug-**

**subaestualis** (adj. B) subtidal

**subductus** (part. A) dredged, pulled up

**subepilithicus** (adj. A) [*of a crustose lichen*] midway between epilithic and endolithic

**suber** (noun n. 3) cork; **subereus**, **suberosus** (both adj. A) corky [*but note next entry*]

**sub-erosus** (adj. A) somewhat erose

**subfamily** subfamilia (noun f. 1); **to form name of a subfamily** add *-oideae* (Nominative f. pl., adj. A) to stem of name of type genus

**subgenus** subgenus (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]

**subgleba** (noun f. 1) subgleba, tissue that supports the gleba

**subhymenium** (noun n. 2) subhymenium, generative tissue subtending the hymenium

**subicle** subiculum (noun n. 2)

**subinde** (adv.) occasionally or immediately after

**subito** (adv.) suddenly

**subjectus** (part. A) placed below, lying beneath

**sub lente** (adv. phr.) under a lens

**sublittoralis** (adj. B) below the littoral zone

**submarinus** (adj. A) under the sea

**submerged** demersus, immersus, submersus (all part. A)



- submuriformis** (adj. B) submuriform
- suborder** subordo (noun m. 3); **to form name of a suborder** add *-ales*  
(Nominative f. pl., adj. B) to stem of name of type family
- subpseudopodium** (noun n. 2) fine extension on leading edge of  
pseudopodium
- subsection** subsectio (noun f. 3)
- subseries** subseries (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]
- subsidiarius** (adj. A) subsidiary
- subspecies** subspecies (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]
- substance** substantia (noun f. 1), contextus (noun m. 4), [*flesh*] caro  
(noun f. 3) [see p. 00]
- substrate** substratum (noun n. 2)
- subtended** subtentus, suffultus (both part. A)
- subter** (adv.) below, underneath; *also* (prep. + Accusative or Ablative) below,  
beneath
- subterraneus** (adj. A) below-ground, underground
- subtidal** subaestualis (adj. B)
- subtilis** (adj. B) delicate, fine; **subtiliter** (adv.) finely, delicately
- subtracted** demptus (part. A)
- subtribe** subtribus (noun f. 4); **to form name of a subtribe** add *-inae* (suff.,  
adj. A, Nominative f. pl.) to stem of name of type genus
- subtus** (adv.) below, beneath
- subula** (noun f. 1) fine sharp point; **subulatus** (adj. A), **subuliformis** (adj. B)  
subulate, awl-shaped; **subuli-** (in Lat. comp.) subulate-
- subvexus** (adj. A) sloping upwards
- successive** successivus (adj. A); **successively** successive, deinceps, invicem  
(all adv.)
- succidus** (adj. A) juicy
- succineus** (adj. A) amber-coloured
- succisus** (part. A) abruptly broken off
- succosus** (adj. A) full of juice
- succubus** (adj. A) succubous
- succulent** carnosus, succulentus (both adj. A)
- succus** (noun m. 2) sap, juice; **succidus**, **succosus** (both adj. A) juicy
- sucker** surculus (noun m. 2)

- suddenly** subito, abrupte (both adv.)
- sufflatus** (part. A) blown out, inflated
- suffrutex** (noun m. 3) undershrub [see p. 00]; **suffrutescens** (adj. B) slightly woody; **sufruticosus** (adj. A) somewhat woody
- suffultus** (part. A) subtended, supported
- suffusus** (part. A) tinged
- sugar** saccharum (noun n. 2); **sugary** saccharinus (adj. A); **sugary, appearing sugar-coated** saccharatus (adj. A); **sugar-bearing** saccharifer (adj. B)
- sugillatus** (part. A) bruised
- sui** (pron.) of itself
- suitable** aptus (part. A), idoneus (adj. A)
- sulcus** (noun m. 2) furrow, groove; **sulcatus** (part. A) furrowed, grooved; **sulcinervis** (adj. B), **sulcinervius** (adj. A) with nerves in grooves
- sulphur yellow** sulphureus (adj. A)
- summary** breviarium (noun n. 2)
- summer** aestas (noun f. 3); **pertaining to summer** aestivalis (adj. B), aestivus (adj. A), solstitialis (adj. B)
- summopere** (adv.) exceedingly
- summum** (noun n. 2) the top; **summus** (adj. A) uppermost, highest
- sun** sol (noun m. 3); **growing in the sun** apricus (adj. A); **sun-loving** photophilus (adj. A); **an open, sunny place** apricum (noun n. 2); **sun-** (in Gk comp.) helio-
- sunken** [*pressed down*] depressus, [*pressed into*] impressus (part. A), [*sunken*] immersus (part. A), [*buried*] infossus (part. A); (in Lat. comp.) impressi-
- super** (prep. + Accusative, rarely Ablative) over [*extending over*]; also pref. in Lat. comp.
- superatus** (part. A) over-topped; **superans** (part. B) over-topping
- superaxillaris, supra-axillaris** (both adj. B) placed above an axil
- superficialis** (adj. B) occurring on upper surface; **superficies** (noun f. 5) upper surface [see p. 00]
- superficiaris** (adj. B) on the surface
- superimpositus** (part. A) overlapping, placed upon
- superior** (adj. compar.) higher, upper, former
- superior** [*e.g. ovary*] superus (adj. A)
- superjectus** (part. A) lying above

- superne** (adv.) from above, upwards  
**superpendens** (part. B) overhanging  
**superpositus** (part. A) overlapping, placed upon  
**superus** (ad. A) upper, higher  
**supervolute** supervolutivus (adj. A)  
**supinus** (adj. A) bent backwards, prostrate  
**suppetens** (part. B) available, at hand  
**support** ops (noun f. 3) [*aid*]; **supporting** fulciens, fulcrans, sistens, sustinens (all part. B); **supported** fulcratus, fultus, suffultus (all part. A).  
**supra** (prep. + Accusative, adv.) above, over; also pref. in Lat. comp.  
**supraterraneus** (adj. A) above-ground  
**supremus** (adj. A) highest  
**sur-** (in Lat. comp.) almost, somewhat  
**surculus** (noun m. 2) shoot, sucker  
**surface** pagina (noun f. 1); **on the surface** superficialis (adj. B); **upper surface** superficies (noun f. 5) [see p. 00]; **occurring on upper surface** superficialis (adj. B)  
**surgens** (part. B) arising  
**surrounded** circumcinctus, circumnexus (both part. A);  
**surrounding** ambiens, cingens (both part. B)  
**sursum** (adv.) upwards  
**survey** conspectus (noun m. 4)  
**suspended** dependens (part. B), suspensus (part. A)  
**sustinens** (part. B) supporting, upholding  
**suture** sutura (noun f. 1); **sutural** suturalis (adj. B)  
**suus** (adj. A, possess. pron.) its own, their  
**swamp** palus (noun f. 3); **swampy** palustris (adj. B)  
**sward** caespes (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]  
**sweet** dulcis, suavis (both adj. B); (in Gk comp.) hedy-; **sweet-tasting** or-scented (in Gk comp.) glyco-  
**swelling** tumor (noun m. 3); **swelling up** intumescens, tumescens, tumens (all part. B)  
**swimming** fluitans (part. B)  
**swing, able to** oscillatorius (adj. A); **swinging** oscillans (part. B); **swinging to and fro** vacillans (part. B)

- swollen** tumidus (adj. A); **swollen with** praegnans (adj. B); **swollen** (in Gk comp.) onco-, oedo-
- sword-shaped** ensatus, gladius (both adj. A), ensiformis (adj. B);  
**sword-leaved** ensifolius (adj. A); **sword-like** xiphoideus, (in Gk comp.) xiph-, xipho-
- sy-** (pref. in Gk comp. before *s*) with, together
- syconium** syconium (noun n. 2)
- syl-** (pref. in Gk comp. before *l*) with, together
- sylva, silva** (noun f. 1) forest, wood; **sylvaticus** (adj. A), **sylvestris** (adj. B) pertaining to forest *or* wood; **sylvicola** (noun c. 1) inhabitant of forest *or* wood
- sym-** (pref. in Gk comp. before *b*, *m* and *p*) with, together
- symbiont** symbion (noun m. 3; stem-*onti*-)
- symbiosis** (noun f. 3) symbiosis
- symmetrical** symmetricus (adj. A); **not symmetrical** asymmetricus (adj. A)
- sympatric** sympatricus (adj. A)
- sympetalus** (adj. A) gamopetalous
- sympodial** sympodialis (adj. B)
- sympodule** sympodula (noun f. 1)
- syn-, sys-** (pref. in Gk comp. before *r*) with, together; *see also* **sy-**, **syl-**, **sym-**
- synandrium** synandrium (noun n. 2)
- synangium** synangium (noun n. 2)
- synantherus, synanthericus** (both adj. A) with anthers cohering in a ring *or* tube
- synanthus, synanthius** (both adj. A) produced at same time as flowers
- syncarp** syncarpium (noun n. 2); **syncarpous** syncarpus (adj. A)
- syngenesus** (adj. A) with anthers united in a ring *or* tube
- synnema** synnema (noun n. 3)
- synoecium** synoecium (noun n. 2)
- synoicus** (adj. A) synoicous
- synonym** synonymum (noun n. 2); **synonymy** synonymia (noun f. 1)
- syntype** syntypus (noun m. 2)
- sys-** (pref. in Gk comp. before *s*) with, together
- systema** (noun n. 3) system, a whole with several parts
- systylus** (adj. A) having several styles united into one organ

## T

**tabacinus** (adj. A) pale brown

**tabescens** (part. B) wasting away; **tabidus** (part. A) wasted away, stunted,  
hence aborted

**tabula** (noun f. 1) plate, illustration

**tabularis** (adj. B) flattened horizontally

**tabulatus** (adj. A) having layers *or* transverse septa

**tactilis** (adj. B) sensitive to touch

**taenia** (noun f. 1) ribbon, band; **taeniatum** (adj. A), **taeniformis** (adj. B)  
band-shaped; **taenianus** (adj. A) long and flattened [*like a tapeworm*];  
**taeni-**, **taenio-** (in Gk and Lat. comp.) band-like, strap-shaped

**tail** cauda (noun f. 1); **with a tail** caudatus (adj. A); **tail-**, **-tailed** (in Gk.  
comp.) uro-, -urus (adj. A)

**taken away from** adeptus, demptus (both part. A); **taken out of** excerptus  
(part. A); **taking up** [*assimilating*] assumens (part. B)

**tall** altus, celsus, elatus, excelsus, praelongus (all adj. A); **very tall** procerus  
(adj. A)

**tam** (adv.) so far, equally

**tamen** (adv.) nevertheless

**tandem** (adv.) eventually, at length, finally

**tangential** tangentialis (adj. B)

**tangerinus** (adj. A) orange

**tangled** implexus, implicatus, implicitus (all part. A)

**tanquam** (adv.) much as

**tantum** (adv.) only, merely

**tantus quantus** (both adj. A, decl. together) as great as

**tapering** [*narrowed*] angustatus (part. A) [see p. 00], [*drawn together*]  
contractus (part. A), [*growing less*] decrescens (part. B), deminutus  
(part. A), [*lengthened*] protractus (part. A)

**tap-root** radix (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]

**tardus** (adj. A) slow; **tarde** (adv.) slowly

**taste** gustus (noun m. 4), sapor (noun m. 3); **tasteless** insipidus (adj. A)

**tatareus** (adj. A) with thick, rough, crumbling surface

- tawny** fulvus, rarus (both adj. A); **becoming tawny** fulvescens (part. B);  
**somewhat tawny** fulvidus (adj. A); **tawny-** (in Lat. comp.) fulvi-, fulvo-
- taxon** taxon (noun n. 2)
- tearing** findens (part. B)
- tear-shaped** lacrimiformis (adj. B), dacryoideus (adj. A)
- tectum** (noun n. 2) roof
- tectus** (part. A) concealed, hidden, covered
- tegens** (part. B) covering, concealing
- teges** (noun f. 3) mat
- tegmen** (noun n. 3), **tegumentum** (noun n. 2) covering, *also* glume [*in grasses*]
- tegula** (noun f. 1) phyllary, involucral scale
- tegumen** (noun n. 3) [*outer*] seed coat
- tegumentum** (noun n. 2) indusium
- tela** (noun f. 1) web, mycelium
- teleianthus** (adj. A) hermaphrodite
- teleutospore** teleutospora (noun f. 1)
- teliospore** teliospora (noun f. 1)
- telium** telium (noun n. 2)
- telmat-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to damp *or* wet sites
- temere, temeriter** (both adv.) at random
- temperate** temperatus (part. A)
- tempus** (noun n. 3) time; **tempore** (noun. n. 3, Ablative sing. + Genitive) during [*at the time of*]
- ten** decem (num. adj. indecl.); **ten each** deni (num. distr. adj. pl.); **ten times, tenfold** deciens, decies (num. adv.); **ten-** (in Lat. comp.) decem-, (in Gk comp.) deca-
- tenaculum** (noun n. 2) tenacle, holdfast
- tenax** (adj. B) holding fast, tough [see p. 00]
- tendril** capreolus, cirrus (both noun m. 2); **having tendrils** cirratus, cirrosus (both adj. A); **bearing tendril(s)** cirrifer (adj. A); **tendril-like** cirriformis (adj. B)
- tenebrosus** (adj. A) dark, gloomy
- tenellus** (adj. A) delicate
- tenens** (part. B) holding
- tentaculum** (noun n. 2) sensitive glandular hair

- tenth** decimus (ord. num., adj. A)
- tenuis** (adj. B) delicate, fine, slender; **tenuitas** (noun f. 3) thinness; **tenuiter** (adv.) finely, lightly; **tenui-** (in Lat. comp.) slender, thin
- tenus** (prep. + Ablative) as far as
- tepal** tepalum (noun n. 2); **tepaline** tepalinus (adj. A)
- tephro-** (in Gk comp.) grey-
- ter** (num. adv.) three times, trebly
- terebrans** (part. B) drilling, spiralling
- teres** (adj. B) terete; **tereti-** (in Lat. comp.) terete-
- tergeminatus, tergeminus** (both adj. A) tergeminate
- terminal** terminalis (adj. B), apicalis (adj. B); **terminated** terminatus (part. A); **terminating** terminans (part. B); **having terminal flowers** acranthus (adj. A); **having terminal fruit** acrocarpus (adj. A)
- ternarius** (adj. A) consisting of threes; **ternatus** (adj. A) ternate; **ternatopinnatus** (adj. A) ternately pinnate; **terni** (num. distr. adj. pl.) three each; **terni-** (in Lat. comp.) three-
- terra** (noun f. 1) earth, land, soil; **terrestris** (adj. B) of the land
- terreus** (adj. A) earth-coloured [*brownish*]
- tertiary** tertiarus (adj. A)
- tertius** (ord. num., adj. A) third
- tessellatus** (adj. A) chequered, tessellate
- tessularis** (adj. B) more or less cubical
- testa** (noun f. 1) [*outer*] seed coat
- testaceus** (adj. A) brick-red
- teste** (prep.) according to
- testiculatus** (adj. A) testiculate
- tetra-** (in Gk comp.) four-; **tetradidymus** (adj. A) having four pairs; **tetradynamus** (adj. A) tetradynamous; **tetradymus** (adj. A) having four cells; **tetraploideus** (adj. A) tetraploid
- tetrad** tetras (noun f. 3)
- tetrahedral** tetraedricus, tetraedrus (both adj. A), tetrahedralis (adj. B)
- tetrasporangium** (noun n. 2) tetrasporangium; **tetraspore** tetraspora (noun f. 1); **tetrasporangial** tetrasporangialis (adj. B)
- tetraspore** tetraspora (noun f. 1)
- tetrasporophyton, tetrasporophytum** (both noun n. 2) tetrasporophyte

**textilis** (adj. B) woven

**textura** (noun f. 1) tissue

**texture** consistentia (noun f. 1)

**thalamium** thalamium (noun n. 2)

**thalamus** (noun m. 2) receptacle, torus; **thalamiflorus** (adj. A) thalamifloral

**thalassicus** (adj. A) sea-green

**thalloconidium** (noun n. 2) thalloconidium

**thallospore** thallospora (noun f. 1)

**thallus** (noun m. 2) thallus; **thalliformis** (adj. B) like a thallus; **thallinus** (adj. A), **thallodialis** (adj. B), **thallodicus** (adj. A) thalline; **thallodes**, **thalloides** (both adj. B) like a thallus

**than** quam (adv.)

**that** ut (conj.) [*used with subjunctive verb*]

**the** there is no equivalent in Latin; it's included within a noun

**theca** theca (noun f. 1)

**-theca** (noun f. 1, in Gk comp.) -cover,-case

**thecatus** (adj. A) thecate, armoured

**thecium** thecium (noun n. 2)

**their** suus (possess. pron.)

**thele-** (in Gk comp.) nipple-

**thely-** (in Gk comp.) female

**then** dein, deinde, ibi, tum (all adv.)

**thence** illinc, inde (both adv.)

**there** ibi, illic (both adv.)

**thereafter** dein, deinde (adv.)

**therefore** ergo, ideo, igitur, itaque (all adv.)

**thermae** (noun f. 1, pl.) warm *or* hot springs; **thermalis** (adj. B) relating to warm water

**thick** crassus (adj. A), [*closely packed*] densus (adj. A); **thickened** concretus, incrassatus, inspissatus (all part. A); **thickly** crasse (adv.); **moderately thick** crassiusculus (adj. A); **thickening** spissescens (part. B); **thick-skinned** pachydermus, pachydermicus (both adj. A); **thick-** (in Gk comp.) pachy-

**thicket** dumetum (noun n. 2)

**thickness** crassities (noun f. 5)



- thick-skinned** pachydermus, pachydermicus (both adj. A)
- thin** [*slender*] gracilis, tenuis (both adj. B), [*diluted*] dilutus (part. A), [*meagre*] exilis (adj. B); **thinness** tenuitas (noun f. 3); **very thin** pertenuis (adj. B); **thinly** tenuiter, rare (both adv.); **thin** (in Lat. comp.) tenui-, (in Gk comp.) ischno-, lept-, lepto-
- thinium** (noun n. 2) dune
- third** tertius (ord. num., adj. A), triens (noun m. 3)
- this** hic, haec, hoc (dem. pron.) [see p. 00]
- tholus** (noun m. 2) dome; **tholiformis** (adj. B) dome-shaped
- thorn** spina (noun f. 1); **thorny** spinosus (adj. A); **with copious thorns** senticosus (adj. A); **thorn-bush** dumus (noun m. 2); **thorn scrub** dumetum (noun n. 2)
- though** quamquam (conj.)
- thread** filum (noun n. 2); **thread-like** filiformis (adj. B); **relating to threads** (in Lat. comp.) fili-, (in Gk comp.) -nema (noun n. 3), nemato-
- three** tres, tres, tria (num. adj. B) [see p. 00]
- three-** (in Lat. & Gk comp.) tri-; **consisting of threes** ternarius (adj. A); **three each** terni (num. distr. adj. pl.); **three-quarters** dodrans (noun m. 3); **three times** ter (num. adv.)
- thrix** (noun f. 3, in Gk comp.) hair
- throat** [*botanical Lat.*] faux (noun f. 3, sing.), [*classical Lat.*] fauces (noun f. 3, pl.)
- through** per (prep. + Accusative); **through** (pref. in Lat. comp.) per-, (pref. in Gk comp.) dia-
- throughout** omnino, penitus, ubique (all adv.)
- thus** ita, sic (both adv.)
- thylacoid** thylacoides (noun f. 3)
- thyriothecium** thyriothecium (noun n. 2)
- thyrse** thyrsus (noun m. 2); **thyrse-like** thyrsiformis (adj. B), thyrsoides (adj. A)
- thysano-** (in Gk comp.) fringe-
- tide** aestus (noun m. 4); **tidal** aestualis (adj. B)
- tight** [*drawn together*] arctus, artus (both adj. A), astrictus (part. A); **tightly** arcte, arte (both adv.)
- tigillatus** (adj. A) tigillate

**tigillum** [*strut*] tigillum (noun n. 2)

**tigrinus** (adj. A) tiger-like, spotted

**tiller** telgor (noun f. 3)

**time** tempus (noun n. 3); **a long time** diu (adv.); **at any time** aliquando (adv.); **at any one time** unquam (adv.); **at the same time** coaetaneus (adj. A), simul (adv.), una (adv.); **for a short time** parumper, paulisper (both adv.)

**times** use adv. ending-plo *or*-ies; **many times** multoties (adv.); **several times** compluriens, compluries, pluries (all adv.)

**tinctus** (part. A) stained, dyed, tinged

**tinged** imbutus, suffusus, tinctus (all part. A); **tingeing** tingens (part. B)

**tinsel** see **mastigonema**

**tiny** minutus (adj. A)

**tip** apex (noun m. 3)

**tissue** contextus (noun m. 4), textura (noun f. 1)

**to** ad (prep. + Accusative), [*towards*] versus (prep. + Accusative)

**tofus** (noun m. 2) tufa

**together** [*at the same time*] simul, una (adv.), [*together with*] cum (prep. + Ablative); **melled together** conflatus (part. A); **together with** hama-, sy-, syl-, sym-, syn-, sys- (all pref. in Gk comp.)

**tomentum** tomentum (noun n. 2); **tomentose** tomentosus (adj. A); **minutely tomentose** tomentellus, tomentulosus (both adj. A)

**tongue** lingua (noun f. 1); **tongue-shaped** linguiformis (adj. B), lingulatus (adj. A); **-tongued** (in Lat. comp.) -linguis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) -glossus (adj. A)

**tonsus** (part. A) shaven [*become glabrous*]

**tooth** dens (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **toothed** dentatus (adj. A); **tooth-** (in Lat. comp.) denti-, (in Gk comp.) odon-, odont-, odonto-; **-tooth, toothed** (in Lat. comp.) -dens (noun m. 3), -dentatus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) -odon (noun m. 3, stem *odont-*), -odontus (adj. A); **without teeth** edentatus, edentulus (both adj. A)

**top** vertex (noun m. 3)

**tophaceus** (adj. A) tufa-like

**tophulus** tophulus (noun m. 2)

**topmost** summus (adj. A)

**topotype** topotypus (noun m. 2)

- top-shaped** turbinatus (adj. A)  
**torn** laceratus, lacerus (both part. A); **torn apart** divulsus (part. A)  
**tornatus** (part. A) rounded off  
**torosus** (adj. A) torose  
**torquatus** (adj. A) having a twisted collar  
**torrent** amnis, torrens (both noun m. 3)  
**torsivus** (adj. A) spirally twisted  
**tortilis** (adj. B) liable to twist; **tortuosus** (adj. A) complex *or* bent in various directions; **tortus** (part. A) twisted; **torti-** (in Lat. comp.) twisted  
**torulosus** (adj. A) torulose  
**torus** thalamus, torus (both noun m. 2)  
**tot** (indecl. adj.) so many  
**totus** (adj. A) all, whole  
**touch** tactus (noun m. 4); **touching** contiguus (adj. A), contingens (part. B);  
**touch, sensitive to** tactilis (adj. B)  
**tough** tenax (adj. B) [see p. 00]  
**tow-like** stuppeus, stupposus (both adj. A)  
**towards** versus (prep. + Accusative)  
**tower-shaped** turriformis (adj. B)  
**toxicarius** (adj. A) poisonous  
**trabecula** trabecula (noun f. 1); **trabeculate** trabeculatus (adj. A);  
**trabeculose** trabeculosus (adj. A)  
**trace** vestigium (noun n. 2)  
**trachy-** (in Gk comp.) rough  
**trahens** (part. B) dragging, trailing  
**trailing** [*creeping*] serpens (part. B)  
**trailing** [*dragging*] trahens (part. B)  
**trama** trama (noun f. 1)  
**tranquillus** (adj. A) calm, still  
**trans** (prep. + Accusative) across; also pref. in Lat. comp.  
**transapical** pervalvaris (adj. A)  
**transection** transectio (noun f. 3)  
**transeptatus** (adj. A) transeptate  
**transferred** translatus (part. A)

- transformatus, transmutatus** (both part. A) changed, altered
- transiens** (part. B) merging, passing into
- transition** transitus (noun m. 4)
- transitivus** (adj. A) passing over; **transitorius** (adj. A) intermediate [*passing from one to another*]; **transitus** (noun m. 4) transition
- translatus** (part. A) transferred
- translucens** (part. B), **translucidus** (adj. A) translucent, clear
- transmitted** transmissus (part. A)
- transmutatus** (part. A) changed
- transparent** diaphanus, hyalinus, lucidus, pellucidus, translucidus (all adj. A), translucens (part. B)
- transtrum** (noun n. 2) bar, cross-beam
- transverse** transversalis (adj. B), transversarius (adj. A), transversus (adj. A); **transversely** transverse, transversim, transversaliter (all adv.)
- trap** [e.g. in Utricularia] vesica (noun f. 1), [*a snare, noose*] laqueus (noun m. 2)
- trapezialis** (adj. B), **trapeziformis** (adj. B), **trapezoideus** (adj. A) trapeziform
- trapping** illaquens (part. B)
- traversing** peragrans (part. B)
- treble** triplus (adj. A); **trebly** ter, tripliciter (both adv.)
- tree** arbor (noun f. 3); **tree** (in Gk comp.) dendr-, dendro-, -dendron; **becoming tree-like** arborescens (part. B); **tree-like** arboreus, dendromorphus (both adj. A), [*of hairs*] dendriticus, dendroideus (both adj. A); **living in a tree** arboricola (adj. A); **a small tree** arbuscula (noun f. 1)
- trellis-like** [*in form*] cancellatus, clathratus (both adj. A)
- trembling** tremulus (adj. A)
- tremelloideus, tremellosus** (both adj. A) jelly-like, gelatinous
- tremulus** (adj. A) trembling
- tres, tres, tria** (num. adj. B) three [see p. 00]
- tri-** (in Lat. & Gk comp.) three-
- triandrus** (adj. A) triandrous
- triangle** triangulum (noun n. 2); **triangular** triangularis (adj. B), triangulatus, triangulus, deltatus (all adj. A); **triangular in cross-section** [*triquetrous*] triqueter (adj. A)

- tribe** *tribus* (noun f. 4); **to form name of a tribe** add suff. *-eae* (Nominative pl. f., adj. A) to stem of name of type genus; **to form name of a subtribe** add *-inae* (suff., adj. A, Nominative pl. f.) to stem of name of type genus
- tribuliformis** (adj. B) tribuliform
- trichoblast** *trichoblastus* (noun m. 2)
- trichocysta** (noun f. 1) trichocyst
- trichogyne** *trichogyne* (noun f. 3), *trichogyna* (noun f. 1)
- trichoideus** (adj. A) hair-like; **trich-**, **tricho-** (in Gk comp) hairy, hair-like
- tricholomoideus** (adj. A) *Tricholoma*-like
- trichome** *trichoma* (noun n. 3) [see p. 00]
- trichophore** *trichophorum* (noun n. 2)
- trichotomous** *trichotomus* (adj. A)
- triens** (noun m. 3) a third
- trifariam** (adv.), **trifarius** (adj. A) arranged in three ranks
- trigone** *trigona* (noun f. 1)
- trigonus** (adj. A) trigonous, having three angles with plane faces between
- trihilatus** (adj. A) with three apertures *or* pores
- trilete** *triletus* (adj. A)
- trimerus** (adj. A) trimerous
- trimiticus** (adj. A) trimitic
- trinacriformis** (adj. B) three-pronged
- triple** *triplex* (adj. B), *tripplus* (adj. A); **triply** *tripliciter* (adv.); **triple-** (in Lat. comp.) *tripli-*
- triplicato-** (in Lat. comp.) threefold
- triploideus** (adj. A) triploid
- triplostichus** (adj. A) in *or* having three rows
- triquetrous** *triqueter* (adj. A)
- tristichus** (adj. A) in *or* having three rows
- tristis** (adj. B) dull-coloured [*sad*]
- tritrus** (part. A) rubbed, bruised
- trochlearis**, **trochleiformis** (both adj. B) shaped like a pulley wheel
- trocho-** (in Gk comp.) wheel-like
- trombiformis** (adj. B) narrowly funnel-shaped
- tropaeolinus** (adj. A) nasturtium red

**tropical** tropicus (adj. A)

**trough-shaped** trullatus (adj. A), trulliformis (adj. B)

**trowel-shaped** alveiformis (adj. B)

**true** genuinus, verus (both adj. A); **truly** enim (conj.)

**trullatus** (adj. A), **trulliformis** (adj. B) trullate, angular-ovate

**trumpet-shaped** [*straight*] tubatus (adj. A), tubaeformis (adj. B); [*somewhat curved*] buccinatus, buccinatorius (both adj. A)

**truncatus** (part. A) truncate

**trunk** truncus (noun m. 2)

**tuba** (noun f. 1) trumpet [*conical*]; **tubatus** (adj. A), **tubaeformis** (adj. B) trumpet-shaped [*straight*]

**tube** tubus (noun m. 2), siphon (noun m. 3); **tubular** tubularis (adj. B), tubulosus (adj. A); **tube-like** tubiformis (adj. B); **having elongated tubes** siphoneus (adj. A); **relating to tube** (in Gk comp.) siphon-, siphono-, siphonius (adj. A)

**tuber** tuber (noun n. 3); **tuberans**, **tuberascens** (both part. B) becoming swollen *or* tuberous

**tuberculum** (noun n. 2) tubercle; **tubercularis** (adj. B) having tubercles; **tuberculatus** (adj. A) tuberculate; **tuberculiformis** (adj. B) tubercle-like

**tuberifer** (adj. A) tuber-bearing; **tuberosus** (adj. A) producing tubers *or* swollen into a tuber

**tuberoid** tuberoideum (noun n. 2)

**tubiformis** (adj. B) tube-like; **tubiflorus**, **tubuliflorus** (both adj. A) having tubular flowers

**tubularis** (adj. B), **tubulosus** (adj. A) tubular

**tubulus** (noun m. 2) tubule; **tubuliformis** (adj. B) like a tubule

**tubus** (noun m. 2) tube [*with parallel sides*]

**tufa** tofus (noun m. 2); **tufa-like** tofaceus (adj. A)

**tuft** caespes (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **little tuft** caespitulus (noun m. 2); **growing in tufts** caespitosus, cespitosus (both adj. A); **having a tuft of hairs** comosus (adj. A); **tuft of hairs** penicillum (noun n. 2); **shaped like a tuft of hairs** penicillatus (adj. A), penicilliformis (adj. B)

**tum** (adv.) then, at that time

**tumens** (part. B) swelling, swollen; **tumescens** (part. B) bulging, swelling

**tumidus** (adj. A) swollen

**tumor** (noun m. 3) swelling, tumour

**tumulus** (noun m. 2) mound [*of earth*]

**tunc** (adv.) then, immediately

**tundra** tundra (noun f. 1)

**tunic** (in Gk comp.) -chiton (noun m. 2)

**tunica** (noun f. 1) tunic; **tunicatus** (adj. A) tunicate *or* having a thin separable covering

**turbarium** (noun n. 2) peat-bog

**turbatus** (part. A) disturbed

**turbinatus** (adj. A) top-shaped, turbinate

**turf** caespes (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **turf-like** caespiticius (adj. A)

**turfosus** (adj. A) peaty; **turfosum** (noun n. 2) peaty moor; **turbarium** (noun n. 2) peat-bog

**turgidus** (adj. A) turgid, inflated

**turion** turio (noun m. 3)

**turma** (noun f. 1) group

**turn** anfractus (noun m. 4)

**turn, in** invicem (adv.)

**turned aside or downwards** deflectus, deflexus (both part. A); **turned towards** versus (adv. usu. + Accusative), adversus, obversus (both part. A); **turned upside down** inversus (part. A); **turned in the direction of** versum (adv.); **in turn** invicem (adv.)

**turning** [*indicates a process or change of state*] expressed by part. ending in -*ascens* or -*escens*, e.g. *cinerascens*, becoming grey

**turnip-shaped** napiformis, rapiformis (both adj. B)

**turiformis** (adj. B) tower-shaped; **turritus** (adj. A) turreted

**twice** bis (num. adv.); **twice-conjugate** conjugatus (adj. A), bigeminatus (adj. A)

**twig** ramunculus (noun m. 2)

**twining** volubilis (adj. B) [*if toward the left + sinistrorsum, if toward the right + dextrorsum*, both adv.]; **twining from left to right** eutopicus (adj. A)

**twinned** binatus, didymus, gemellus, geminus, geminatus (all adj. A)

**twist** convoluta, spira (both noun f. 1); **twisted** intortus, tortus, torquatus, torsivus (all adj. A), tortilis (adj. B); **twisted spirally** helicus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) helic-

**two** duo, dua, duo (num. adj.) [see p. 00]

**two-** (pref. in Lat. comp.) bi-, (pref. in Gk comp.) di-, dica-, dico-; **two each** bini (distrib. num., adj. A, pl.)

**two-edged** anceps, ancipitius (both adj. B)

**tylo-** (pref. in Gk comp.) with knobs *or* projections

**tympanum** (noun n. 2) epiphragm; **tympaniformis** (adj. B) drum-shaped

**type** typus (noun m. 2); **holotype** holotypus (noun m. 2); *so also* epitypus, isosyntypus, isotypus, lectotypus, neotypus, paratypus, syntypus, topotypus (all noun m. 2); **generitype** generitypus (noun m. 2)

**typical** typicus (adj. A); **typically** typice (adv.)

**tyrius** (adj. A) tyrian purple

**tythto-** (in Gk comp.) small

## U

**ubi** (adv.) where, when

**ubicumque** (adv.) anywhere, where, wherever

**ubique** (adv.) everywhere, overall, throughout

**udus** (adj. A) damp

**-ulentus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates abundance *or* fullness

**uliginosus** (adj. A) boggy, marshy

**ullus** (adj. A) any, anyone

**ulterior** (adj. compar.) farther; **ultimus** (adj. A) farthest, final, last; **ulterius** (adv.) beyond, farther on; **ultime** (adv.) extremely

**ultimately** ad extremum, ad finem, extremum (adv.), postremo (adv.)

**ultra** (adv.) beyond, farther

**ultra citroque, ultro et citro** (both adv. phr.) to and fro, backwards and forwards

**-ulus** (Lat. suff., adj. A) with adj. indicates diminutive form; with verb indicates action

**umbel** umbella (noun f. 1); **umbellate** umbellatus (adj. A); **umbel-like** umbelliformis (adj. B)

**umbellula** (noun f. 1) partial umbel *or* the ultimate umbel in a compound umbel; **umbellulatus** (adj. A) having partial umbels

**umber** umbrinus (adj. A)



- umbilicatus** (adj. A), **umbiliciformis** (adj. B) navel-like  
**umbilicus** umbilicus (noun m. 2)  
**umbo** (noun m. 3) boss, umbo; **umbonatus** (adj. A) bossed, umbonate  
**umbra** (noun f. 1) shade  
**umbraculiformis** (adj. B) umbrella-shaped  
**umbraculum** umbraculum (noun n. 2)  
**umbrinus** (adj. A) umber  
**umbrosus** (adj. A) shady  
**un-** negative Eng. pref., expressed in Lat. by pref. *in-* (or *im-* before *b*, *m* and *p*), and *e-* or *ex-* before vowels; also by *haud* or *non*  
**una** (adv.) at the same time  
**unaltered** immutatus (adj. A)  
**unarmed** inermis (adj. B)  
**unarmoured** athecatus (adj. A)  
**unbroken** [*entire*] integer (adj. A) [see p. 00]  
**uncatus** (adj. A) hooked, bent inwards  
**uncertain** incertus, dubius, ambiguus (all adj. A)  
**unchangeable** immutabilis (adj. B); **unchanged** immutatus (adj. A)  
**uncia** (noun f. 1) an inch; **uncialis** (adj. A) an inch long  
**unciformis** (adj. B) hook-shaped; **uncinatus** (adj. A) uncinat, hooked;  
**uncinus** (noun m. 2) barb  
**unclear** indistinctus (adj. A)  
**uncommon** rarus (adj. A); **uncommonly** raro (adv.)  
**unctulus, unctuosus** (both adj. A); appearing greasy but not actually so  
**unctus** (part. A) greasy  
**uncultivated** incultus (adj. A)  
**uncus** (noun m. 2) barb, hook; **uncatus** (adj. A) hooked; **uncinatus** (adj. A) barbed, hooked; **unciformis** (adj. B) hook-shaped  
**undatus** (adj. A) wavy; **undatim** (adv.) in a wavy manner  
**unde** (adv.) whence  
**undecided** incertus (adj. A)  
**undeciens, undecies** (both adv.) eleven times; **undecimus** (adj. A) an eleventh  
**under** sub *q.v.* (prep. + Ablative or Accusative); (in Gk comp.) hyp-, hypo-

- under a lens** [**observed**] sub lente (adv. phr.) [observatus, part. A]
- undergoing** subiens (part. B)
- underground** subterraneus, hypogaeus (both adj. A)
- underneath** infra (adv. & prep. + Accusative), subter (adv. & prep. + Ablative or Accusative), subtus (adv.)
- undershrub** suffrutex (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]
- undescribed** indescriptus (adj. A)
- undeveloped** immaturus (adj. A)
- undique** (adv.) on all sides
- undivided** indivisus (adj. A), simplex (adj. B) [see p. 00]
- undulate** undulatus, undatus (both adj. A)
- undulato-striatus** (adj. A) with wavy raised lines
- unequal** dispar, impar, inaequabilis, inaequalis (all adj. B); (in Lat. comp.) inaequi-, (in Gk comp.) aniso-; **unequally** impariter, inaequaliter (both adv.); **unequal-sided** inaequilaterus (adj. A)
- uneven** impar, inaequalis (both adj. B), [*to touch*] asper (adj. A); (in Gk comp.) aniso-
- unguis** (noun m.3) a claw; **unguicularis** (adj. B), **unguiculatus** (adj. A) clawed
- ungulatus** (adj. A), **unguliformis** (adj. B) hoof-shaped, clawed
- uni-** (in Lat. comp.) one-
- unicus** (adj. A) unique
- unifariam** (adv.), **unifarius** (adj. A) in a line or row
- uniflagellatus** (adj. A) uniflagellate
- uniform** aequabilis, uniformis (both adj. B); **uniformly** aequae, aequabiliter (both adv.)
- unilateral** unilateralis (adj. B)
- uninterrupted** continuus (adj. A)
- union** junctio, conjunctio, copulatio (all noun f. 3)
- uniseriatus** (adj. A) in one row
- unisexual** unisexualis (adj. B)
- unistratose** unistratosus (adj. A)
- unit** monas (noun f. 3)
- united** coadnatus, conflatus, connatus, consociatus, unitus (all part. A); (in Gk comp.) gamo-

**unitunicatus** (adj. A) unitunicate

**universalis** (adj. B) general; **universe** (adv.) generally; **in universum** (adv. phr.) as a whole

**universal veil** velum (noun n. 2) universale (adj. B n.) (decl. together)

**unknown** ignotus, incognitus (both adj. A)

**unlawful** illegitimus (adj. A)

**unless** nisi (adv.)

**unlike** dispar (adj. B), dissimilis (adj. B + Dative or Genitive), diversus (part. A)

**unnamed** innominatus (adj. A)

**unpleasant** ingratus (adj. A)

**unpolished** impolitus (adj. A)

**unquam** (adv.) at any one time

**unripe** immaturus, crudus (both adj. A)

**unspotted** astictus, immaculatus (both adj. A)

**unstained** immaculatus (adj. A)

**until** dum (conj.), donec (adv.), ad (prep. + Accusative)

**untilled** incultus (adj. A)

**unus, una, unum** (adj. num. sing.) one

**unusquisque** (compar. pron., m.), **unaquaeque** (f.), **unumquidque** (n.) each [of more than two]

**unusual** insuetus, insolitus, egregius (all adj. A), infrequens, singularis (both adj. B); **unusually** insolenter, raro (both adv.)

**up to** usque ad (prep. + Accusative)

**upholding** sustinens (part. B)

**upon** [on top] super (prep. + Accusative), [concerning] de (prep. + Ablative)

**upper** superus, supernus (both adj. A), [compar.] superior (adj. A);

**uppermost** summus, supremus (both adj. A); **on upper side** supra (adv.)

**upright** erectus, rectus (both adj. A), verticalis (adj. B); **standing upright** stans (part. B); **fairly upright** rectiusculus (adj. A); **upright** (in Lat. comp.) recti-, (in Gk comp.) orth-, ortho-

**upside down** inverse, inversum (both adv.); **turned upside down** inversus (part. A)

**upwards** sursum (adv.); (in Gk comp.) [with sense of increasing] ana-

**urceolatus** (adj. A) pitcher-shaped, urceolate

- uredinium** uredinium (noun n. 2); **uredinoid** uredinoideus (adj. A)
- urediospore** urediospora (noun f. 1)
- uredium** uredium (noun n. 2)
- uredosorus** uredosorus (noun m. 2)
- uredospore** uredospora, urediniospora (noun f. 1)
- urens** (part. B) stinging
- urna** (noun f. 1) urn, [*in bryology*] spore-bearing part of capsule; **urniformis** (adj. B) urn-shaped
- uro-**, **-urus** (adj. A) (in Gk. comp.) tail-, -tailed
- usitatus** (part. A) usual, ordinary
- usneic** usneicus (adj. A)
- usque** (prep. usu. with *ad* + Accusative) up to, as far as
- ustidium** (noun n. 2) ustidium
- ustulatus** (part. A) burned
- usual** usitatus, solitus (both part. A), usualis (adj. B); **usually** plerumque, vulgo (both adv.)
- ut** (conj. with *in* + Dative) as, so that; *also* (adv.) how, in what manner
- uterque** (pron., m.), **utraque** (f.), **utrumque** (n) each [*of two*]
- utricle** utriculus (noun m. 2)
- utricularis** (adj. B), **utriculatus**, **utriculosus** (both adj. A) bladder-like *or* having bladders
- utriformis** (adj. B) bag-like, bladder-like
- utrinque**, **utrinsecus** (both adv.) on both sides
- utroque** (adv.) to both sides, in both directions
- utus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with noun as stem) indicates possession
- uus** (Lat. suff., adj. A, with verb as stem) indicates possible *or* completed action
- uva** (noun f. 1) grape; **uviformis**, **uvarius** (adj. A) grape-like [*in a cluster*]; **uvifer** (adj. A) grape-bearing
- uvidus** (adj. A) moist, humid

## V

- vaccinus** (adj. A) dun [*colour*]
- vacillans** (part. B) swinging to and fro

- vacuole** vacuola (noun f. 1)  
**vacuum** (noun n. 2) empty space; **vacuus** (adj. A) empty  
**vadosus** (adj. A) [*of water*] shallow; **vadum** (noun n. 2) shallow place, ford  
**vagans** (part. B) wandering  
**vage** (adv.) here and there, far and wide  
**vagina** (noun f. 1) sheath; **vaginalis** (adj. B) relating to a sheath; **vaginans** (part. B) sheathing; **vaginatus** (adj. A) sheathed; **vagina** (noun f. 1)  
**folii** (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *vagina* is declined) leaf sheath  
**vaginervis** (adj. B), **vaginervius** (adj. A) with nerves in no order  
**vaginule** vaginula (noun f. 1)  
**vagus** (adj. A) of no particular direction, in several directions  
**valde** (adv.) exceedingly, intensely, markedly, decidedly  
**validus** (adj. A) robust, strong  
**vallar** (adj. B) palisade-like  
**vallecula** (noun f. 1) furrow; **valleculatus** (part. A) furrowed  
**valley** vallis (noun f. 3)  
**vallum** (noun n. 2) palisade; **vallar** (adj. B) palisade-like  
**valve** valva (noun f. 1); **valvate** valvatus, valvaceus (both adj. A), valvaris (adj. B); **-valved** (in comp.) -valvis (adj. B)  
**valve-view** facies (noun f. 5) valvaris (adj. B), facies frontalis (adj. B) (in both, decl. together)  
**valvocopula** (noun f. 1) valvocopula  
**valvule** valvula (noun f. 1)  
**vanishing** evanescens (part. B), evanidus (adj. A)  
**variable** variabilis (adj. B), varius (adj. A), [*of colour*] mutabilis (adj. B);  
**variably** varie (adv.); **varying** varians (part. B); **variation** variatio (noun f. 3)  
**varicosus** (adj. A) abnormally enlarged in places  
**varie** (adv.) variously, diversely  
**variegated** variegatus (part. A), (in Gk comp.) poecil-, poecilo-  
**variety** varietas (noun f. 3) [see p. 00]  
**varirole** variola (noun f. 1)  
**various** varius (adj. A); **variously** varie, diverse (both adv.)  
**varnished** laccatus, vernicosus (both adj. A)

**varying** varians (part. B)

**vas** (noun n. 3) vessel, duct

**vascular** vascularis (adj. B)

**vase-shaped** urceolatus (adj. A)

**-ve** indecl. suff. meaning *or* (an alternative to using **vel**)

**vectus** (part. A) carried

**vegetabile** (noun n. 3) plant [see p. 00]

**vegetabilis** (adj. B) belonging *or* related to plants

**vegetatio** (noun f. 3) vegetation

**vegetus** (adj. A) vigorous

**veil** velum (noun n. 2), (in Gk comp.) -calymma (noun n. 3)

**vein** vena (noun f. 1); **veinlet** venula (noun f. 1); **veining** nervatura (noun f. 1), venatio (noun f. 3); **irregularly veined** marmoratus (adj. A);

**veinless** avenis (adj. B), avenius (adj. A); **vein-** (in Gk comp.) phlebo-;

**-veined** (in Gk comp.) -phlebius (adj. A)

**vel** (conj.) *or*

**velamen** (noun n. 3) covering, cover; **velatus** (part. A) covered, partly concealed, [*in mycology*] with a veil

**vellus** (noun n. 3) fleece, wool

**velum** (noun n. 2) [*in fungi*] veil, [*in diatoms, dinoflagellates*] velum

**velut** (adv.) as if, just as

**velutinus** (adj. A) velvety

**velvetum** (noun n. 2) velvet

**vena** (noun f. 1) vein

**venenatus**, **venenosus** (both adj. A) poisonous

**venetus** (adj. A) bluish green

**venosus** (adj. A) having many branched veins

**venter** (noun m. 3) expanded base of archegonium, ventral surface

**ventralis** (adj. B) ventral; **ventraliter** (adv.) ventrally

**ventricosus** (adj. A) swollen especially to one side

**venula** (noun f. 1) veinlet

**venustus** (adj. A) beautiful, graceful

**ver** (noun n. 3) spring [*season*]; **vernalis** (adj. B), **vernus** (adj. A) vernal, of springtime

**verdigris** aerugineus, aeruginosus (both adj. A)

- vere** (adv.) truly, exactly
- vergens** (part. B) trending towards
- verisimiliter** (adv.) probably
- vermicularis, vermiformis** (both adj. B) worm-shaped; **vermiculus** (noun m. 2) small worm
- vermilion** cinnabarinus (adj. A)
- vernalis** (adj. B) vernal
- vernation** vernatio, praefoliatio (both noun f. 3)
- vernicosus** (adj. A) varnished
- vernus** (adj. A) vernal
- vero** (adv.) truly, exactly
- veronicinus** (adj. A) veronica-violet
- verosimiliter** (adv.) probably
- verruca** (noun f. 1) wart; **verrucatus, verrucosus** (both adj. A) warty; **verruciformis** (adj. B) shaped like a wart; **verrucula** (noun f. 1) small wart; **verruculosus** (adj. A) covered with small warts
- verrucose** phymatodeus, verrucosus (both adj. A)
- versatilis** (adj. B) versatile
- versicolor** (adj. B) changing colour, variously coloured [see p. 00]
- versiformis** (adj. B) of different shapes
- versum** (adv.) turned in the direction of
- versus** (prep. + Accusative) towards
- vertex** (noun m. 3) top, highest point
- verticalis** (adj. B) erect
- verticillaster** (noun m. 2) verticillaster
- verticillatus** (adj. A) verticillate; **verticillate, verticillatim** (both adv.) verticillately; **verticillus** (noun m. 2) whorl
- verus** (adj. A) authentic
- very** expressed by a sup. adj., or by placing *maxime* [extremely], *valde* [strongly] or *minime* [least] before an adj., or by adding *per-* as pref. to adj.; (pref. in Lat. comp.) *pel-*, *per-*, (pref. in Gk comp.) *za-*
- vesica** (noun f. 1) vesicle, bladder; **vesicarius** (adj. A) bladder-like, inflated
- vesicula** (noun f. 1) vesicle, small bladder; **vesicularis** (adj. B), **vesiculatus** (adj. A) bladder-like; **vesiculosus** (adj. A) covered with small bladders or blisters
- vespertinus** (adj. A) belonging to evening

- vessel** vas (noun n. 3)
- vestibulum** (noun n. 2) vestibulum, entrance to gullet furrow
- vestigialis** (adj. B) vestigial; **vestigium** (noun n. 2) vestige, trace, remnant
- vestitus** (part. A) clothed
- veternus, vetustus** (both adj. A), **vetus** (adj. B) aged; **vetustas** (noun f. 3) old age
- vexillaris** (adj. B) vexillary; **vexillum** (noun n. 2) standard *or* banner petal
- vibratile** vibratorius (adj. A)
- vicarious** vicarius (adj. A)
- vice** (adv. + Genitive) instead of
- vicinus** (adj. A) neighbouring; **vicinia** (noun f. 1), **vicinitas** (noun f. 3) nearness, neighbourhood
- videtur** (3rd pers. sing. pres. pass. of verb *video*) it seems; **ut videtur** (adv. clause) apparently
- view** apsectus (noun m. 4)
- vigens** (part. B) flourishing, inhabiting
- vigorous** fortis (adj. B), vegetus (adj. A); **vigorously** fortiter (adv.)
- villosus** (adj. A) villous, villose
- viminalis** (adj. B) having shoots suitable for weaving; **vimineus** (adj. A) having long, flexible shoots
- vinaceus, vinosus** (both adj. A), **vinicolor** (adj. B) wine-coloured, purplish-red [see p. 00]
- violet** amethysteus, amethystinus, hyacinthinus, ianthinus, violaceus (all adj. A); (in Lat. comp.) violaceo-, (in Gk comp.) ion-, iono-; **aster violet** asterinus (adj. A); **lavender violet** lavandulaceus, lavandulus (both adj. A); **dark violet** atrovioleaceus (adj. A)
- virellus** (adj. A) greenish; **virens** (part. B) becoming green
- virga** (noun f. 1) rod, slender twig, cane, stripe; **virgatus** (adj. A) with long, slender twigs *or* streaked, striped
- virgineus** (adj. A) pure white
- viridis** (adj. B) green; **viridulus** (adj. A) greenish; **viridescens** (part. B) becoming green; **viridianus** (adj. A) viridian green; **green-** (in Lat. comp.) viridi-
- virinus** (adj. A) relating to a virus
- virosus** (adj. A) poisonous
- virus** virus (noun n. 2); **relating to a virus** virinus (adj. A)
- viscid** viscidus (adj. A)



- viscous** lentus (adj. A)
- visible** visibilis (part. B), [*evident*] manifestus (adj. A), aspectabilis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) phanero-
- visus** (part. A) seen
- vita** (noun f. 1) life
- vitamin** vitaminum (noun n. 2)
- vitellinus** (adj. A) egg-yolk yellow
- viti-** (in Lat. comp.) pertaining to the grapevine
- vitrum** (noun n. 2) glass; **vitreus** (adj. A) glassy
- vitta** (noun f. 1) [*in Apiaceae, diatoms, liverworts*] vitta, band; **vittatus** (adj. A) banded; **vittiformis** (adj. B) band-shaped
- vivens** (part. B), **vivus** (adj. A) alive, living
- vivide** (adv.) brightly; **vividus** (adj. A) bright
- viviparus** (adj. A) viviparous
- vivus** (adj. A) living, fresh
- vix** (adv.) barely, hardly, not much
- Voigt fault** inordinatio (noun f. 3) Voigtii (noun Genitive sing., remains unchanged if *inordinatio* is declined)
- volcanic** ignivomus, volcanicus, vulcanicus, vulcanius (all adj. A)
- volubilis** (adj. B) twining
- volutus** (part. A) rolled up
- volva** volva (noun f. 1); **volvatus** (adj. A) having a volva
- vorus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) devouring, feeding upon
- vulcanicus, vulcanius** (both adj. A) volcanic
- vulgaris** (adj. B), **vulgatus** (adj. A) common [*widespread*]
- vulgo** (adv.) commonly
- vulnus** (noun n. 3) wound; **vulneratus** (part. A) wounded; **-vulnerus** (adj. A, in Lat. comp.) -wounded
- vulviformis** (adj. B) vulviform

## W

- wall** paries (noun m. 3) [see p. 00]; **of or on walls** muralis, parietalis (both adj. B); **surrounded with a wall** obvallatus (part. A); **pertaining to walls** parietinus (adj. A)

- wandering** vagans (part. B), vagus (adj. A)
- wanting** [*lacking*] carens, deficiens (both part. B)
- warm** calidus, tepidus (both adj. A)
- wart** verruca (noun f. 1); **warty** verrucatus, verrucosus, phymatodeus (all adj. A); **wart-like** verruciformis (adj. B); **small wart** verrucula (noun f. 1); **covered with small warts** verruculosus (adj. A)
- waste land** incultum (noun n. 2)
- wasting away** tabescens (part. B), tabidus (adj. A)
- water** aqua (noun f. 1), (in Gk comp.) hydro-; **growing in water** aquaticus (adj. A), aquatilis (adj. B); **clear as water** aqueus (adj. A); **a watery place** aquosum (noun n. 2); **watery** aquosus (adj. A); **medicinal waters** aquae (noun f. 1, pl.); **well-watered** irriguus (adj. A)
- waterfall** cataracta (noun f. 1)
- wavy** sinuatus, undulatus, undatus (all adj. A); **in a wavy manner** undatim (adv.)
- wax** cera (noun f. 1); **waxy** [*in texture*] ceraceus (adj. A), [*in colour*] cereus (adj. A)
- weak** debilis, exilis, imbecilis (all adj. B), exiguus, imbecillus, infirmus (all adj. A), [*in colour*] dilutus (part. A), pallidus (adj. A); **weakly** infirme (adv.), [*mildly*] leniter (adv.), [*of colours*] pallide, dilute (both adv.)
- web** tela (noun f. 1)
- wedge-shaped** cuneatus (adj. A), cuneiformis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) spheno-
- weed** no Latin equivalent; use phrase such as *planta inutilis* (a useless plant); **becoming weedy** infestus (adj. A)
- weekly** hebdomalis (adj. B); **week** hebdomas (noun f. 3)
- well** bene (adv.) [see p. 00]; **well-** (in Gk comp.) eu-
- western** occidentalis (adj. B)
- wet** humidus, madidus, udus, uvidus (all adj. A); **wetted** madefactus (part. A), madidus (adj. A)
- wheel-shaped** rotatus (adj. A); **wheel-like** (in Gk comp.) trocho-
- when** quum (conj.), ubi (adv.)
- whence** unde (adv.)
- where** ubi (adv.); **wherever** ubicumque (adv.)
- which** qui (rel. pron.)
- while** donec, dum (both adv.); **a little while** diuscule, diutule (both adv.)

**whip-like** flagelliformis (adj. B)

**white** [*esp. dull*] albus (adj. A); **chalk white** cretaceus (adj. A); **greyish white** [*usu. of hair*] canus (adj. A); **ivory white** eburneus (adj. A); **milk white** lacteus, lactaneus, lactineus (all adj. A); **pure white** virgineus (adj. A); **pure, glossy white** candidus (adj. A); **snow white** niveus (adj. A); **whitish** albidus (adj. A); **whitened** albens (part. B), dealbatus (part. A); **becoming white** albescens, exalbescens, albicans, candidans, nivescens (all part. B); **white-** (in Lat. comp.) albi-, albo-, (in Gk comp.) leuco-, leuco-

**whole** totum (noun n. 2), omnis (adj. B), totus (adj. A), (in Gk comp.) holo-; **wholly** admodum, omnino (both adv.); **as a whole** in universum (adv. phr.)

**whorl** verticillus (noun m. 2); **whorled** verticillatus (adj. A), verticillaris (adj. B), (in Lat. & Gk. comp.) -cyclus (adj. A); **in a whorled manner** verticillate, verticillatim (both adv.)

**wide** latus (adj. A); **widely** late (adv.); **wide** (in Lat. comp.) lati-, (in Gk comp.) platy-; **widened** dilatatus (part. A); **a widening** dilatatio (noun f. 3)

**widespread** divulgatus, pervagatus (both part. A)

**width** latitudo (noun f. 3)

**wild** ferus, incultus (both adj. A); **growing wild naturally** spontaneus (adj. A)

**willowy** salignus (adj. A); **relating to willows** salicinus (adj. A)

**wilting** languescens (part. B)

**wind** ventus (noun m. 2); **wind** (pertaining to, in Gk comp.) anemo-

**winding** sinuosus, tortuosus (both adj. A), anfractus (part. A)

**window** fenestra (noun f. 1); **windowed** fenestratus (adj. A), fenestralis (adj. B); **with little windows** fenestrellatus (adj. A)

**wine-coloured** vinaceus, vinosus (both adj. A), vinicolor (adj. B) [see p. 00]

**wing** ala (noun f. 1); **winged** alatus (adj. A); **wing-shaped** aliformis (adj. B); **wing-, winged** (in Lat. comp.) alato-, (in Gk comp.) pter-, pterygo-, -pterus (adj. A)

**winter** hiems (noun f. 3); **wintry** brumalis, hiemalis (both adj. B); **pertaining to winter** hibernus (adj. A); **persisting through winter** perhiemans (part. B)

**winterbud** hibernaculum (noun n. 2)

**wiped clean** deterusus (part. A)

**wire-like** filo metallico similis (adj. phr., only *similis*, adj. B, to be decl.)

- with** usu. expressed by Ablative case [see p. 00]; *also* cum [*together with*] (prep. + Ablative), *or* habens [*having*] (part. B)
- withdrawn** amotus (part. A)
- withered** emarcidus, marcidus (both adj. A); **withering** languescens (part. B); **withering but not falling off** marcescens (part. B); **withered but persistent parts** induviae (noun f. 1, pl.)
- within** intra (adv., *also* prep. + Accusative), intus (adv.), interius (adv.), (as pref. in Gk comp.) end-, endo-, ento-
- without** [*lacking*] absque (prep. + Ablative), expers (adj. B + Genitive or Ablative), sine (prep. + Ablative), (as pref. in Gk comp.) a- (before a consonant), an- (before a vowel)
- without** [*outside*] extra (adv., *also* prep. + Accusative), extus (adv.)
- wonderful** mirus (adj. A); **wonderfully** mire, mirimodis (both adv.)
- wood** [*timber*] lignum (noun n. 2); **wooden, woody** ligneus, lignosus (both adj. A); **becoming woody** lignescens (adj. B); **growing on wood** lignatilis (adj. B); **wood-loving** [*e.g. saprophyte*] xylophilus (adj. A); **like a wooden bed** xylostromatoideus (adj. A)
- wood** [*woodland*] silva, sylva (both noun f. 1), nemus (noun n. 3); **pertaining to woods or forests** nemoralis (adj. B), nemorosus (adj. A), sylvaticus (adj. A), sylvestris (adj. B); **inhabitant of woods or forests** sylvicola (noun c. 1)
- woody, relating to wood** [*timber*] (in Gk comp.) xyl-, xylo-, -xylon (noun n. 3, stem *xylon-*)
- wool** lana (noun f. 1), vellus (noun n. 3); **woolly** lanatus, lanosus, lanuginosus (all adj. A), (in Lat. comp.) lani-, lanos-, (in Gk comp.) erio-, lachno-, lasi-, lasio-; **wool-like** laneus (adj. A)
- world** orbis (noun m. 3); **world-wide** cosmopolitanus (adj. A)
- worm-like** [*in shape*] anguilliformis (adj. B); **worm-shaped** lumbricalis, lumbriciformis, vermicularis, vermiformis (all adj. B); **small worm** vermiculus (noun m. 2)
- wound** vulnus (noun n. 3); **wounded** vulneratus (part. A); **-wounded** (in Lat. comp.) -vulnerus (adj. A)
- woven** textilis (adj. B); **woven together** contextus (part. A)
- wrapped around** circumnexus, obvolutus (both part. A)
- wreath** corona (noun f. 1), sertum (noun n. 2)
- wrinkle** ruga (noun f. 1); **wrinkled** rugosus, rugatus, caperatus, corrugatus (all adj. A), (in Gk comp.) rhyti-, rhytido-; **somewhat wrinkled** rugulosus (adj. A); **wrinkle-like** rugiformis (adj. B)

**writer** auctor (noun m. or f. 3) [see p. 00]

**wrong** falsus (adj. A); **wrongly** false, male (both adv.) [see p. 00]

## X

**xanth-**, **xantho-** (in Gk comp.) yellow

**xerampelinus** (adj. A) dull red mixed with brown

**xero-** (in Gk comp.) dry

**xiphoideus** (adj. A) sword-like; **xiph-**, **xipho-** (in Gk comp.) sword-like

**xyl-**, **xylo-**, **-xylon** (noun n. 3, stem *xylon-*), **-xylum** (noun n. 2, in Gk comp.)  
woody, relating to wood

**xylem** xylema (noun n. 3)

**xylophilus** (adj. A) wood-loving [*e.g. saprophyte*]

**xylopodium** xylopodium (noun n. 2)

**xylostromatoideus** (adj. A) like a wooden bed *or* mattress

## Y

**year** annus (noun m. 2); **yearly** annus (adj. A); **a year old** anniculus (adj. A);  
**of or belonging to last year** annotinus (adj. A), praeteritus (part. A); **of  
the present year** hornotinus (adj. A)

**yeast** fermentum (noun n. 2)

**yellow** flavus (adj. A); **aureolin yellow** aureolinus (adj. A); **buttercup yellow**  
ranunculinus (adj. A); **canary yellow** canarinus (adj. A); **deep or golden  
yellow** luteus (adj. A); **drab yellow** luridus (adj. A); **dull yellow** cereus,  
gilvus (both adj. A); **egg-yolk yellow** vitellinus (adj. A); **greenish yellow**  
galbanus (adj. A); **greyish-yellow** ravus (adj. A); **jaundice yellow**  
ictericus, icterinus (adj. A); **mimosa yellow** mimosinus (adj. A);  
**ochre-yellow** ochraceus (adj. A); **pale yellow** flavidus, flavus, luteolus  
(all adj. A); **saffron** croceus (adj. A); **soiled tawny yellow** isabellinus  
(adj. A); **sulphur yellow** sulphureus (adj. A); **yellowing** flavescens,  
lutescens (both part. B); **yellowish** luteolus (adj. A); **yellow**  
(in Lat. comp.) flav-, flavi-, luteo-, (in Gk comp.) chrys-, chryso-,  
xanth-, xantho-

**yet** [*however*] tamen, [*although*] quanquam, [*but then*] at, [*furthermore*]  
etiam (all conj.), [*but yet*] attamen (adv.)

**yoked** jugatus (adj. A), jugalis (adj. B), (in Gk comp.) -zugus (adj. A), zygo-

**young** juvenilis, juvenis (both adj. B), novellus (adj. A), recens (adj. B);  
**younger** junior (compar. adj. B); **youthful** juvenilis (adj. B), primaevus,  
 immaturus (both adj. A)  
**youth** juvenus (noun f. 3); **in youth** in juventute (adv. phr.)

## Z

**za-** (pref. in Gk comp.) much, very  
**zebrinus** (adj. A) striped with white *or* yellow  
**zigzag** fractiflexus (adj. A), valde flexuosus (adv. + adj. A); **gently zigzag**  
 anfractusus (adj. A)  
**zinc** zincum (noun n. 2)  
**zone** zona (noun f. 1); **zoned** zonatus (adj. A); **in a zoned manner** zonatim  
 (adv.); **without zones** azonatus, azonus (both adj. A)  
**zoo-** (in Gk comp.) pertaining to animals  
**zoogamete** zoogameta (noun f. 1)  
**zooidangium** (noun n. 2) zooidangium  
**zoosporangium** (noun n. 2) sporangium that produces zoospores  
**zoospore** planospora (noun f. 1)  
**zygo-** (in Gk comp.) joined, yoked  
**zygodesma** (noun n. 3) clamp  
**zygomorphic** zygomorphus, zygomorphicus (both adj. A)  
**zygospore** zygospora (noun f. 1)  
**zygote** zygota (noun f. 1); **motile zygote** planozygota (noun f. 1)  
**zymogenus** (adj. A) causing fermentation

## References

- Brown, R. W. (1956, reprinted 1978). *Composition of Scientific Words*. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Collins Latin Dictionary plus Grammar (1997). [London?]: HarperCollins Publishers.
- Kennedy, B. H., revised by J. W. Bartram (1931). *The Shorter Latin Primer*, new edn. London, New York etc.: Longmans, Green and Co.
- Stearn, W. T. (1992). *Botanical Latin*, 4th edn. Newton Abbot, Devon: David & Charles.

## Further reading

- Anonymous (1993). *Flora of Australia Guide for Contributors*, 3rd edn. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study.
- Beentje, H. (2010). *The Kew Plant Glossary: An Illustrated Dictionary of Plant Terms*. Kew, Richmond: Royal Botanic Gardens.
- Bon, M. (1987). *The Mushrooms and Toadstools of Britain and North-western Europe*. London, etc.: Domino Books, Hodder & Stoughton.
- Cash, E. K. (1965). *A Mycological English-Latin Glossary*. New York: New York Botanical Garden in collaboration with Mycological Society of America.
- Eichler, H. J. (1977). *Guidelines for the Preparation of Botanical Taxonomic Papers*. [Canberra]: CSIRO.
- Fowler, H. W. (ed.) (1996). *The New Fowler's Modern English Usage*, 3rd edn, ed. R. W. Burchfield. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- George, A. S. (ed.) (1992). *Flora of Australia*, vol. 54, *Lichens – Introduction Lecanorales 1*, Canberra: AGPS Press.
- Gilbertson, R. L. and Ryvarden, L. (1986). *North American Polypores*, vol. 1. Oslo: Fungiflora.
- Grgurinovic, C. A. (1996). Glossary. In *Fungi of Australia* vol. 1A, *Introduction–Classification*, ed. A. E. Orchard. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study & Melbourne: CSIRO, pp 341–378.
- Gray, M. D. and Jenkins, T., edited by C. McEvoy and F. Dale (1934). *Latin for Today: Book Two*. London: Ginn and Co.
- Hallegraeff, G. M., Bolch, C. J. S., Hill, D. R. A. et al. (2010). *Algae of Australia: Phytoplankton of Temperate Coastal Waters*. Canberra: ABRS & Melbourne: CSIRO Publishing.

- Hewson, H. J. (1988). *Plant Indumentum: A Handbook of Terminology*, Australian Flora and Fauna Series no. 9. Canberra: Australian Government Publishing Service.
- Hickey, M. and King, C. (2000). *The Cambridge Illustrated Glossary of Botanical Terms*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Huisman, J. M. (2000). *Marine Plants of Australia*. Nedlands: University of Western Australia Press & Canberra Australian Biological Resources Study.
- Jones, P. V. and Sidwell, K. C. (1986). *Reading Latin: Grammar, Vocabulary and Exercises*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Kirk, P. M., Cannon, P. F., Minter, D. W. et al. (2008). *Ainsworth & Bisby's Dictionary of the Fungi*, 10th edn. Wallingford: CAB International & Collingwood: CSIRO Publishing.
- Kraft, G. (2007). *Algae of Australia, Marine Benthic Algae of Lord Howe Island and the Southern Great Barrier Reef, 1. Green Algae*. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study & Melbourne: CSIRO.
- Kraft, G. (2009). *Algae of Australia, Marine Benthic Algae of Lord Howe Island and the Southern Great Barrier Reef, 2. Brown Algae*. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study & Melbourne: CSIRO.
- Lack, H. Walter (2011). Botanical Latin today. Chapter 10. In *Monographic Plant Systematics: Fundamental Assessment of Plant Biodiversity*, ed. T. F. Stuessy and H. Walter Lack. *Regnum Vegetabile* 153, Ruggell: A.R.G. Gantner Verlag K.G., pp. 179–190.
- Largent, D. (1977). *How to Identify Mushrooms to Genus I: Macroscopic Features*, 2nd edn, Eureka, California: Mad River Press.
- Lewis, C. T. (1891, new impression 1982). *An Elementary Latin Dictionary with brief Helps for Latin Readers*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Lewis, C. T. and Short, C. (1879, reprinted many times). *A Latin Dictionary founded on Andrews' Edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary revised, enlarged and in great part rewritten*. London: Oxford University Press.
- McNeill, J. et al. (2006). *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (Vienna Code) adopted by the Seventeenth International Botanical Congress, Vienna, Austria, July 2005*. Ruggell, Lichtenstein: A.R.G. Ganter Verlag.
- Orchard, A. E. (ed.) (1998). *Flora of Australia*, vol. 48, *Ferns, Gymnosperms and Allied Groups*. Melbourne: CSIRO Publishing & Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study.
- Orchard, A. E. (1999). *Species Plantarum Flora of the World: Introduction to the Series*. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study.
- Peters, P. (1995). *The Cambridge Australian English Style Guide*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Philips, R. (1981). *Mushrooms and other Fungi of Great Britain and Europe*. London: Pan Books Ltd.
- Radcliffe-Smith, A. (1998). *Three-language List of Botanical Name Components*. Kew: Royal Botanic Gardens.



- Ramsay, H. P. (2006). Glossary. In *Flora of Australia*, vol. 51, *Mosses 1*, ed. P. M. McCarthy. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study & Melbourne: CSIRO, pp. 413–429.
- Raven, P. H., Evert, R. F. and Curtis, H. (1981). *Biology of Plants*, 3rd edn. New York: Worth Publishers Inc.
- Ross, R., Cox, E. J., Karayeva, N. I. *et al.* (1979). *An Amended Terminology for the Siliceous Components of the Diatom Cell*, *Nova Hedwigia Beiheft* **64**, pp 513–533.
- Simpson, D. P. (1959). *Cassell's New Latin–English English–Latin Dictionary, & later edns.* London: Cassell & Co. Ltd.

# Index

Terms in the Vocabulary are not included here since they are in alphabetical order there. Many are cross-referenced to the text.

- abbreviations, 61, 93
  - verbs, 49
- ablative case, 4
- accusative case, 3
- adjective. *See also* declension, adjectives
  - comparative, 28, 30
  - comparison of, 28–29, 55
  - complex, 26
  - compound, 26–27
  - declining, 21
  - definition, 21
  - Group A, 22
  - Group B, 23
  - Group C, 25
  - qualifying two nouns, 33
  - superlative, 29
- adverb, 26, 31
  - comparison of, 35, 55
  - definition, 34
  - numerical, 54
- alphabet, xi
- angles, to express, 55
- apposition, noun in, 5, 21, 33, 62, 99
- cardinal numerals, 50–51
- cases (of nouns, adjectives), 3
- Codes, botanical, xii, xiii
- cola (words ending in), 5, 33
- colour, 60
- comparative adjective, 28, 30
- comparing parts, 55
- comparison
  - adjectives, 29, 55
  - adverbs, 35, 55
- compound adjective, 26
- conjugations, xv
- conjunction, definition, 38
- dative case, 3
- declension, 3
- declension, adjectives, 21
  - complex, 26
  - compound, 26
  - Group A, 21
  - Group B, 21, 24
  - Group C, 21, 25
- declension, nouns
  - First, 4–5
  - Second, 6
  - Third, 7, 9, 11, 14, 16
  - Fourth, 18
  - Fifth, 19
- description
  - from Bentham, 94
  - hints for writing, 91–92
- diagnosis, 99–100
  - examples in *Calothamnus*, 100
- dictionary (Latin), using, xiv, 4, 49
- distributive numerals, 53
- ecological terms, 60
- em dash *or* rule, 61
- en dash *or* rule, 26, 61
- epithet
  - forming, 21, 62–63
  - in translation, 21, 100
- fer (words ending in), 27, 33, 63
- former ... latter, 42
- fractions, 55
- gender, xiv, 4, 33, 62, 67
- genitive case, 3
- geographical terms, 60
- ger (words ending in), 33, 63

- gerundive, 49
- Greek words, xi, 5, 12, 18, 21, 25, 57–58, 63
- habitat, describing, 59
- hyphen, 61
- International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* (Vienna Code), xiii
- International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants* (Melbourne Code), xii
- i*-stem nouns, 8
- Latin
  - alphabet, xi
  - botanical, xi
  - classical, xi
  - dictionary, using, xiv, 4, 49
- liber*, avoid confusing, 7, 22
- nominative case, 3
- noun. *See also* declension, nouns
  - definition, 3
  - early size units, 54
  - in apposition, 5, 21, 33, 62, 99
  - i*-stem, 8
- number, 67
- number (of a noun), xiv, 3
- number (of an adjective), xiv, 21
- numbers, 50
- numerals, 50
  - cardinal, 50–51
  - distributive, 53
  - ordinal, 52
- numerical adverbs, 54
- ordinal numerals, 52
- parsing, 93, 103
- participle
  - declining, 21, 32
  - definition, 21, 31
  - Group A, 22
  - Group B, 23
- parts of speech, xiv
- prefix, definition, 57
- preposition, 36
  - definition, 36
  - with verb, 48
- pronoun
  - definition, 40
  - definitive, 44
  - demonstrative, 42
  - determinative, 41
  - indefinite, 44
  - intensive, 43
  - personal, 40
  - possessive, 41
  - relative, 43
- pronoun–adjective, 45
- punctuation, 61, 103
- quam*, 31
- que*, 38
- relative length, 55
- size units, early, 54
- specific epithet
  - forming, 21, 62–63
  - in translation, 21, 100
- Stearn's *Botanical Latin*, xiv
- stem (of a noun), 3
- suffix, definition, 57
- superlative adjective, 29
- symbols, 61
- time, expressing, 59
- translation
  - English to Latin, example from Bentham, 94
  - English to Latin, procedure, 92
  - Latin to English, example of *Melaleuca*, 104
  - Latin to English, procedure, 103
- verb, 47–49
  - abbreviations, 49
  - definition, 47
  - habitat description, 59
  - preposition with, 48